

# 点金训练

## 教师用书

《点金训练》编写组 编

► 英语

选择性必修 第三册

配外研版



四川教育出版社



# CONTENTS

## 目录

### Unit 1 Face values

○单元概览	1
○探究构建	
Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	3
Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	7
Section III Using language	12
Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	17
○迁移应用	
Part 1 应用文写作	23
Part 2 读后续写	24
○重构拓展	27

### Unit 2 A life's work

○单元概览	36
○探究构建	
Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	38
Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	42
Section III Using language	46
Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	51
○迁移应用	
Part 1 应用文写作	59
Part 2 读后续写	60
○重构拓展	63

### Unit 3 War and peace

○单元概览	73
○探究构建	
Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	75
Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	79
Section III Using language	83
Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	88
○迁移应用	
Part 1 应用文写作	95
Part 2 读后续写	96
○重构拓展	99



## Unit 4 A glimpse of the future

○单元概览	116
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending 118
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points 121
	Section III Using language 126
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection 130
○迁移应用	Part 1 如何续写故事 136
	Part 2 读后续写 138
○重构拓展	141

## Unit 5 Learning from nature

○单元概览	150
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending 152
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points 155
	Section III Using language 159
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection 166
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作 173
	Part 2 读后续写 174
○重构拓展	177

## Unit 6 Nature in words

○单元概览	186
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending 188
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points 192
	Section III Using language 196
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection 202
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作 209
	Part 2 读后续写 211
○重构拓展	213



单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and the self, focusing on the relationship between appearance and inner self. In this unit we will understand awareness of self-images, talk about topics of appearance and personality, use proper expressions to introduce one’s appearance and personal character, and learn to understand the importance of external and inner beauty for one’s whole life. As Dr Hart suggests, good health not only makes us more beautiful, but also happier.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确运用与“外表与内心的关系”主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	理解并运用主语从句。
		语篇	1. 阅读课文,能认识到外表美和心灵美都需要重视以及心灵美的重要性; 2. 了解文学作品简介的文体特征和内容特点,并能进行知识和思维能力的迁移,写一篇文学作品的简介。
		语用	1. 关注与口头演讲相关的表达; 2. 熟练撰写文学作品简介。
	语言技能	听	理解听力材料的大意,提升听力技能及语言表达能力。
		说	1. 在演讲中能使用恰当的过渡语和总结句; 2. 可以口头介绍“自己认识的最美的人”。
		读	通过阅读两篇文章,加深对真善美的热爱和追求。
		写	1. 通过学习本单元,能使用恰当的与外表和个人品质相关的词汇表达内心想法; 2. 能写一篇文学作品简介。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	熟练运用本单元知识,围绕“美”这一话题进行听、说、读、写训练,从而提升综合运用语言的能力。
文化意识	通过对“It's all about ME!”和“The Hunchback of Notre-Dame”的学习,对外表的重要性形成正确的认识,树立正确的审美观。
思维品质	在生活中能多维度地看待事物,认识到外在美和内在美都需要重视以及内在美的重要性,实现知识和思维能力的拓展和迁移。

### ◊ 必备知识

必背单词	boost, pretend, identical, dormitory, overlook, bother, pill, acknowledge, assumption, saving, welfare, psychology, finding, novelist, comprehension, accent, motive
重点表达	a lack of, a desire for, be surprised at, boost one's confidence, from head to toe, leave an impression on, make an effort, attempt to do, compare... to...
重点知识	1. as 引导状语从句 2. there 引起的完全倒装 3. 否定词置于句首引起的部分倒装
单元语法	主语从句
单元写作	文学作品简介

# 探 · 究 · 构 · 建

## Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

### 学习任务目标

1. Watch the video to understand the main idea and grasp the key information.
2. Read the text to obtain different opinions of self-images, and digest the psychologist's evaluations of their opinions.
3. Form a proper self-image and develop a positive attitude towards life.

### ○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一) 核心词汇

1. pretend *v.* 假装, 装作
2. bother *v.* (使) 苦恼
3. acknowledge *v.* 承认 (某事属实或某情况存在)
4. identical *adj.* 完全相同的; 非常相似的
5. enlarge *v.* (使) 增大, 扩大
6. misjudge *v.* 对 (人或情况) 判断错误
7. roommate *n.* (尤指大学里的) 室友
8. skinny *adj.* 极瘦的, 皮包骨的
9. boost *v.* 促进, 推动
10. dormitory *n.* 寝室
11. pill *n.* 药丸, 药片
12. a lack of 缺乏……
13. be surprised at 对……感到惊奇
14. make an effort 努力
15. leave an impression on 给……留下印象
16. keep fit 保持健康
17. tend to 易于; 倾向于
18. care about 关心, 在乎

19. in terms of 就……而言; 在……方面

20. in addition to 除……之外 (还)

21. play a part in 发挥作用; 扮演角色

22. stare at 盯着, 凝视

23. come across 偶然遇到; 无意中发现; 被理解

#### (二) 阅读词汇

1. obsessive *adj.* 痴迷的, 迷恋的; 过度的 (含贬义)

2. lipstick *n.* 唇膏, 口红

3. overlook *v.* 忽视, 忽略

4. self-critical *adj.* 自我批评的, 自我批判的

5. makeover *n.* (以新衣服、新发型等进行的) 打扮, 装扮

6. freckle *n.* (尤指脸上的) 雀斑, 斑点

7. jawline *n.* 下巴的形状

8. narcissist *n.* 自我陶醉者

9. bizarre *adj.* 古怪的; 奇异的

10. stereotype *n.* 模式化的思想

11. boost one's confidence 增加某人的信心

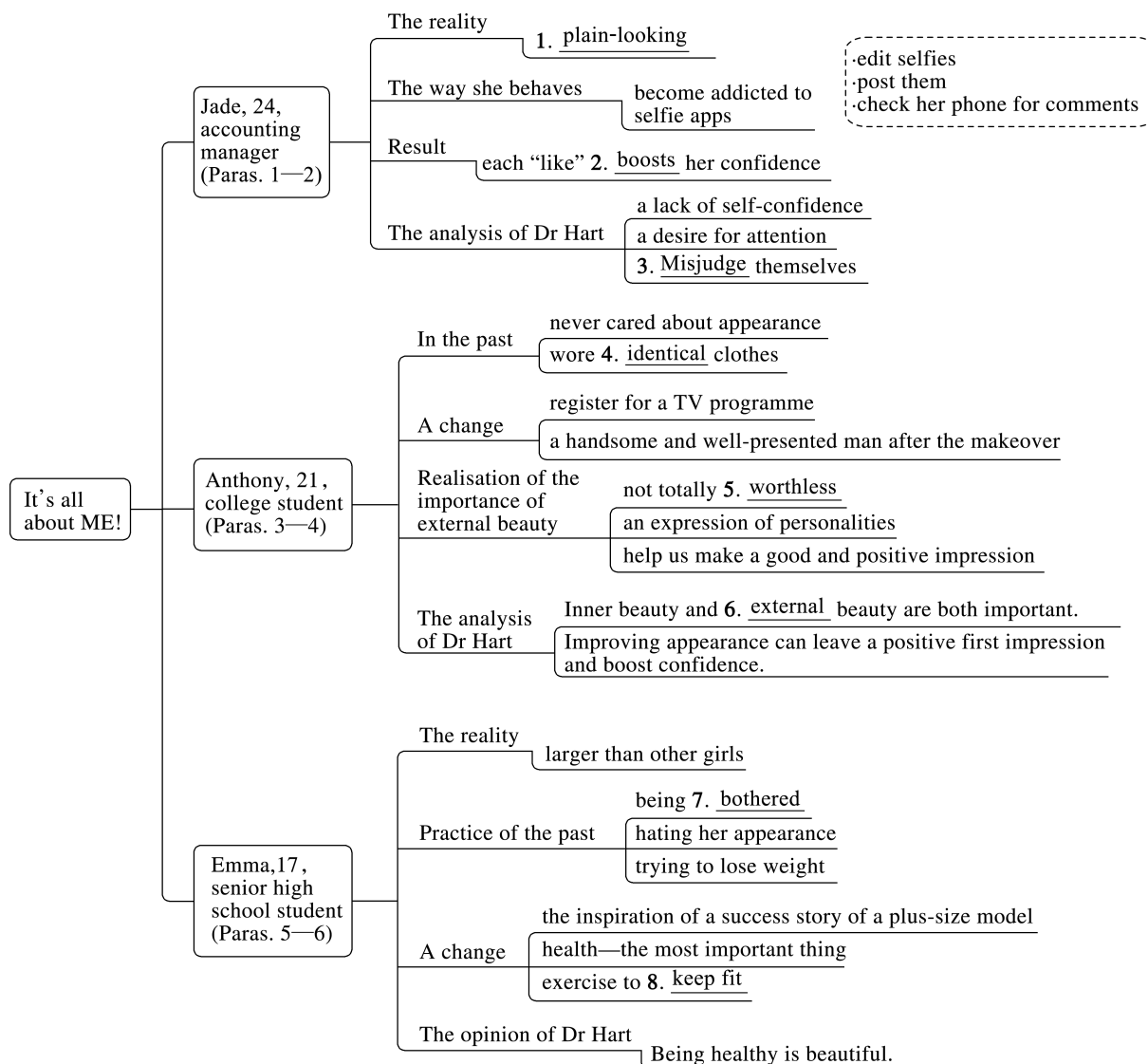
12. from head to toe 从头到脚

13. a desire for 渴望……

## 任务型课堂

### 文本整体理解

#### Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### 文本细节领悟

#### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Why does Jade eagerly check her phone a hundred times every day?
- Because she is addicted to using mobile phones.
  - Because she wants to edit more beautiful selfies.
  - Because she is afraid of missing important messages.
  - Because she wants to see others' comments on her image.

2. When did Anthony begin to realise the importance of external beauty?
- After he heard a song in *Ugly Betty*.
  - After he received a letter from Dr Hart.
  - After he attended a TV programme.
  - After he came across the success story of Tess Holliday.
3. What made Emma change her ideas about being beautiful?
- Dr Hart's advice.
  - Her failure in trying to lose weight.
  - The change of her roommates' attitude.
  - The success story of a plus-size model, Tess Holliday.

4. What does the word “well-presented” in Paragraph 3 probably mean?
- A. Gentle. B. Good-looking.  
C. Hard-working. D. Considerate.

答案: 1~4 DCDB

### ○语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Through interviews, I was able to discover what “me” means to other people, and how they have learnt to appreciate the beauty in themselves.  
[句子分析]句中 and 连接两个宾语从句。what “me” means to other people 为第一个从句,由 what 引导;how they have learnt to appreciate the beauty in themselves 为第二个从句,由 how 引导。  
[尝试翻译]通过采访,我能够发现“我”对其他人意味着什么,以及他们如何学会欣赏自己的美。
2. That’s why I could never understand my sister, who has 17 lipsticks and can’t decide which one to use every morning.  
[句子分析]句中 why I could never understand my sister 为 why 引导的表语从句,构成 that’s why... 句式,who has 17 lipsticks and can’t decide which one to use every morning 为关系代词 who 引导的

非限制性定语从句,修饰先行词 my sister,其中 which one to use 作动词 decide 的宾语。

[尝试翻译]那就是我永远无法理解我妹妹的原因,她有 17 支口红,每天早上都不知道该用哪一支。

3. What I really admire is the way she has acknowledged that good health not only makes us more beautiful, but happier, too!

[句子分析]本句中 what 引导主语从句,what 在从句中作 admire 的宾语;表语 the way 后是一个省略 that/in which 的定语从句,定语从句中 that 引导的从句作 acknowledged 的宾语,该从句中还有一个包含“not only... but (also)...”的并列结构,其中,happier 前省略了 makes us。

[尝试翻译]我真正欣赏她的一点是,她认可身体健康不仅使我们更美丽,而且也让我们更快乐!

### ○思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. Why do we care so much about how we look?  
略
2. Are there more important things in life than beauty? What do you think they are?  
略

## Unit 1 课后素养评价(一)

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

#### I. 阅读理解

Have you ever made your life look a little more charming than it actually is by posting truths on social media? If so, you may be damaging your mental health.

The posts we make on social media platforms allow us to look back and see what we did on a given day. But what happens when, in an effort to impress our online friends, photos and videos we post become beautified versions of the things we did?

A young girl named Sophia went out to a romantic anniversary dinner with her boyfriend, had a near relationship-ending fight during dessert, then came home and posted, “Had the best time out with the love of my life!”—even with a photo of the meal. No surprise, but according to a new study, Sophia was by no means unique. Two-thirds of users admit lying about their lives on social media with 20 percent of young people between the ages of 18 and

24 stating that they edit their own stories by frequently lying about relationships and promotions.

By beautifying our online stories, we are harming our memories. We start believing the stories we tell rather than remembering what really happened. Soon, the real experience is lost and all that remains is the beautified version of history.

Scientists fear that these edited stories will end up changing our memories. It’s well confirmed through research that our own memories are often unreliable and can be easily controlled. Writing down one’s life in the form of a journal, or even on social media can help us keep our memories undamaged, but only if we tell the truth. So recording our experiences through whatever medium, to later recall lessons we learned, is not only acceptable but desirable. In fact, looking back at our own past—however embarrassing or uncomfortable—is not just healthy but can be enjoyable.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要说明在社交媒体上美化自己的故事会损害我们的心理健康,因为这无异于撒谎,欺骗别人就是欺骗自己,最终自己也免不了受伤。

1. Why did Sophia post her story with a photo of the meal?

- A. To make her post attractive.
- B. To show her photography skill.
- C. To convince others of her story.
- D. To show how enjoyable the meal was.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“in an effort to impress our online friends”和第三段中的“... even with a photo of the meal.”可知, Sophia 发帖时配上吃饭的照片目的就是要使别人信服她的故事。故选 C。

2. In what kind of tone did the writer write the text?

- A. Encouraging.
- B. Critical.
- C. Humorous.
- D. Enthusiastic.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“If so, you may be damaging your mental health.”和第四段中的“By beautifying our online stories, we are harming our memories.”以及最后一段中的“... but only if we tell the truth.”可知,作者对美化网络故事持批判的观点,故而文章的笔调是批判性的。故选 B。

3. What do we know from the last paragraph?

- A. Recalling the unpleasant past can also be enjoyable.
- B. Writing down our life on social media does no good to us.
- C. Recording experiences through media is unacceptable.
- D. Seeking support from social media is understandable.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段最后一句“In fact, looking back at our own past—however embarrassing or uncomfortable—is not just healthy but can be enjoyable.”可知,“In fact”在句中起强调的作用,作者强调回忆不愉快的过往也可能是令人愉悦的。故选 A。

4. What lesson can be drawn from the text?

- A. Leaving others a good impression is desirable.
- B. Editing our online stories weakens our memory.

C. Posting our experiences on social media is risky.

D. Beautifying our history ends up hurting ourselves.

D 推理判断题。全文主要说明在社交媒体上美化自己的故事会损害我们的心理健康,因为这无异于在撒谎,欺骗别人就是欺骗自己,最终自己也免不了受伤。故选 D。

## II. 七选五

When Ken was in high school, he did well and had a strong sense of accomplishment. However, when he was in college, his grades were not so outstanding among academically gifted students much like himself, if not better. Often he feels dissatisfied and is withdrawing from people and activities. 1

The literature generally has found that many of us tend to let our self-worth be contingent upon external events (such as academics and physical attractiveness). 2 As a result, our feelings about ourselves can end up being in the hands of others.

Obviously, we all want to experience things that make us feel good. But when we have contingent self-worth, we might engage in activities that make us feel worthy while avoiding activities that make us feel unworthy. 3 Instead of working hard to meet our goals, we'll try to avoid failure. And if we do fail one day, we might abandon our goals, lose motivation, or make excuses to help ourselves feel better.

4 If our self-worth is contingent upon being successful at work, we might only choose jobs that are easy. That way we never fail and ensure that we always know that we are worthy. Or, maybe we only think we're worthy if we weigh less than 130 pounds. We might undereat or engage in unhealthy eating practices just to make sure that we feel good.

Self-worth is an important psychological construct that affects not only how we think about ourselves but it also has an impact on our psychological health and functioning. So, give up the idea of seeking approval from others. 5 Doing so reminds us to be fully aware of who we are.

- A. That may pose potential dangers.  
 B. Unfortunately, he is no exception.  
 C. When our self-worth depends on those, it's unstable.  
 D. Let's cite some examples to further demonstrate that.

- E. Let's dive into the cause to learn more about self-worth.  
 F. Actually, he's always been labelled as "other people's child".  
 G. Instead, learn to base your self-worth on internal contingencies like virtues and faiths.

答案: 1~5 BCADG

## Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

### 学习任务目标

1. Learn important expressions about the topic and use them in communication.
2. Practise using the expressions to complete relevant exercises.

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Lower interest rates can **boost** the economy by reducing borrowing costs for consumers and businesses. 促进, 推动
2. He would ask who we were and **pretend** not to know us. 假装
3. I'm surprised to find that her dress is almost **identical** to mine. 完全相同的
4. He no longer lives in the school **dormitory** because his new house is just nearby. 寝室
5. To solve its problems, it needs more open discussion and more **self-critical** thinking. 自我批判的
6. The sleeping **pill** doesn't work for more than nine hours. 药丸

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>skinny</u> <i>adj.</i> 极瘦的, 皮包骨的	skin <i>n.</i> 皮肤
<u>bother</u> <i>v.</i> (使) 苦恼	bothered <i>adj.</i> 担心的; 烦恼的; 生气的
	bothersome <i>adj.</i> 引起麻烦的; 令人讨厌的; 令人为难的
<u>acknowledge</u> <i>v.</i> 承认(某事属实或某情况存在)	acknowledgement <i>n.</i> 承认; (公开的) 感谢; 收件复函

#### III. 补全短语

1. from head to toe 从头到脚
2. a lack of 缺乏……
3. leave an impression on 给……留下印象
4. keep fit 保持健康
5. make an effort 努力
6. be surprised at 对……感到惊奇
7. nothing but 仅仅, 不过
8. a desire for 渴望……

#### IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: as 引导状语从句

As a song in Ugly Betty puts it, "It's a pretty person's world".

正如《丑女贝蒂》中的那首歌所唱的: “这是个看脸的世界。”

2. 句型公式: what 引导名词性从句

Dad thinks I am a narcissist, but what I say is that my pictures aren't hurting anyone, so who cares?

爸爸认为我是个自我陶醉者, 但我要说的是我的照片不会伤害任何人, 所以谁在乎呢?

3. 句型公式: why 引导表语从句

That's why I could never understand my sister, who has 17 lipsticks and can't decide which one to use every morning.

那就是我永远无法理解我妹妹的原因, 她有 17 支口红, 每天早上都不知道该用哪一支。



## ○ 任务型课堂 ○

### 1. pretend v. 假装, 装作

[教材原文] People who **pretend** to be someone they are not tend to misjudge themselves.

假装成别人的人往往会错误地判断自己。

[归纳拓展]

pretend to be sb./sth. 假装是某人/某物

pretend to do sth. 假装做某事

pretend to be doing sth. 假装正在做某事

pretend to have done sth. 假装做过某事

pretend that... 假装……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① If you pretend to know (know) what you don't know, you'll only make a fool of yourself.

② When the father came home, the naughty boy pretended to be doing (do) his homework.

③ Jim pretended to have solved (solve) the difficult problem and left the company.

(2) 写作微练

(2024·浙江1月卷读后续写之心理描写) 她决定记住她的班级的位置, 然后假装其他地方不存在。

She decided that she would memorize where her classes were and then pretend that the rest of the place didn't exist.

### 2. identical adj. 完全相同的; 非常相似的

[教材原文] I only used to have five **identical** pairs of trousers and five identical shirts.

我以前只有五条一模一样的裤子和五件一模一样的衬衫。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be identical to 和……一模一样; 等同于

(2) identity n. 身份; 同一性; 一致

identity card (ID card) 身份证

(3) identify v. 确认; 识别; 鉴别

identify... with... 使……等同于, 使成为一致

(4) identification n. 确定; 鉴定; 辨认; 身份证明

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① She is innocent; it was a case of mistaken identity (identical).

② The early identification (identify) of children with special educational needs is very important.

③ People who had identified (identify) themselves

as not wealthy were more likely to listen to and look at the stranger.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之通知) 所使用的姓名必须与你身份证上显示的姓名相同。

The name used must be identical to that shown in your identity document.

### 3. bother v. (使) 苦恼 n. 麻烦; 不便; 困难

[教材原文] For a long time, this really **bothered** me.

很长一段时间, 这真的使我苦恼。

[归纳拓展]

(1) bother to do/doing sth. 花费时间精力做某事

It bothers sb. to do sth. 做某事使某人苦恼/担心/不高兴。

Don't bother! 不必麻烦!

It is no bother! 没什么麻烦的!

(2) bothered adj. 担心的; 烦恼的; 生气的  
not bothered 无所谓

(3) bothersome adj. 引起麻烦的; 令人讨厌的; 令人为难的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Why bother to ask/asking (ask) if you're not really interested in it?

② —Where shall we eat?

—I'm not bothered (bother)!

③ If the symptoms (症状) continue or are bothersome (bother), check with your doctor in time.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之动作描写) 这位女士说耳环很小, 并且和地板的颜色一样, 她补充说并不想麻烦弗兰克。

The woman said that the earring was very small and had the same colour as the floor, adding she didn't want to bother Frank.

### 4. acknowledge v. 承认 (某事属实或某情况存在)

[教材原文] What I really admire is the way she has **acknowledged** that good health not only makes us more beautiful, but happier, too!

我真正欣赏她的一点是, 她认可身体健康不仅使我们更美丽, 而且也让我们更快乐!



## [归纳拓展]

(1) acknowledge doing/having done sth. 承认做过某事

acknowledge sb./sth. as/to be 承认某人/某物是……

acknowledge that... 承认……

It's (universally/widely) acknowledged that... 人们(普遍)认为……

(2) acknowledgement *n.* 承认; (公开的) 感谢; 收件复函

## 名师点拨

acknowledge 作“承认”讲时, 后跟动词时要用动名词形式。

## [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① She acknowledged making/having made (make) the same mistake again.

② I didn't receive an acknowledgement (acknowledge) of my application until yesterday morning.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之报道) 众所周知, 面部识别使我们更容易进入车站、机场和其他地方。

It is acknowledged that facial recognition makes it easy for us to get into stations, airports and other places.

## 5. as 引导状语从句

[教材原文] As a song in *Ugly Betty* puts it, “It's a pretty person's world”.

正如《丑女贝蒂》中的那首歌所唱的: “这是个看脸的世界。”

[句式分析] 句中 as 引导方式状语从句, 意为“正如, 像……那样”。

## [归纳拓展]

(1) as 用作连词, 可以引导方式、时间、原因、让步和比较状语从句。

(2) as 引导让步状语从句时要用部分倒装。

## 名师点拨

as 引导让步状语从句时要把形容词、副词、名词或动词原形放到 as 前面, 此时可用 though 替代。注意此时名词前无冠词。

Young **as** he is, he knows a lot.

尽管年轻, 他懂得很多。

Try **as** he might, he failed again.

尽管他尝试了, 但又失败了。

## [即学即练]

(1) 写出下列句中 as 的含义

① **As** I stepped nearer the bus station, the noise became louder. 随着, 当……时候

② Much **as** I liked you, I couldn't live with you.

尽管

③ **As** it was getting late, we soon turned back.

因为

④ I have changed it **as** you suggested.

按照

⑤ He ran **as** fast **as** he could.

像……一样

⑥ **As** years went by, his theory proved to be correct.

随着

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写) 当想到为母亲准备的惊喜时, 这对双胞胎兴奋不已。

The twins were filled with excitement as they thought of the surprise they were planning for their mother.

## 多义词汇 专练

## 1. identical

A. *adj.* 相同的, 同样的

B. *adj.* 同一的

① The two pictures are similar, although not **identical**.

A

② This is the **identical** room we stayed in last year.

B

## 2. acknowledge

A. *v.* 承认(属实)

B. *v.* 告知收悉

C. *v.* (公开) 感谢

① They wish to **acknowledge** the assistance of the police in the making of this film.

C

② We must **acknowledge** his letter as soon as we receive it.

B

③ He unwillingly **acknowledged** having made a mistake.

A

## Unit 1 课后素养评价 (二)

### Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

#### I. 单词拼写

- The upset girl opened a book, pretending (假装) to read, with tears dropping on the open page.
- Judging from the appearance, she is identical (完全相同的) to her twin sister.
- But dormitories (宿舍) are not for being alone—I've been told—they're about learning to get along with others.
- What bothers (使苦恼) his mother most is that he seems to show no interest in music.
- She lost the race because she misjudged (错判) the ability of the other competitors.
- I often surf the Internet and read books, which enlarges (扩大) my vocabulary.
- That people are skinny (极瘦的) doesn't mean they are beautiful and healthy.
- It's universally acknowledged (承认) that success never comes out of thin air.

#### II. 短语填空

be surprised at; make an effort; a lack of; come across; keep fit; leave a positive impression on

- Hit by a lack of fresh air, many climbers suffered from headaches.
- It was not your beauty but the way you dealt with the conflicts that left a positive impression on the manager.
- The story written by him has a surprising ending and everyone is surprised at it.
- The prisoner made an effort to escape, but he couldn't climb over the prison wall.
- It was when I got back to my apartment that I first came across my new neighbour.
- She and her family bicycle to work, which helps them keep fit.

#### III. 完成句子

- Ever since entering senior high school, I have been used to sharing a dormitory with a couple of roommates.  
自从进入高中,我已经习惯了和几个室友共用一间宿舍。
- Her parents didn't approve of the way that/in which she lost weight.  
她的父母不赞同她减肥的方式。

- What we care about is the students' safety in the camp.  
我们关心的是学生们在营地的安全。

- He not only didn't concentrate on his study but also pretended to have reviewed his lessons very well. That was why he failed to pass the examination.

他不仅不专注于学习而且还假装已经把功课复习得很好。那就是他考试失败的原因。

- We'd better leave things as they are until the police arrive.

在警察到来前,我们最好让现场保持原样。

#### IV. 完形填空

Lately, I have been struggling to connect with my dad because our conversations have seemed unimportant to him. In a half-hearted attempt to find something that 1 him, I pulled out my phone and showed him a few 2 of Jay, my new pet rabbit.

"Did Mum tell you I got a bunny?" It was a strange question. To my surprise, my dad's 3 were lifted. "A black bunny!" he called out, getting closer to 4 the photos. He wanted to know more. I hurried to find more photos, holding on to this 5 opportunity.

I shouldn't be 6 that it was a bunny that broke through the 7 between my dad and me. Growing up, we never talked much. 8, our time together centred around animals, like catching crayfish at the river and caring for turtles and crabs. 9 animals has always been our thing.

A few months later, I came prepared with more photos and videos of Jay on my laptop so my dad could see them more 10. I had been 11 that his initial interest in Jay was a one-off event, but he 12 up again when I showed him the new stuff.

Our love for animals is the 13 that connects us. There was no 14 to start having deep conversations if that had never been our style—just finding 15 together in a photo of a bunny was enough.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了“我”成年以后和父亲之间的谈话变少,但是对于动物的喜爱又将“我们”联系到一起的故事。

1. A. connects B. comforts  
C. inspires D. interests  
D 根据上文的“Lately, I have been struggling to connect with my dad...”可知,“我”一直在努力与父亲建立联系。由此推断出为了引起他的兴趣,“我”掏出手机给他看兔子的照片。故选 D。
2. A. gifts B. photos  
C. videos D. posters  
B 根据下文的“I hurried to find more photos...”可知,“我”掏出手机是为了给父亲看照片。photos 为原词复现。故选 B。
3. A. spirits B. feelings  
C. eyes D. hands  
A 根据下文的“He wanted to know more.”可知,父亲想要对兔子了解更多,说明他对兔子感兴趣,他的精神振奋了。故选 A。
4. A. point at B. glance at  
C. go over D. watch over  
C 根据下文的“He wanted to know more.”可知,父亲想要了解更多关于兔子的事情。由此推断出他走近去细看照片。故选 C。
5. A. unexpected B. unfinished  
C. unimportant D. unsuccessful  
A 根据上文的“Lately, I have been struggling to connect with my dad because our conversations have seemed unimportant to him.”以及“He wanted to know more.”可知,这个机会是“我”意想不到的。故选 A。
6. A. disappointed B. annoyed  
C. satisfied D. surprised  
D 根据下文的“it was a bunny that broke through the 7 ...”可知,一只兔子就能打破“我”和父亲之间的隔阂,这件事让“我”觉得很惊讶。故选 D。
7. A. chat B. routine  
C. bridge D. fog  
D 根据下文的“Growing up, we never talked much.”可知,“我”在长大后和父亲之间就没有太多的谈话,说明“我”和父亲之间存在隔阂。故选 D。
8. A. Plus B. Thus  
C. Meanwhile D. Instead  
D 根据上文的“Growing up, we never talked much.”和下文的“... our time together centred around animals, like catching crayfish at the river and caring for turtles and crabs.”可知,“我”长大后和父亲谈话很少,相反的是“我们”可以在一起

围绕动物展开活动。前后句之间形成了对比,故用 instead。故选 D。

9. A. Respecting B. Loving  
C. Researching D. Catching  
B 根据下文的“Our love for animals is the 13 that connects us.”可知,“我”和父亲对于动物是热爱的。由此推断出爱动物一直是“我们”的共同点。故选 B。
10. A. easily B. gradually  
C. patiently D. quickly  
A 根据上文的“‘A black bunny!’ he called out, getting closer to 4 the photos. He wanted to know more.”可知,“我”的父亲对 Jay 是感兴趣的,所以“我”准备 Jay 的照片和视频是为了让父亲更容易看见。故选 A。
11. A. pleased B. ashamed  
C. worried D. discouraged  
C 根据下文的“his initial interest in Jay was a one-off event”可知,“我”之前担心父亲对 Jay 的热情是一时的。故选 C。
12. A. cheered B. stood  
C. gave D. looked  
A 根据上文的“To my surprise, my dad’s 3 were lifted.”和下文的“again”可知,父亲第一次看见 Jay 的照片是精神振奋的,通过“again”推断出父亲看见 Jay 的照片再一次振奋起来。cheer up 意为“振奋精神”,符合语境。故选 A。
13. A. trick B. privilege  
C. bond D. routine  
C 根据上文的“9 animals has always been our thing.”可知,爱动物是“我们”的共同点,说明“我们”对动物的爱是连接“我们”的纽带。故选 C。
14. A. need B. help  
C. harm D. chance  
A 根据上文的“Growing up, we never talked much.”及“Our love for animals is the 13 that connects us.”可知,“我”和父亲之间话不多,但是对动物的爱就是连接“我们”的纽带。由此推断出“我们”没必要开始深入的对话就能找到快乐。故选 A。
15. A. hope B. joy  
C. success D. freedom  
B 根据上文的“9 animals has always been our thing.”可知,爱小动物是“我”和父亲的共同点,说明看兔子 Jay 的照片会带给“我们”快乐。故选 B。

Section Ⅲ Using language

学习任务目标

- 1. Study the sentences, and understand the structures of subject clauses.
- 2. Employ relevant vocabulary to describe personal appearance and personalities.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. Child **welfare** services are well established and comprehensive. 福利
- 2. She endured the **monstrous** behaviour for years. 骇人的
- 3. He became as wild as a **beast** and no one could comfort him. 野兽
- 4. “May I come in?” she asked in a **timid** voice. 胆小的, 胆怯的
- 5. She accused her husband of being a **coward**. 胆小鬼; 懦夫
- 6. As far as I know, Mr White is a **righteous** man, and he always behaves justly. 正派的, 正直的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>assumption</u> <i>n.</i> 假定, 假设	<u>assume</u> <i>v.</i> 假定; 认为
	<u>assuming</u> <i>conj.</i> 假定; 假设
<u>saving</u> <i>n.</i> 积蓄	<u>save</u> <i>v.</i> 储蓄, 积攒, 节省; 挽救
<u>psychology</u> <i>n.</i> 心理, 心理过程	<u>psychological</u> <i>adj.</i> 心理的; 心理学的
	<u>psychologist</u> <i>n.</i> 心理学家
<u>frightful</u> <i>adj.</i> 可怕的	<u>fright</u> <i>n.</i> 害怕, 恐惧
	<u>frightening</u> <i>adj.</i> 吓人的, 令人恐惧的
	<u>frightened</u> <i>adj.</i> 恐惧的, 害怕的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>loyal</u> <i>adj.</i> 忠贞的, 忠实的, 忠诚的	<u>loyalty</u> <i>n.</i> 忠贞, 忠实, 忠诚

III. 补全短语

- 1. for instance 例如
- 2. in secret 秘密地
- 3. donate... to ... 把……捐赠给……
- 4. transform into 转变成
- 5. regard... as ... 认为……是……
- 6. in reality 实际上, 事实上
- 7. to sum up 总而言之, 总之

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式: how 引导名词性从句  
How others are feeling is not something that we should make assumptions about, because it's not always obvious who is truly happy.  
我们不应该推测别人的感受, 因为谁是真正快乐的并不总是显而易见的。
- 2. 句型公式: 不定式作后置定语  
She also set a national record as the oldest enlisted woman to do a parachute jump, at the age of 51.  
她还创造了一项全国纪录, 成为最年长的跳伞女兵, 那时她 51 岁。
- 3. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语  
However, he performs brave actions even when he feels afraid, proving that he is in fact a courageous individual.  
然而, 即使他在感到害怕的时候, 他也会做出勇敢的行为, 证明他实际上是一个勇敢的人。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. assumption n. 假定, 假设

[教材原文] How others are feeling is not something that we should make **assumptions** about, because it's not always obvious who is truly happy.

我们不应该推测别人的感受, 因为谁是真正快乐的并不总是显而易见的。

[归纳拓展]

(1) make assumptions/an assumption about 对……做出臆断

on the assumption that... 假定……

(2) assume v. 假设; 认为

assume sb./sth. to be... 假定某人/事……

assume that... 假如……

It is assumed that... 假定; 人们认为……

(3) assuming conj. 假定; 假设; 假如……

名师点拨

assuming (that) 后跟句子, 相当于 if 引导的条件状语从句, 类似的结构还有 suppose/supposing (that), providing/provided (that), given (that) 等。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The theory is based on a series of wrong assumptions (assume).

② Many people tend to make assumptions about you based on your appearance.

③ Assuming (assume) that we start out at six, we are bound to get there before dark.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写) 尖叫声如此之大, 我以为有人闯进了我们家。

The scream was so loud that I assumed someone had broken into our home.

### 2. 不定式作后置定语

[教材原文] She also set a national record as the oldest enlisted woman **to do a parachute jump**, at the age of 51.

她还创造了一项全国纪录, 成为最年长的跳伞女兵, 那时她 51 岁。

[归纳拓展]

名词或代词前有 the very, the only, the next, 序数词, 形容词最高级修饰时, 常用不定式作后置定语。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Do you think the young man was the best man to do (do) the job?

② Denmark is said to be the first country to discover (discover) amber.

(2) 写作微练

(2023·全国乙卷应用文写作之投稿) 然后我用土豆煮肉。最困难的任务是用西红柿煮鱼。

Then I cooked meat with potatoes. The most difficult task to do was to cook fish with tomatoes.

### 多义词汇 专练

Although the programme asks the members only to drive students to and from their classes, Wilson often goes beyond to ensure the **welfare** and safety of the students. C

A. n. 社会保障金

B. n. (政府给予的) 福利

C. n. (个体或群体的) 幸福

## 语法研习课

### 主语从句

#### 语法感知

① **That** he finished writing the composition in such a short time surprised us.

② It's true **that** inner beauty is very important, but external beauty shouldn't be completely overlooked.

③ **Whether** we will go for an outing tomorrow remains unknown.

④ **Who** will be our monitor hasn't been decided yet.

⑤ Dad thinks I am a narcissist, but **what** I say is that my pictures aren't hurting anyone.

⑥ **Whom** we must study for is a question of great importance.

⑦ **When** we arrive at the destination doesn't matter.

⑧ **How** this happened is not clear to anyone.

1. 以上句子中, ①②③为从属连词引导的主语从句;



④⑤⑥为连接代词引导的主语从句;⑦⑧为连接副词引导的主语从句。

- 句①和句②中的 that 不作句子成分,没有任何意义,只起连接作用。句②中 that 引导的从句为真正的主语, it 作形式主语。
- 句③中的 Whether 不作句子成分,意为“是否”。
- 句④⑤⑥中的连接代词在从句中作主语或宾语。
- 句⑦⑧中的连接副词在从句中作状语。

## 语法精讲

### 一、概述

在句子中起名词作用的各种从句统称为名词性从句。根据它们在句中的语法作用,这类从句又可分为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。其中充当主语的从句叫主语从句。

### 二、引导词

主语从句的常用引导词:

- 连接词 that;
- 连接词 whether;
- 连接代词 what, who, which, whom, whose, whatever, whoever, whomever, whichever 等;
- 连接副词 when, where, how, why, whenever, wherever 等。

### 三、that 引导的主语从句

- that 引导主语从句时只起连接作用,在从句中不作任何成分,也无任何意义。

**That** he will win the medal seems unlikely.

他似乎不大可能获得奖牌。

**That**she survived the accident is a miracle.

这次事故她幸免于难是个奇迹。

#### 名师点拨

that 引导主语从句时通常不能省略,尤其是位于句首时。

- 有时为了平衡句子结构,用 it 充当形式主语,而将 that 从句置于后面。

**It**is certain **that**she will do well in her exam.

毫无疑问她的考试成绩会很好。

**It's**a pity **that**we can't go.

遗憾的是,我们不能去。

- 主语从句中常用 it 作形式主语的句型。

(1) **It** + be + 形容词 (clear, obvious, true, possible, certain, important, necessary, strange, natural, likely, surprising, vital 等) + **that** 从句

**It**is important **that**he should know about it.

重要的是他应当知道此事。

**It**is likely **that**the meeting will be put off.

会议很可能会被推迟。

(2) **It** + be + 名词(词组) (a pity, a shame, an honour, a fact, no wonder, no surprise 等) + **that** 从句

**It's**an honour **that**we have been invited to the party.

很荣幸我们被邀请参加宴会。

**It's**no surprise **that**he won first prize in the English speaking contest.

他在这次英语演讲比赛中获得一等奖并不令人惊奇。

(3) **It** + be + 过去分词 (said, reported, announced, proved, thought, expected, hoped, decided, suggested, advised, ordered, required, demanded 等) + **that** 从句

**It**is said **that**he has been to Australia.

据说他去过澳大利亚。

**It**is expected **that**air quality will become better and better.

人们期望空气质量会变得越来越好。

#### 名师点拨

该句型中,如果动词是表示建议、命令、要求、请求,那么 that 从句使用虚拟语气,即从句中的谓语动词形式要用“should + 动词原形”,其中 should 可以省略。

**It**is suggested **that**they (should) take effective measures to protect the environment.

人们建议他们应该采取有效措施保护环境。

(4) **It** + 不及物动词(短语) (happen, occur, seem, appear, turn out 等) + **that** 从句

**It**happened **that**he was out when I called on him.  
当我拜访他时,他碰巧不在家。

**It**occurred to me **that**I had left the door unlocked.  
我突然想起来我忘记锁门了。

### 四、whether 引导的主语从句

whether 意为“是否”,引导主语从句时只起连接作用,在从句中不作任何成分。

**Whether**they would support us was still a problem.  
他们是否会支持我们仍然是个问题。

**It**makes no difference to me **whether**he comes or not.

他来不来对我来说无关紧要。

#### 名师点拨

(1) whether 引导主语从句时可以放在句首,也可以用 it 充当形式主语,将真正的主语后置。

(2) whether 引导主语从句时一般不能用 if 替代。

### 五、连接代词引导的主语从句

连接代词包括 what, who, which, whom, whose, whatever, whoever, whomever, whichever 等,在从句中作主语、宾语、表语或定语。

**What** she did is not yet known.

她做了什么尚不清楚。

**Who** will present the meeting has not been decided yet.

由谁来主持会议还没有决定。

**Whatever** you choose in the end will be supported by us, your loyal friends.

无论你最终选择了什么,都会得到我们这些忠实的朋友们的支持。

**Whichever** of you joins our competition will be rewarded with our specially designed souvenirs.

你们中任何参加我们比赛的人都会获得我们特殊设计的纪念品作为奖励。

1. what 引导主语从句时在从句中作主语、宾语、表语或定语,相当于定语从句中的“先行词+关系代词”的形式,表示“……的事情(时间、地点、样子等)”。

**What** (= The thing that) you did yesterday was right.

昨天你做得对。

2. who 意为“谁”,表示疑问含义;whoever 意为“无论是谁”,表示肯定意义,相当于 anyone who.

**Whoever** (= Anyone who) did the job must be rewarded.

无论谁做了这项工作都一定要得到酬谢。

### 六、连接副词引导的主语从句

连接副词包括 when, where, how, why, whenever, wherever 等,在主语从句中作状语。

**When** we'll start tomorrow will be told soon.

我们很快会被告知明天何时动身。

**Why** he came here is not known.

他为什么来这里尚不清楚。

**Wherever** he'll go for his journey makes no difference to me.

无论他去哪里旅行对我来说都无所谓。

### 名师点拨

“疑问词+ever”既可引导主语从句,又可引导让步状语从句。而“no matter+疑问词”只能引导让步状语从句。

**Whoever** breaks the law should be punished. (主语从句)

**Whoever** (= **No matter who**) breaks the law, he or she should be punished. (让步状语从句)

无论谁违反法律,都应该受到惩罚。

### 语法冲关

#### I. 用适当的连接词填空

- Whether they can solve the problem is still unknown.
- Whoever wants to stay in a hotel has to pay the bill.
- Where he comes from still puzzles all of us.
- It is said that the bridge has existed for more than three centuries.
- Who will be the winner hasn't been announced.
- What my mother had told me was deeply rooted in my mind.
- That we go swimming every day does a lot of good to us.
- It's uncertain whether the experiment is worth doing.

#### II. 完成句子

- It is a pity that he should feel so upset.  
遗憾的是,他感到如此难过。
- To fight against the disease, what we need most are scientific instructions and close cooperation.  
与该疾病抗争,我们最需要的是科学的指导和紧密的合作。
- Whoever leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights.  
最后一个离开房间的人应该把灯关上。
- Whether we'll go camping tomorrow depends on the weather.  
明天我们是否去露营视天气而定。
- That the boy didn't take the medicine made his mother very angry.  
男孩没吃药,这使他母亲很生气。

## Unit 1 课后素养评价 (三)

## Section III Using language

## I. 选词填空

finding; for instance; welfare; in addition to; psychology; transform into; regard... as; in reality

1. It seems as if he knew everything, but in reality, he is as stupid as he can be.
2. There were calls for major changes to the welfare system.
3. We regarded this as a chance to prove the human spirit at that time.
4. Surveys conducted in other countries reported similar findings.
5. He graduated from New York University with a degree in psychology.
6. Seeing the beast, Monkey King quickly transforms into an animal.
7. Several of his friends came: Ben, Carol and Mike, for instance.
8. Of course, in addition to my weekly pay, I got a lot of tips.

## II. 单句语法填空

1. The old man donated most of his savings (save) to the local school to give more children a good education in the mountain villages.
2. Who will set a record can't be predicted, because all the competitors are competitive.
3. The newly-elected leader applied to take (take) charge of welfare services.
4. That sounds rather simple, but in fact it's very difficult.
5. Who do you think is the best man to do (do) the work?
6. Whether we will hold a party in the open air tomorrow depends on the weather.
7. Having watered (water) the flowers, he began to cut the grass.
8. His grandparents often give him some pocket money in secret.
9. Who made the assumption (assume) that our football team wouldn't win the final match?
10. More and more people have realised that what they really need is not wealth but health.
11. How the accident happened is not clear to anyone.
12. It's reported that a frightful (fright) accident happened there.

## III. 阅读理解

Researchers say these little-studied structures, which can stretch for up to 50 metres and last for hundreds of years, could help our cities adapt to rising temperatures associated with the climate crisis. "It's really incredible how strong they are. They don't have any negative impact on the environment," said Ferdinand Ludwig, professor for green technologies at the Technical University of Munich.

The bridges stretch across rivers in India's mountainous Meghalaya area, connecting villages. They're all constructed from the aerial roots of the same kind of tree: the Indian rubber tree. Unlike bridges made from wood or bamboo, they aren't easily swept away and they don't rot—a common problem in what is often described as the world's wettest region. They've also proven more durable than bridges made from modern steel structures that quickly rust and decay in the damp climate.

The bridges are made and kept in good condition by individuals, families and communities from Khasi and Jaintia people. "In many cases it's a cooperation of all the inhabitants of two villages. This gives hope that this tradition can survive because it's on many shoulders," said Ludwig. While some of the bridges have become tourist attractions, seeing up to 2,000 visitors a day, not all of the bridges they studied were in active use, with some at risk of being cut down for firewood.

**【语篇解读】**慕尼黑科技大学的 Ludwig 教授和他的团队研究了印度梅加拉亚邦的一种桥。这种桥使用当地一种橡胶树的气根搭建, 适应炎热潮湿的气候, 环保且不会腐烂, 比现代桥梁更耐用。

1. What does Ludwig think of the bridges in Meghalaya?
  - A. They have been studied thoroughly.
  - B. They aren't as strong as wooden bridges.
  - C. They can't compete with steel structures.
  - D. They are totally nature-friendly.



D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“*They don't have any negative impact on the environment...*”可知, Ludwig 认为梅加拉亚的桥梁对自然完全友好。故选 D。

2. How are the bridges in Meghalaya different from modern bridges?

- A. They are usually taller.  
B. They can be swept away more easily.  
C. They are longer in most cases.  
D. They can survive the wet climate better.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*They've also proven more durable than bridges made from modern steel structures that quickly rust and decay in the damp climate.*”可知, 相比于现代桥梁, 梅加拉亚的桥梁能更好地存在于潮湿的气候中。故选 D。

3. How might Ludwig feel about many people building the bridges together?

- A. Indifferent.                      B. Disappointed.  
C. Relieved.                         D. Confused.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*This gives hope that this tradition can survive because it's on many shoulders...*”可知, 这是集体努力的结果,

所以 Ludwig 觉得不必担心这一传统会流失, 因此会“感到宽慰”。故选 C。

4. Which is the best title for the text?

- A. Special Bridges in India  
B. Disappearing Bridges in India  
C. Ways to Preserve Old Bridges  
D. Methods of Building Green Bridges

A 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“*Researchers say these little-studied structures, which can stretch for up to 50 metres and last for hundreds of years, could help our cities adapt to rising temperatures associated with the climate crisis.*”, 第二段中的“*The bridges stretch across rivers in India's mountainous Meghalaya area, connecting villages.*”, 第二段最后一句“*They've also proven more durable than bridges made from modern steel structures that quickly rust and decay in the damp climate.*”和最后一段中的“*This gives hope that this tradition can survive because it's on many shoulders...*”可知, 本文主要介绍了印度的一种特别的桥。故选 A。

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

### 学习任务目标

1. Learn the main expressions and structures.
2. Read and understand the main idea of the text, and reflect on conflicts between personal appearance and inner heart in pieces of literature.

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. She **resembles** her sister in appearance but not in character. 像; 与……相似
2. I think rats and snakes are **repulsive**. 令人厌恶的
3. The baby was born with a hearing **defect**. 缺陷
4. There are **immense** commercial pressures to exploit the country's tourism potential. 巨大的
5. The children **exclaimed** with excitement. 呼喊
6. Please allow us to show our **heartfelt** welcome to you. 衷心的
7. He teaches us to have **compassion** for the poor. 怜悯
8. She had a lot to say, but at the time she was unable to **utter** a word. 发出(声音)

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>novelist</u> <i>n.</i> 小说家	<u>novel</u> <i>n.</i> 小说 <i>adj.</i> 新颖的; 新奇的
<u>graceful</u> <i>adj.</i> 优美的, 优雅的	<u>grace</u> <i>n.</i> 优美, 优雅
<u>heartbreaking</u> <i>adj.</i> 令人悲伤的	<u>heartbroken</u> <i>adj.</i> 极度伤心的, 心碎的 <u>heartbreak</u> <i>n.</i> 心碎, 悲伤
<u>tenderness</u> <i>n.</i> 柔情	<u>tender</u> <i>adj.</i> 温柔的; 娇嫩的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>motive</u> <i>n.</i> (尤指隐藏的) 动机, 原因, 目的	<u>motivate</u> <i>v.</i> 激励, 激发……的热情
	<u>motivation</u> <i>n.</i> 动力, 积极性
<u>comprehension</u> <i>n.</i> 理解(力)	<u>comprehend</u> <i>v.</i> 理解, 领悟

### III. 补全短语

1. compare... to ... 把……与……比较
2. in public 公开地
3. next to 靠近; 仅次于
4. be concerned with 与……有关
5. start with 从……开始
6. as long as 只要

7. engage in 参与; 参加

8. attempt to do 企图做; 努力做; 尝试做

### IV. 补全句子

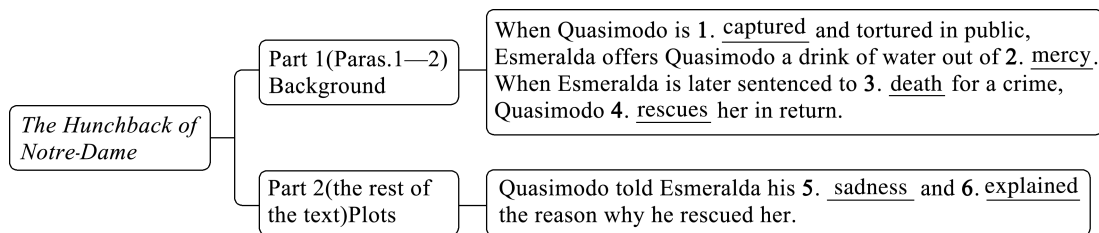
1. 句型公式: 否定词 never 置于句首引起的部分倒装  
Never have I viewed my ugliness as at the present moment.  
我从来没有像现在这样觉得自己丑。
2. 句型公式: there 引起的完全倒装  
There lay in the accents of the unfortunate man so significant an awareness of his sadness that she had not the strength to utter a syllable.  
从那不幸的人的声调里, 可以明显听出他是多么难过, 以致她连一个字也说不出。
3. 句型公式: so that 引导目的状语从句  
He hides the painting away so that no one else may see it.  
他把画藏起来, 不让别人看到。

## ○ 任务型课堂 ○

### Part 1 课文理解

#### ○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



#### ○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Where did the story of *The Hunchback of Notre-Dame* happen?  
A. In London. B. In Paris.  
C. In New York. D. In Tokyo.
2. Why couldn't Quasimodo hear what Esmeralda said?  
A. Because he was deaf.  
B. Because they were far away from each other.  
C. Because Esmeralda spoke in a low voice.  
D. Because there was so much noise while they were talking.
3. Why did Quasimodo rescue Esmeralda?  
A. Because she did not commit the crime.  
B. Because he wanted to capture her heart.  
C. Because he wanted to repay her for her help.  
D. Because he would be sentenced to death if not.

4. What kind of person was Esmeralda according to the text?  
A. Generous and helpful.  
B. Indifferent and cruel.  
C. Considerate and brave.  
D. Kind and sympathetic.

答案: 1~4 BACD

#### ○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Every moment Esmeralda discovered some fresh defect in Quasimodo, as her glance travelled from his knock knees to his hunched back, from his hunched back to his single eye.  
[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。主句中的 Every moment 为时间状语, as 引导时间状语从句, 从句中含有 from... to 结构, 意为“从……到……”。  
[尝试翻译] 每一刻, 随着埃斯梅拉达的目光从卡

西莫多畸形的腿移到驼背，再从他的驼背移到独眼上，她都在他身上发现更多的毛病。

2. When I compare myself to you, I feel an immense pity for myself, poor unfortunate monster that I am!

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。when 引导时间状语从句，poor unfortunate monster that I am 是 myself 的同位语，同位语中 that 引导的定语从句修饰先行词 monster。

[尝试翻译] 当我把自己和你比较时，我就非常怜悯

自己，我是多么可怜而不幸的怪物啊！

### 思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- How did Esmeralda feel when she looked at Quasimodo's appearance?  
Surprised.
- What can a person's appearance and face say about him or her? How do we perceive the looks and faces of others?  
略

## Part 2 语言梳理

### 1. expression n. 表情；神色；表达；表示

[教材原文] "Poor wretch!" exclaimed Esmeralda, with an **expression** of heartfelt compassion.  
“可怜的家伙！”埃斯梅拉达喊道，发自内心地对他表示同情。

#### [归纳拓展]

(1) facial expression 面部表情

beyond expression 难以表达，无法形容

(2) express v. 表达；表示；描绘

#### [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Laughter is one of the most infectious expressions (express) of emotion.

② —Oh, you sound just like a native.

—Well, not quite. I still have trouble expressing (express) myself.

③ He and Mr Johnson come from the other side of the earth, so our joy tonight is beyond expression (express).

(2) 写作微练

(2023·浙江1月卷读后续写之情感、动作描写) 她满足而快乐地飞离地面约两米，左右转动着她的头，好像为我再次救了她的命而向我表达她的感谢。

Content and joyful, she flew about 2 meters above the ground, turning her head from side to side as if expressing her gratitude to me for saving her life again.

### 2. there 引起的完全倒装

[教材原文] **There lay** in the accents of the unfortunate man so significant an awareness of his sadness that she had not the strength to utter a syllable.

从那不幸的人的声调里，可以明显听出他是多么难

过，以致她连一个字也说不出。

[句式分析] 句中 There lay... 是 there 引起的完全倒装，句子的主语是 so significant an awareness of his sadness, in the accents of the unfortunate man 是地点状语，that 引导结果状语从句。

#### [归纳拓展]

完全倒装的几种常见结构：

(1) there + be/stand/live/lie 等 + 主语 + 地点。

(2) now, then, here, in, out, away, up, down 等副词位于句首，句子的主语为名词，且谓语动词是 go, come, fly, fall, run 等动词。

(3) 表示地点的介词短语置于句首。

#### 名师点拨

在上述结构中，若句子的主语是人称代词时，则不用倒装形式。

Here **he comes**. 他来了。

#### [即学即练]

(1) 完成句子

① There stands a temple on the top of the mountain.

山顶有座庙。

② Then followed three days of heavy rain, which made the situation much worse.

紧随其后的便是三天的大雨，这让情况变得更加糟糕。

③ Away went our teacher just now.

我们的老师刚才走了。

④ By the window sat a young man with a magazine in his hand at that time.

窗户边坐着一个年轻人，那时他手里拿着一本杂志。

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之活动安排) **这里是一些入住那里的**

详细安排。

Here are some detailed arrangements when staying there.

### 3. 否定词置于句首引起的部分倒装

[教材原文] **Never have** I viewed my ugliness as at the present moment.

我从来没有像现在这样觉得自己丑。

[句式分析] 句中否定词 **Never** 置于句首, 句子用部分倒装, 即把助动词 **have** 提到主语之前。

[归纳拓展]

never, little, seldom, hardly, scarcely, not, at no time, in no sense, on no account, under no circumstances 等含有否定意义的词或短语置于句首时, 句子要用部分倒装, 即把 **be** 动词、助动词或情态动词提到主语前面。

#### 名师点拨

在含有 **not... until...** 的句子中, 当 **not until...** 置于句首时, 其后的主句要用倒装语序。

**Not until** he took off his dark glasses **did** I recognise him.

直到他摘下墨镜我才认出他来。

[即学即练]

(1) 把下列句子改为倒装句

① I never had such a special drink.

→ **Never did** I have such a special drink.

② She hardly has time to listen to music.

→ **Hardly does** she have time to listen to music.

③ He didn't leave the house until the rain stopped.

→ **Not until** the rain stopped **did** he leave the house.

④ You should give away the secret under no circumstances.

→ **Under no circumstances should** you give away the secret.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之人物描写) 我妈妈不仅擅长表演, 还擅长教我们唱歌和跳舞。

Not only was my mum good at performing, but she also did well in teaching us singing and dancing.

## 多义词汇 专练

### 1. expression

A. *n.* 词语, 措辞, 表达方式

B. *n.* 表示, 表达

C. *n.* 表情, 神色

① The researchers then tested the dogs' ability to distinguish between human facial **expressions** by showing them the other half of the person's face or images totally different from the ones used in training. C

② Touched by their enthusiastic **expression** of affection, Mabry thanked them all. "They're like my children," Mabry said. B

③ Can you think of a situation where we can use this **expression**? A

### 2. repay

A. *v.* 报答 B. *v.* 偿还 C. *v.* 值得

① She asked for the woman's name and address so that she could **repay** her. B

② How can I ever **repay** you for your generosity? A

③ These sites would **repay** more detailed investigation. C

3. E-book exerts a **profound** impact on the traditional industry. A

A. *adj.* 深远的

B. *adj.* 知识渊博的

C. *adj.* 玄奥的

## Unit 1 课后素养评价 (四)

### Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### I. 单词拼写

- The success of this novel has made her one of the most highly paid novelists (小说家) in history.
- Your reading speed and comprehension (理解力) are tested during this exercise.
- The expression (表情) on his face changed from sympathy to surprise.

- The man spoke to the assistant with a slight American accent (口音).
- She must have some motive (动机) for being nice to me—what does she really want?

#### II. 单句语法填空

- It is acknowledged that our monitor resembles (resemble) a famous host so much in appearance.

2. After hearing the news, he exclaimed (exclaim) that it was untrue.
3. This music reminds me of the day years ago when we had first met.
4. All the competitors attempted to win (win) the gold medal in the competition.
5. The students were shown a series of facial expressions (expression) to describe using an English word.
6. The experienced hostess rose to her feet in one graceful (grace) movement, which earned herself applause from the audience.

### III. 短语填空

as long as; in pursuit of; compare... to; fall in love with; engage in; adjust to; take on; in any case; remind... of; be concerned with

1. Nowadays, more and more young people move to cities in pursuit of their dreams.
2. As long as you have your health, nothing else matters.
3. I compared the copy to the original, and there wasn't much difference.
4. I fell in love with it instantly and continued with ballet dancing for about ten years.
5. It takes time to adjust to a new zone when you travel.
6. Much of his early work is concerned with the minutiae (细枝末节) of rural life.
7. I got this card to remind you of your birthday.
8. Right after your evening meal, engage in some sort of physical activity—a sport such as bowling, perhaps.
9. The mountain village has taken on a new look in the past few years.
10. In any case, you shouldn't give up.

### IV. 补全句子

1. 远处矗立着那座世界闻名的建筑。(there 位于句首引起的倒装)  
There stands the world-famous building in the distance.
2. 她叫我不问任何问题,照她说的那样做就行了。(as 引导方式状语从句)  
 She told me not to ask any questions, just to do as she said.
3. 她之前从未见过任何一个人打乒乓球能和罗伯特打得一样好。(never 位于句首引起的倒装)

Never before has she seen anyone who can play table tennis as well as Robert.

4. 约翰应该因这次失败受到责备。(强调句型)

It is John who is to blame for the failure.

### V. 语法填空

Achieng took up Chinese language studies during her undergraduate education, **1. hoping** (hope) to get a chance to travel in China. **2. However**, as her interest in the Chinese language grew, she took the studies of the Chinese language more seriously and today she **3. teaches** (teach) the language at the Confucius Institute at the University of Nairobi.

**4. During** Achieng's days as a student, the Chinese language had not been officially adopted into the Kenyan education curriculum and she was lucky **5. to learn** (learn) the language at the Confucius Institute. In 2019, the Kenyan government introduced the Chinese language as **6. an** optional subject for young learners along with other foreign languages, **7. which** Achieng thinks highly of.

"This is better because young learners have more time and their brains can handle a new language better. It also gives them **8. exposure** (expose) to the culture early enough," Achieng said.

As a Chinese language lecturer, Achieng sees numerous **9. benefits** (benefit) for Kenyan students who choose Chinese as a foreign language. Not only do they have more employment opportunities, but they also stand a chance to earn scholarship opportunities for **10. further** (far) studies in China and later land business opportunities in both Kenya and China.

### VI. 写作

#### 第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你的美国朋友杰克(Jack)写信告诉你他因不擅长交友,感觉在日常学习与生活中缺乏和同学之间的交流而苦恼。请你给他回信,提出建议,要点如下:

1. 写信目的;
2. 你的建议;
3. 你的理由。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;
3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。



Dear Jack,

I'm sorry to hear that \_\_\_\_\_

Yours,

Li Hua

### 【参考范文】

Dear Jack,

I'm sorry to hear that you're feeling worried for failing to make friends. Some tips below may be helpful to you.

First, be kind, friendly and polite to others and always ready to help others, through which you'll be rewarded. Second, try to communicate with others more, for it helps strengthen your ties with friends and lots of misunderstandings can be avoided. Third, take an active part in activities, such as sports, games, travels, etc. In this way, you'll get more chances to communicate with others. Besides, it is also very important that friends should be faithful to each other.

Anyhow, there are many ways to develop a good friendship. Hope you'll get along well with your friends.

Best wishes.

Yours,

Li Hua

### 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I always wondered how people would react if I tried to approach a total stranger for help in a busy place like a street corner or in a bustling mall. I personally have always hurried past a stranger who tried to catch my attention in a busy place or when I am rushing around.

Yesterday I had a taste of being stuck in such a desperate situation where my only hope of help would have to come from a total stranger.

I was in a busy shopping mall buying a large piece of luggage. After the purchase in one of the large, fancy, expensive shops, I picked up my phone from my pocket to call my driver waiting in the parking lot but my phone was dead.

I then requested the shop assistant who had just sold me the luggage, which was not cheap at all, if she could ring the number of my driver for me. She replied, still all smiles, "I'm sorry, sir, but it is the

shop policy that we cannot use mobile phones while working in the shop."

As I was wondering what kind of policy that was, I saw a nice-looking teenage boy coming towards me. Remembering my wife's interesting theory that beautiful people are more likely to give you a hand when you're in trouble, I thought I might have a chance. But before I could say a word, he walked past me. It turned out he simply didn't see me.

I waited a bit longer in the mall but it seemed nobody bothered to look at me. Disappointed and tired, I got out of the shop onto the busy street in front. I stood there with people rushing by, looking at their faces to see if there was a sign of kindness on their faces. I began wondering how many times I had reacted to strangers like the shopgirl and the teenager.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

At that point I saw a young mother with her two kids. \_\_\_\_\_

Finally a man wearing a cheap T-shirt and dirty jeans seemed to notice me. \_\_\_\_\_

### 【参考范文】

At that point I saw a young mother with her two kids. I thought that a beautiful woman with charming blue eyes must be willing to help me. So, with great expectations, I walked briskly towards her with an appropriate smile on my face, and requested courteously if she could be kind enough to make a phone call for me. However, what I saw was a woman's face disfigured by frowns and what I heard was a sound of dismay and suspicion under her breath. Without a word, she pulled her kids to escape from me, as if scared by a murderer. I stood there, motionless, with a blank face and a sinking heart.

Finally a man wearing a cheap T-shirt and dirty jeans seemed to notice me. I squeezed a smile though it failed to mask my weariness, and requested the same thing from him. Unexpectedly, he took out his mobile phone for me without hesitation or any probing questions. Dancing in his eyes was the real kindness that I had been struggling to seek for so long. From that day on, I began helping other strangers in distress, just like the poor-looking but kind man, with the aim of passing kindness and melting the ice in many people's hearts.

# 迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

## Part 1 应用文写作——文学作品简介

### ○写作指导

#### (一)写作内容

文学作品简介属于论说文。一般包括该作品及作者的背景介绍、主要人物、故事梗概、主要故事情节的介绍以及对该作品的评价和得到的启示。

介绍主要内容时要根据文章的体裁及所要表达的观点抓住要点进行介绍。比如,议论文要抓住文章的论点及论据,记叙文要抓住主要人物、时间及事件。

#### (二)语言特点

文学作品简介的语言要简练、生动形象。介绍主要内容时要清晰准确、详略得当。表达看法及评价时要有理有据。

### ○典题示例

为了弘扬中华优秀传统文化,推进文化自信自强,某英文杂志社正在征集有关中国古典文学作品介绍的文章,让更多的外国人了解中国文化。请你写一篇有关《西游记》的介绍进行投稿。

注意:词数 80 左右。

参考词汇:《西游记》*Journey to the West*; 唐僧 Tripitaka; 神话学的,神话的 mythological; 灾难 calamity

#### Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	论说文
时态	一般现在时
人称	以第三人称为主
要点	1. 简要介绍小说的背景信息及故事梗概 2. 小说的主要内容简介 3. 对该书的评价

#### Step 2: 要点补全

① *Journey to the West* is one of the four great classical novels (《西游记》是四大古典小说之一) of Chinese literature.

② It's a mythological novel which is based on many centuries of popular tradition (基于数百年民间传说).

③ It tells us thrilling stories (给我们讲述了惊心动魄的故事) about a Buddhist monk, the Monkey King and their trusted companions who go through many amazing adventures (经历许多神奇的冒险) while they are travelling to the West to get some Buddhist scriptures.

④ The story of *Journey to the West* is divided into three parts (被分为三部分).

⑤ It is not only a brilliant novel (不仅是一部精彩的小说), but it is a book full of philosophy and reflection about life and values.

#### Step 3: 句式升级

① 用同位语及过去分词短语作定语升级并连接 Step 2 中的①②两句。

*Journey to the West*, one of the four great classical novels of Chinese literature, is a mythological novel based on many centuries of popular tradition.

② 用 while 从句的省略形式升级 Step 2 中的③句。

It tells us thrilling stories about a Buddhist monk, the Monkey King and their trusted companions who go through many amazing adventures while travelling to the West to get some Buddhist scriptures.

③ 用倒装句式升级 Step 2 中的⑤句。

Not only is it a brilliant novel, but it is a book full of philosophy and reflection about life and values.

#### Step 4: 连句成篇

#### 【参考范文】

*Journey to the West*, one of the four great classical novels of Chinese literature, is a mythological novel based on many centuries of popular tradition. It tells us thrilling stories about a Buddhist monk, the Monkey King and their trusted companions who go through many amazing

adventures while travelling to the West to get some Buddhist scriptures.

The story of *Journey to the West* is divided into three parts: an early history of the Monkey King; a pseudo-historical account of Tripitaka's family and life before his trip to get the sutras; the main story, consisting of 81 dangers and calamities encountered by Tripitaka and his three companions—Monkey, Pigsy, and Friar Sand.

Not only is it a brilliant novel, but it is a book full of philosophy and reflection about life and values.

#### ○学以致用

假定你是李华,你的新西兰朋友泰利(Terry)来信说对中国四大名著之一的《红楼梦》非常感兴趣,请你写信向她介绍一下这部小说。

注意:词数 80 左右。

参考词汇:《红楼梦》*Dream of the Red Chamber*

#### 【参考范文】

Dear Terry,

I'm so glad to receive your email and learn that you have a strong interest in *Dream of the Red Chamber*. So, I'm writing to introduce it to you.

With the thriving and declining of four noble families as the background, it tells the story between Jia Baoyu and Lin Daiyu. Vividly depicting the life at that time, the novel reveals the desire for freedom and is of high artistic value. The novel is simple, meaningful in language and contains many graceful classical Chinese poems, which is beneficial in improving your Chinese.

I sincerely hope that you enjoy reading this novel and can share your feelings and opinions with me.

Best wishes.

Yours,

Li Hua

## Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

Sara, my neighbour, and I were sitting in our yard, chatting, and frowning at the wooden house across the street.

Nobody in the neighbourhood had met these two young men there yet. The two men had long hair and beards and dressed strangely. They kept to themselves. When they came outside, they never made eye contact with anyone. "They sure don't fit into the neighbourhood," Sara said, the corners of her mouth turning down as she stared at that house.

Sara said, "What about our street parties? We've always included everyone. Should we invite them?" I sighed, "Try being nice, Sara." Suddenly, Sara sat up straight and her eyes grew wide with curiosity when a car pulled up before Mrs Swain's house next door. We hurried to check out. Mrs Swain was recovering from cancer and lived alone. Sara and I tried to keep an eye on her.

The man from the car put a piece of paper on Mrs Swain's door and hurriedly left. Mrs Swain looked old, thin, and very tired when she opened the door. We three looked at the paper. It read: "Someone complained your grass length is against city rules. Please cut it in five days, or you'll be fined."

It was a shame that nobody had cut her grass for her. However, Sara and I lived alone, and we were both pregnant. What was worse, we were on a tight budget, and the other families here were on vacation.

Sara and I comforted Mrs Swain, telling her we'd figure out a way. Mrs Swain blinked in confusion, "Who would complain? Everyone knows that my old lawn mower is broken. And I've been sick too." "It may be those two guys across the street," Sara whispered, angrily staring at that wooden house.

Just then, a voice that sounded too gentle to be coming from the strange young man behind me said, "What is going on? Is she alright?" He nodded towards Mrs Swain. Sara looked at him coldly and said, "Some guys reported her because her grass is too high." Her eyes ran over him disapprovingly, but he didn't seem to notice.

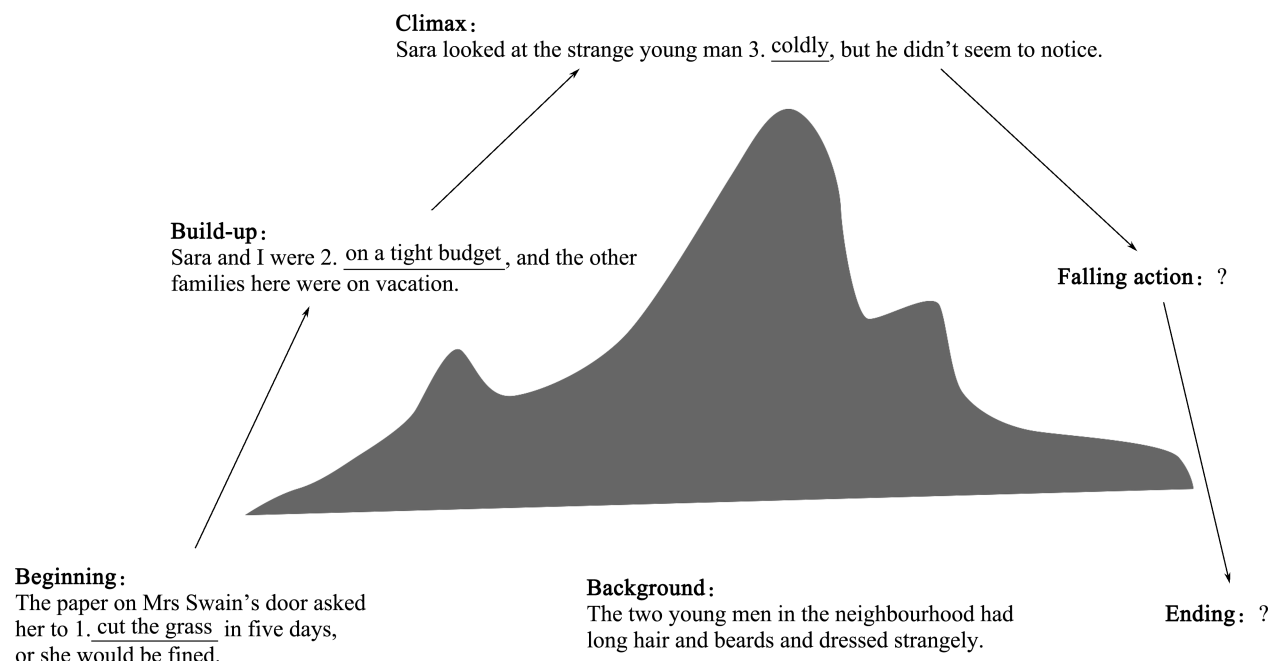


任务一：阅读文章，回答问题。

What does the passage mainly talk about?

The author and Sara looked down upon the two nearby young men at first, but their helping behaviour changed the author and Sara's opinion.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下列问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思并完善故事发展的情节。

<p><b>Paragraph 1:</b></p> <p>The young man and his friend quickly made eye contact and nodded seriously. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What did the two young men do?</p> <p><u>They walked back towards the house, brought some tools and began to cut the grass for Mrs Swain.</u></p> <p>2. How did we feel after seeing the two men's acts?</p> <p><u>We felt embarrassed and regretted misunderstanding the two kind men.</u></p>
<p><b>Paragraph 2:</b></p> <p>After they finished the work, Sara and I walked in shame to apologise for judging them. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What did we say and how did the men respond?</p> <p><u>"Forgive us for being rude," we said. They just humorously replied with a joke to get us out of our guilt.</u></p> <p>2. How did Mrs Swain thank them?</p> <p><u>She carried juice and homemade cookies to the tired men and offered to pay them, but they refused politely.</u></p> <p>3. What were our feelings after that event?</p> <p><u>We learned a lesson. Never pass judgment on people because they don't look, dress, or sound like you. They may be much better people than you are.</u></p>

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

The young man and his friend quickly made eye contact and nodded seriously. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

After they finished the work, Sara and I walked in shame to apologise for judging them. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

#### 【参考范文】

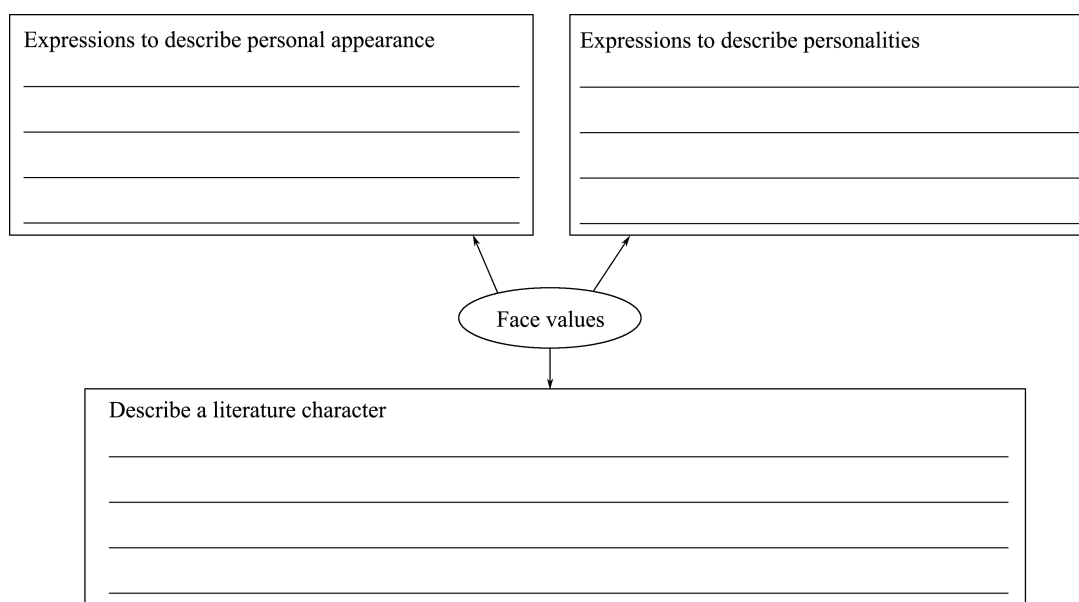
The young man and his friend quickly made eye contact and nodded seriously. Then they turned and walked back towards the house. Just then, Mrs Swain's eyes widened in surprise, and we followed her gaze. The two young men were hurrying across the street, one pushing an old lawn mower and the other carrying a weed eater. Without a word, they worked to cut Mrs Swain's grass. In silence, we knew we'd made a big, embarrassing, and silly mistake. We regretted misunderstanding the two kind men, and just stood there awkwardly.

After they finished the work, Sara and I walked in shame to apologise for judging them. "Forgive us for being rude," we said. They just humorously replied with a joke to get us out of our guilt. Later, Mrs Swain carried juice and homemade cookies to the tired men. Mrs Swain thanked them and offered to pay them. But one man smiled, "We'll keep your grass cut if you keep making juice and cookies for us." That day, we learned a lesson. Never pass judgment on people because they don't look, dress, or sound like us. They may be much better people than we are.

## 重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

### 一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

### 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

#### Don't Judge a Book by Its Cover

"Don't judge a book by its cover," the old saying goes. Unfortunately, as a teenager, that is often exactly what you do to yourself. Dark thoughts about your physical appearance can hang over you all the time like a rain cloud. Do I look fat in these jeans? Do others think I am too short? Is everyone laughing at my new hairstyle secretly? These thoughts can have a negative effect on people of any shape or size, both male and female, and it is important to guard against the causes behind them.

Standards of beauty in the media can have a big influence on what you think of your physical appearance. Teens who try to copy the looks of their favourite stars are fighting a losing battle—these standards are simply impossible for most of the population to live up to. They will only end up feeling worse about themselves.

Your friends also influence the way you view your physical appearance. If you have friends who are good-looking or have a great fashion sense, it can feel like you are living in their shadow. For children of the digital age, social media makes this problem even worse. Your friends may post a never-ending series of photos online to show off their beautiful dresses or strong bodies, and it becomes easier for you to compare yourself to them. This has proved to have a negative effect on what you think of your physical appearance.

These external influences are always present, but there are certainly ways to deal with them. First of all, be careful not to follow popular beauty standards blindly. They are out of reach for 99% of us, so it is better to just forget about them.

Another tip is to remind yourself that you are unique. Keep in mind that your family and friends love you just the way you are. Talk about your feelings with someone you trust. Hearing how much they value you can help you feel comfortable in your own skin. Focusing on your strengths also helps you build your confidence. Everyone has their own talents—you may be good at painting or playing the piano, so take pride in things you do well instead of worrying about things you cannot change.

Finally, it is a good idea to try to direct your attention away from negative thoughts. To achieve this, you should do something you enjoy. Read a book you like, or take part in a social activity, like playing a ball game with your friends. These things can help you take it easy and make you feel good about yourself.

You may often judge yourself by what is on the outside, not on the inside. However, like a book, your contents are much more important than your cover. If you can learn to see the good things about yourself—your individuality, your value to others, your achievements—you will soon begin to love yourself just the way you are.

1. What factors can influence your feelings of your physical appearance?

Standards of beauty in the media, our friends and social media.

2. What tips can help you deal with external influences?

Be careful not to follow popular beauty standards blindly, remind ourselves that we are unique, focus on our strengths, and direct our attention away from negative thoughts.

3. How can you begin to love yourself just the way you are?

By learning to see the good things about ourselves—our individuality, our value to others and our achievements.

## 单元测试卷(一)

(考查范围:Unit 1 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

### I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

#### A

#### How to Create a Morning Routine and Stick to It

The simplest way to start your day well is to create a morning routine. Here are some steps to create a routine that will become a permanent part of your daily life.

##### Identify Your Current Challenges

Review your current behaviours and separate the good habits from the bad. Maybe your alarm goes off and you roll over, pick up your phone, and start checking your email. Or, you go straight for social media. If you're like me, you can easily get lost in your phone. So reserve positive habits such as exercising, reading things that you find interesting, doing daily journaling and focusing on your important projects.

##### Pick Habits That Are Important to You

A successful morning routine should be simple and straightforward. It should include activities that

support your goals, values, and the things that make you happy. To get started, click on the link to watch this video and pick a few good habits that match your personal preference.

##### Schedule Your Morning Routine

It's important to schedule your morning routine at certain times throughout the week. You should schedule it at a specific time each day and make sure you have enough time to complete it. To get started, try scheduling at least 30 minutes for this morning routine.

##### Focus on Consistency

The most important aspect of a morning routine is consistency. That's why you should make the commitment to never miss a day of your morning routine. A quick strategy to stay consistent is to apply the “don't break the chain” principle that's discussed in the following video.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了如何养成早晨的习惯并坚持下去。

1. What may hold you back from creating a morning routine?

- A. Doing daily journaling.
- B. Reading interesting things.
- C. Going straight for social media.
- D. Focusing on your important projects.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Identify Your Current Challenges** 中的“Maybe your alarm goes off and you roll over, pick up your phone, and start checking your email. Or, you go straight for social media. If you're like me, you can easily get lost in your phone.”可知，直奔社交媒体阻碍了你养成早晨的习惯。故选 C。

2. What is the most important to create a morning routine?

- A. Reserve the positive habits.
- B. Do things that make you happy.
- C. Schedule your routine flexibly.
- D. Never miss a day of your routine.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Focus on Consistency** 中的“The most important aspect of a morning routine is consistency. That's why you should make the commitment to never miss a day of your morning routine.”可知，养成早晨的习惯最重要的是永远不要错过你的日常安排。故选 D。

3. Where is this text probably taken from?

- A. A textbook.
- B. A website.
- C. A magazine.
- D. A newspaper.

B 文章出处题。根据 **Pick Habits That Are Important to You** 中的“To get started, click on the link to watch this video and pick a few good habits that match your personal preference.”和 **Focus on Consistency** 中的“A quick strategy to stay consistent is to apply the ‘don't break the chain’ principle that's discussed in the following video.”可推知，本篇文章可能来自一个网站。故选 B。

### B

One morning more than thirty years ago, I entered the Track Kitchen, a restaurant where everyone from the humblest (最卑微的) to the most

powerful came for breakfast. I noticed an empty chair next to an elderly, unshaven man, who looked somewhat disheveled. He was wearing a worn-out hat and was alone. I asked if I might join him. He agreed quietly and I sat down to have my breakfast.

We cautiously began a conversation and spoke about a wide range of things. We never introduced ourselves. I was concerned that he might have no money and not be able to afford something to eat. So as I rose to go back to the counter and buy a second cup of coffee, I asked, “May I get you something?”

“A coffee would be nice.”

Then I bought him a cup of coffee. We talked more, and he accepted another cup of coffee. Finally, I rose to leave, wished him well, and headed for the exit. At the door I met one of my friends. He asked, “How did you get to know Mr Galbreath?”

“Who?”

“The man you were sitting with. He is chairman of the Board of Churchill Downs.”

I could hardly believe it. I was buying, offering a free breakfast, and feeling pity for one of the world's richest and most powerful men!

My few minutes with Mr Galbreath changed my life. Now I try to treat everyone with respect, no matter who I think they are, and to meet another human being with kindness and sincerity.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者在餐厅偶遇一位看似贫穷的老人，作者觉得老人很可怜，与老人聊天并为老人购买了咖啡，殊不知这位老人是世界上最富有的人之一。本文旨在告诉我们不能以貌取人。

4. What does the underlined word “disheveled” in Paragraph 1 mean?

- A. Unfriendly.
- B. Untidy.
- C. Gentle.
- D. Kind.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线单词所在句中的“an elderly, unshaven man”以及下一句中的“He was wearing a worn-out hat...”可知，这位老人没有刮胡子，戴着一顶破旧的帽子，故推知画线词的意思是“不整齐的；不整洁的；凌乱的”。故选 B。

5. Why did the author buy coffee for the old man?

- A. He thought the old man was poor.
- B. He wanted to start a conversation.
- C. He intended to show his politeness.
- D. He would like to thank the old man.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“I was concerned that he might have no money and not be able to afford something to eat.”可知，作者担心老人没钱买早餐。故选 A。

6. How did the author probably feel after he talked with his friend?

- A. Proud.
- B. Pitiful.
- C. Astonished.
- D. Regretful.

C 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“I could hardly believe it.”可知，作者得知老人的身份后感到很惊讶。故选 C。

7. What is the message mainly expressed in the story?

- A. We should learn to be generous.
- B. It is honourable to help those in need.
- C. People in high positions are not like what we expect.
- D. We should avoid judging people by their appearance.

D 主旨大意题。根据最后一段中的“Now I try to treat everyone with respect, no matter who I think they are...”可以得出本文的主旨，即不要以貌取人。故选 D。

### C

Distance runners often worry about “hitting the wall” during training or races—that terrible moment when negative thoughts become so overpowering that they make it difficult to continue.

Hitting the wall typically happens around 20 miles in a marathon, when the body’s supplies become exhausted. At this point, many runners feel exhausted and discouraged, slow their pace, have trouble focusing and want to quit or walk.

“Generalised tiredness, unintentionally slowing their pace, the desire to walk, and shifting focus to just surviving the marathon appear to be particularly common characteristics of it,” said Dr Alistair McCormick, an exercise psychologist in England who co-authored a new study. “A marathon becomes a real mental battle when runners ‘hit the wall’.”

Psychological blocks are an extremely common experience for recreational endurance (耐力)

athletes, according to the study. To learn how they affect people, sports psychologists asked 30 recreational runners and cyclists about the psychological demands of training, preparing for and participating in competitions.

“Recreational runners and cyclists found it stressful finding the time to train,” McCormick said. “What was also interesting was the number of potential banana skins they met with before and during competition-disasters that could cause the athletes to lose their focus and their motivation to keep persevering.”

These roadblocks included difficult environmental conditions and equipment failure, problems with nutrition or making a mistake, the study reported. The athletes in the study said they felt these obstacles (障碍) affected their motivation and concentration, negatively affecting their overall performances.

According to the study, 23 percent of marathoners are likely to hit the wall during a race. Finding ways to move past those kinds of experiences, then, could have major benefits for an athlete’s performance and well-being.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要介绍了运动员在比赛或训练时可能会进入“撞墙期”，即在比赛或训练时他们会感到身体透支，甚至失去信心。

8. What will probably happen to athletes when “hitting the wall” occurs?

- A. Their heads will hurt badly.
- B. They will fail to concentrate.
- C. They will slow down on purpose.
- D. They will have difficulty breathing.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“At this point, many runners feel exhausted and discouraged, slow their pace, have trouble focusing and want to quit or walk.”可知，当“撞墙期”发生时，运动员不能集中精力。故选 B。

9. What does the underlined phrase “banana skins” refer to in Paragraph 5?

- A. Troubles.
- B. Rubbish.
- C. Competitors.
- D. Pressure.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线短语后的“could cause the athletes to lose their focus”及下一段中的“‘These roadblocks...’及‘these obstacles (障碍)’”可知，“banana skins”指的是他们遇到的困难。故选 A。

10. How did sports psychologists learn about psychological blocks?

- A. By carrying out many experiments.
- B. By experiencing “hitting the wall” in person.
- C. By observing the performance of the athletes.
- D. By listening to athletes’ experiences and ideas.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“To learn how they affect people, sports psychologists asked 30 recreational runners and cyclers about the psychological demands of training, preparing for and participating in competitions.”可知,运动心理学家通过倾听运动员的体验和想法,对心理障碍进行研究。故选 D。

11. What will probably be talked about in the following paragraph?

- A. Ways to move past other players in the running.
- B. Major benefits of athletes’ good performance.
- C. The bad effects of psychological blocks on athletes.
- D. Techniques to get over mental psychological blocks.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Finding ways to move past those kinds of experiences, then, could have major benefits for an athlete’s performance and well-being.”可知,接下来可能会谈到克服心理障碍的一些技巧。故选 D。

### D

We’ve all felt the tap to the soul you get from driving by your old high school or hearing a tune you once danced to. But why is that feeling so universal?

Nostalgia (怀旧), a combination of the Greek words nostos (homecoming) and algos (pain), was a special type of homesickness associated with soldiers fighting far-off wars. Seventeenth-century physicians worried such thoughts put health at risk. In the 19th century, doctors believed it could cause irregular heartbeat, fever, and death.

Our understanding of nostalgia has developed since then. “It’s a very mixed emotion,” says Frederick Barrett, a neuroscientist. That makes it

hard to fit into existing theory, which typically categorises emotions as either positive or negative. And triggers—the cars, music or smells—are extremely personal. Therefore, designing a standardised study is difficult.

But we do know nostalgia has a marked effect on us: brain imaging studies show that those experiences have their own neural signature. Neuroscientists argued that the emotion is co-produced by the brain’s recall and reward systems. They found that nostalgic images use the memory-managing hippocampus (海马区) more than other sights, as people mine autobiographical (个人经历的) details deep in the past. This mental effort pays off: as the hippocampus activates, so does one of the brain’s reward centres.

“That longing for the past might be a protective mechanism,” says Tim Wildschut, a professor. His work also suggests a more primitive purpose for the feeling: it developed to remind our ancient ancestors of pleasant physical feelings during periods of discomfort and pain.

Recent research suggests the occasional look backwards can give us a boost in unnoticeable ways: by increasing self-respect and protecting against depression. Nostalgia’s apparent power to jump-start one’s memory also seems to improve recall ability in people with Alzheimer’s disease.

New flavours of “reminiscence therapy (回忆疗法)” are emerging around the world. In 2018, the George G. Glenner Alzheimer’s Family Centres opened its first Town Square, an adult daycare facility designed to look like a small town in 1930s America. Though Town Square has yet to publish peer-reviewed data on the success of the programme, clients say it has helped seniors access dusty memories and reconnect with loved ones.

Scientists need a lot more information to adequately characterise this complex and bittersweet feeling. But while centuries of doctors considered nostalgia a deadly disease, we now know: it can help us make it through today.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了怀旧,这种由个人经历引发的情绪可以帮助我们面对不愉快的情况。但科学家需要更多的信息来充分描述这种复杂的感觉。几个世纪以来,医生们都认为怀旧是一种致命的疾病,但我们现在知道:它可以帮助我们度过当下。

12. What can we learn about nostalgia?

- A. It was first discovered in Greece.
- B. It's more common among soldiers.
- C. It's set off by personal experiences.
- D. It was a well-defined scientific idea.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“And triggers—the cars, music or smells—are extremely personal.”可知,引发怀旧的因素因人而异,所以怀旧是由个人的经历引发的。故选C。

13. What is Paragraph 4 mainly about?

- A. How nostalgia works.
- B. Why nostalgia matters.
- C. What nostalgia means.
- D. When nostalgia emerges.

A 段落大意题。根据第四段的内容可推知,本段在说明怀旧是如何影响我们,是如何起作用的。故选A。

14. How might nostalgia benefit people?

- A. It makes people's mind sharp.
- B. It gives seniors a sense of security.
- C. It helps us face unpleasant situations.
- D. It improves people's instant memory.

C 推理判断题。根据第五段的内容和第六段中的“Recent research suggests the occasional look backwards can give us a boost in unnoticeable ways: by increasing self-respect and protecting against depression.”可知,怀旧是一种保护机制,在不舒服和痛苦时想起愉快的感觉,可以增强自尊、防止抑郁。由此可推知,怀旧可以帮助我们面对不愉快的情况。故选C。

15. Why does the author mention Town Square?

- A. To reveal a phenomenon of emotion.
- B. To interpret the concept of a therapy.
- C. To explore the advantage of a treatment.
- D. To demonstrate the use of a research finding.

D 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“New flavours of ‘reminiscence therapy (回忆疗法)’ are emerging around the world. In 2018, the George G. Glenner Alzheimer's Family Centres opened its first Town Square, an adult daycare facility designed to look like a small town in 1930s America.”可知,作者提到 Town Square 是为了举例说明“回忆疗法”在实践中的运用,展示了相关研究发现的用途。故选D。

## II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

If you consider yourself to be shy by nature, you may worry that you're not a good conversationalist. 16 There are plenty of easy, subtle ways to improve your social skills in your daily life. Here are a few tips and tricks to help you get started.

Start a conversation. 17 Many people feel more relaxed if they have time to prepare a conversation starter. You can write down a list of potential conversation starters. You could, for example, talk about an assignment, if you're making a conversation in class.

18 People want to feel that the other person is interested in them. You can share simple insights and ask questions to continue the conversation. Before you bring up your own insights, make a rule that you ask at least one question about what the other person is saying.

Remember to engage in only one thing at a time. When a person is talking, pay attention to what he or she is talking about. Keep your mind focused on the present moment instead of planning what you'll say next. It's inevitable that you will think of something that relates. That's okay. 19 But don't spend time thinking about how to word your responses.

Most conversations will run their own courses. It's okay if you can't think of anything else to say. Simply mention something else you have to do, and that you'll have to step away. Thank the person for their time, and let them know that you'd like to talk again some other time. 20



- A. Don't worry.  
 B. Choose a shared topic.  
 C. Keep a conversation going.  
 D. It is good to have responses ready.  
 E. A simple question can be enough to start the talk.  
 F. Practise ahead of time, if you tend to get anxious.  
 G. In this way, allow the conversation to come to a natural stop.

答案: 16~20 AFCDG

### III. 完形填空(共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

I played a racquetball game against my cousin Ed last week. It was one of the most 21 and tiring games I've ever had. When Ed first phoned and 22 we play, I laughed quietly, figuring on an 23 victory. After all, Ed's idea of 24 has always been nothing more 25 than lifting a fork to his mouth. 26 I can remember, Ed's been the least physically fit member in the family, and 27 proud of himself. His big stomach has always ballooned out between his T-shirt and trousers.

Although the family often 28 about that, Ed refused to buy a 29 T-shirt or to lose weight. So when Ed 30 for our game not only with the bottom of his shirt gathered inside his trousers but also with a stomach you could hardly 31, I was so surprised that I was 32. My cousin must have made an effort to get himself into shape. 33, at the point in our game when I'd have predicted (预计) the score to be about 9 to 1 in my favour, it was 34 7 to 9—and Ed was 35. The sudden realisation was painful. We continued to play like two mad men. When the game finally ended, both of us were lying flat on our backs, too tired to move. In a way, I think we both won: I won the game, but my cousin Ed won my respect.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者与表弟 Ed 间的一场球赛。作者认为表弟 Ed 根本就不是他的对手, 可结果却出乎意料。

21. A. encouraging B. hopeless  
 C. surprising D. regular

C 通读全文可知, 作者与表弟 Ed 间的这场球赛是一场令他吃惊的(surprising)、疲惫不堪的球赛。故选 C。

22. A. declared B. mentioned  
 C. persuaded D. suggested

D 根据下文的“play”可知, 只有 suggest 后可接从句的谓语动词为“(should +) 动词原形”的形式。其他三项不符合此用法。故选 D。

23. A. unforgettable B. unexpected  
 C. easy D. early

C 作者对 Ed 的建议报以窃笑, 以为会轻松(easy)取胜。故选 C。

24. A. exercise B. preparation  
 C. joy D. fitness

A 文章中提到的是像打壁球赛这样的运动(exercise)。故选 A。

25. A. time-saving B. comfortable  
 C. suitable D. effort-making

D 照 Ed 历来的看法, 运动仅仅就是动动碗筷吃饭而已, 不需要费力(effort-making)。故选 D。

26. A. As soon as B. As long as  
 C. When D. If

B 根据语境可知, 此处用 as long as 意为“长达”, 引导时间状语从句。此处表示“从我有记忆起”。故选 B。

27. A. strangely B. personally  
 C. reasonably D. eagerly

A Ed 是整个家庭中身体健康状况最差的人, 而他却令人不解地(strangely)以自己为傲。此处用 strangely 表示不理解其行为。故选 A。

28. A. cared B. forgot  
 C. quarrelled D. joked

D Ed 太胖, 肚子鼓得像大气球, 家人常拿他的肚子开玩笑(joked)。故选 D。

29. A. clean B. larger  
 C. straight D. darker

B 上文描写 Ed 的肚子总露在衣服与裤子间, 这说明他应该买件更大的(larger)衣服。故选 B。

30. A. set out B. got ready  
C. arrived D. returned  
C 所以当 Ed 来(arrived)比赛之时,你几乎看不到他大腹便便的样子。故选 C。
31. A. notice B. admire  
C. believe D. measure  
A 根据语境可知,Ed 经过苦练后,收紧了大肚子,家人几乎看(notice)不出他的肚子来。故选 A。
32. A. nervous B. curious  
C. careless D. speechless  
D Ed 以前留给作者的印象是大腹便便,而如今作者几乎看不到 Ed 的肚子,完全出乎意料,作者感到震惊而哑然无言(speechless)。故选 D。
33. A. After all B. As a result  
C. Above all D. At last  
B 根据上文内容可知,作者认为这次壁球比赛自己获胜不在话下,而该句表明估计错误,结果与自己预计的不同,故 as a result 能表示作者此时的心态,暗含“出乎意料”之意。故选 B。
34. A. mistakenly B. then  
C. instead D. naturally  
C 在作者预计将会大胜他的时候,比分却相反(instead),作者居然落后了。故选 C。
35. A. leading B. coming  
C. waiting D. counting  
A 上文提到比分却相反,由此可以判断出,Ed 领先(leading)了。故选 A。

#### IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Beauty is not defined (定义) by the world's standards, **36. but** should be seen through our own eyes, and will never change **37. with** the passage of time.

Your beauty is not limited **38. to** how much time you spend **39. on** your figure, or your physical appearance. Although these things can be an important aspect of beauty, what **40. makes** (make) you attractive is not just how you present your

outer-self. True beauty is being **41. comfortable** (comfort) in your own skin, and embracing what life has to offer you. Beauty is found from within and can be seen from **42. your** (you) smile, which is the best thing you can wear. Moreover, inner beauty is not something that is found in the latest clothing trends or in the words of others. Your compassion for others, the **43. kindness** (kind) you show, and your devotion to what **44. truly** (true) matters in life are what real beauty means. In general, true beauty **45. is found** (find) from within your soul, and no one can ever take that away from you.

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

英语课上老师组织了一次关于外在美与内在美的重要性的讨论。请根据下面同学们的讨论结果,以“Does Beauty Really Make Much Sense?”为题用英语写一篇短文并谈谈自己的观点。

1. 学生观点 1: 良好的外形条件是一种优势,可以给人留下更加深刻的印象;
2. 学生观点 2: 外貌与能力无关,只有追求内在美才是真正的美;
3. 你的观点……

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:社会事件 social event 内在美 inner beauty

##### Does Beauty Really Make Much Sense?

Last week in our English class, we had a very heated discussion on the topic—Does beauty really make much sense? \_\_\_\_\_

##### 【参考范文】

##### Does Beauty Really Make Much Sense?

Last week in our English class, we had a very heated discussion on the topic—Does beauty really make much sense? Some students think that a good appearance often makes a big difference in social events such as job hunting. Not only can it make you

become more confident, but also it makes you impressive in the job interview.

Other students hold different opinions. A good appearance doesn't mean that you can certainly get the job. What makes people really beautiful is the inner beauty.

As far as I am concerned, both outer beauty and inner beauty are very important. We should never ignore our inner beauty training while pursuing a good appearance.

## 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Boys like to be considered to be brave, but what kind of things can be considered to be brave? It is not a question that can be answered by words, but by the actual deed. A boy with the name Henry gave us a good example. Ronny and Henry were two friends in the same class. They always played together and went home together. One day as Ronny and Henry were going home after school, they saw some people fighting in the street corner. Ronny said excitedly, "Some people are fighting! Let's go and have a look!" But Henry refused, "It's none of our business. We'd better go home and don't get close to them. Also our parents are expecting to have dinner with us together at home and I don't want them to worry about me."

"You are a coward, and afraid to go," said Ronny, and off he ran to the spot with some other boys. Henry had to go home alone and didn't think about it any more.

But Ronny thought Henry was a coward and told all the boys that. They laughed at him a great deal. From then on, they looked down upon Henry and didn't want to play with him. Henry was sad but he wasn't angry with Ronny for his rude behaviour, because he

had learned that true courage was shown most in bearing misunderstanding when it was not deserved, and that he ought to be afraid of nothing but doing wrong. Thus, he just ignored the other boys' laughter and continued to stick to his thought and go to school and study as well. However, Ronny didn't invite Henry to go home with him any more. Instead, he had his new friends who also thought Henry was a coward. Every day after school, they didn't go home directly but went to the river or somewhere to play games and had lots of fun.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

A few days later, something terrible happened to Ronny. \_\_\_\_\_

At that moment, Henry happened to pass by. \_\_\_\_\_

## 【参考范文】

A few days later, something terrible happened to Ronny. That afternoon after school, Ronny was bathing with some of his new friends in the river happily. Suddenly, he was stuck in the mud and couldn't get out. He struggled hard but he was still trapped. He screamed for help, but all in vain. The boys who had called Henry a coward got out of the water as fast as they could. They were so scared and did not even try to help him.

At that moment, Henry happened to pass by. He heard the screams and ran to the river as soon as possible. Seeing Ronny was almost drowned, Henry took off his clothes immediately and jumped into the water without any hesitation. He reached Ronny just as he was sinking the last time. With great effort, and with much danger to himself, he brought Ronny to the shore in time. Ronny realised Henry's true courage and regretted his rude behaviour to Henry.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and the self, focusing on the spirit of craftsmanship. In this unit we will use proper vocabulary and expressions to talk about masters in different fields and describe the practice of craftsmen's spirit, and learn about excellent people's qualities.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“毕生的事业”主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	能理解并运用表语从句。
		语篇	1. 阅读两篇文章,了解优秀人物的事迹,学习他们的工匠精神; 2. 熟悉说明文结构,了解相应的写作要点。
		语用	1. 用恰当的表达介绍著名人物的生平和贡献; 2. 了解撰写说明文的基本要求。
	语言技能	听	听材料,学习关于传统工艺的语言表达、背景知识。
		说	学习有关优秀人物的词汇和表达,并恰当地使用这些词汇和表达,传递意图和情感态度。
		读	通过阅读两篇文章,加深对工匠精神的理解。
		写	1. 能正确运用表语从句描述人物的精神品质; 2. 能写一篇说明文。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	熟练利用本单元知识,围绕“一生的工作”这一话题进行听、说、读、写训练,从而提升综合运用语言的能力。
文化意识	通过对“Life Behind the Lens”和“MASTERS OF TIME”的学习,了解国内外看似普通的人们毕生从事自己所钟爱的事业,做着不平凡的事情的故事,树立热爱自己事业意识。
思维品质	通过学习文章中所提及人物的不平凡的事迹,培养自己坚韧不拔、甘于奉献的精神。

### ◉ 必备知识

必背单词	pose, grocery, fashion, uncomplicated, celebrity, trial, hydrogen, propulsion, precious, antique, restoration, maximum, workshop, polish, bark, preserve, dominate, architecture, ambitious, associate, analysis, comprise
重点表达	by trial and error, back down, think outside the box, break new ground, put... into, approach to, bring... back to life, pass on... to, nothing more than, devotion to, at one's own pace, take up, range from... to...
重点知识	1. nor 置于句首引起的部分倒装 2. “no matter+特殊疑问词”引导让步状语从句 3. if 引导的虚拟条件句
单元语法	表语从句
单元写作	介绍人物的说明文

## 探 · 究 · 构 · 建

# Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

### 学习任务目标

1. Watch the video, and understand practice is important in careers.
2. Read the news report, and grasp Bill Cunningham's philosophy of life.
3. Understand the author's writing purpose according to the text.

### ○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一)核心词汇

1. fashion *n.* 时尚
2. uncomplicated *adj.* 不复杂的, 简单的; 单纯的
3. regardless of 不管; 不顾
4. as much as 和……一样多; 多达
5. belong to 属于
6. focus on 专注于, 集中精力于
7. devotion to 对……的奉献
8. put... into 把……投入
9. approach to 对待……的方式

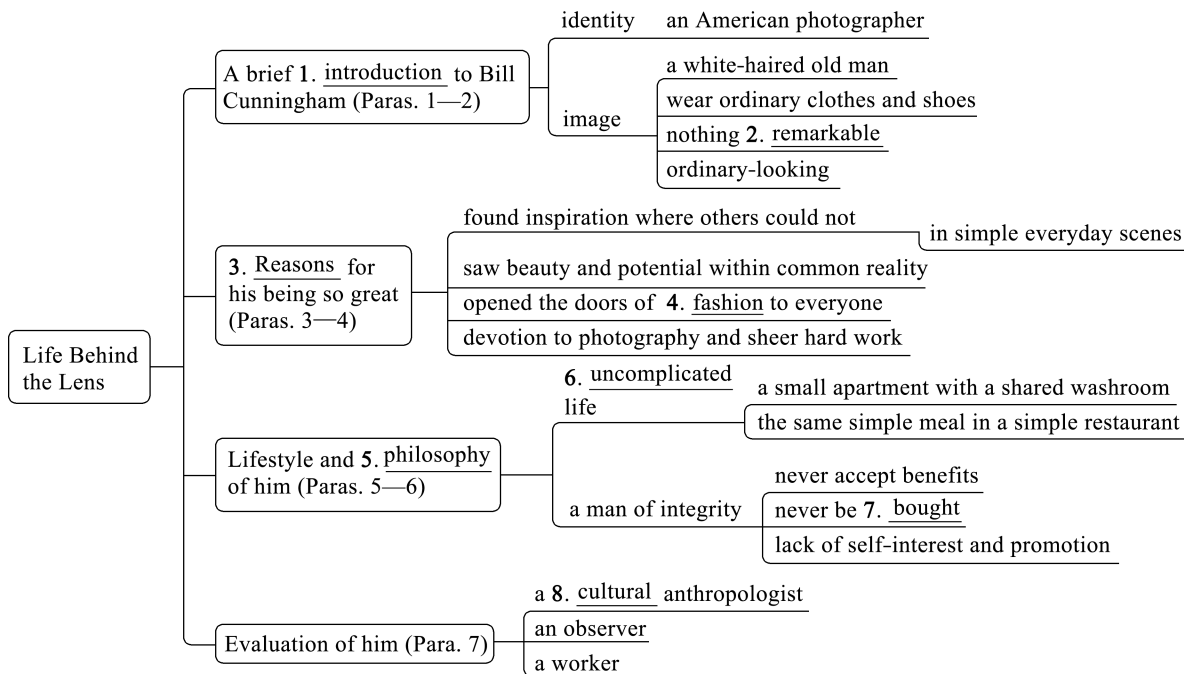
#### (二)阅读词汇

1. pose *v.* (使)摆好姿势
2. grocery *n.* 食品杂货店
3. fascination *n.* 着迷, 迷恋
4. faraway *adj.* 遥远的
5. celebrity *n.* 名人, 明星
6. craft *n.* (某一行业所需的)技能
7. anthropologist *n.* 人类学家
8. lens *n.* (照相机、摄像机的)镜头
9. nothing more than 仅仅; 只是
10. pose for 为……摆好姿势
11. fascination with 对……的迷恋/着迷
12. pass away 去世

## 任务型课堂

### 文本整体理解

#### Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### 文本细节领悟

#### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Why do people always think Cunningham is unremarkable?
  - Because he is too ordinary-looking.
  - Because he likes riding an ordinary bicycle.
  - Because he loves wearing ordinary clothes.
  - Because he always poses for high society.
- What made Cunningham such a great photographer?
  - Expensive technologically advanced equipment.
  - A wide range of contacts and connections.
  - Fashionable parties and events.
  - The inspiration in simple, everyday scenes.
- What was his belief about fashion?
  - Fashion belonged to all the people.
  - Only celebrities could match with fashion.
  - Fashion was something nobody could go for.
  - High society and big brands should share it with ordinary people.

- Which of the following can best describe Cunningham?
  - Smart and helpful.
  - Caring and generous.
  - Simple and considerate.
  - Hard-working and noble-minded.

答案: 1~4 ADAD

### 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Through his fascination with what people were wearing, and not who they were, he opened the doors of fashion to everyone—fashion as he saw it belonged to the people, not just to high society and big brands.

[句子分析] 句中 what people were wearing 和 who they were 为 and 连接的两个并列句, 第一个并列句由 what 引导, 第二个并列句由 who 引导, as he saw it 为 as 引导的方式状语从句。

[尝试翻译] 他执着于人们的穿着, 而不是他们的身份, 通过这份执着, 他为所有人打开了时尚的大门——在他看来, 时尚属于民众, 而不仅仅属于上流社会和大品牌。



2. Moreover, what made Cunningham great was his devotion to photography, and the hours and hours of sheer hard work he put into his work.

[句子分析]句中 what made Cunningham great 为 what 引导的主语从句, he put into his work 为省略关系代词 that/which 的定语从句, 修饰先行词 hard work。

[尝试翻译]此外, 坎宁安的伟大之处是他对摄影的热爱, 以及他在工作中投入的长时间的努力。

### ○思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What can you learn from Bill Cunningham?  
Only by living a simple life, indifferent to fame and wealth can we have more energy to pursue our dreams.
2. Why is Bill Cunningham called a “cultural anthropologist”?  
Because his photography captured and created an everlasting record of the life of New York and its people over half a century.

## Unit 2 课后素养评价（五）

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

#### I. 阅读理解

Paul Durietz is a 77-year-old social studies teacher from Illinois. On September 1, 2023, he set a Guinness World Record for the world’s longest teaching career. Mr Durietz has been teaching for 54 years since he was 23 years old.

Mr Durietz made up his mind to be a social studies teacher when he was just 11 years old, mainly because he became interested in history after hearing stories from his father, who fought in World War II. On his mother’s side of the family, he had connections to a famous person from English history.

Mr Durietz got his first teaching job at Woodland Middle School in Gurnee, Illinois in 1970. Ever since then, he has been teaching social studies at the same school. He says he loves sharing his knowledge of history with students. “Teaching is never boring,” he said. “Every day is different.”

Things have changed a lot since he began all those years ago, especially when it comes to technology. But with or without technology, Mr Durietz has used creative activities to help his students learn. For example, he has organised virtual field trips and geography contests. He has even organised mock (模拟的) elections at school to help his students learn about politics. These activities are some of the ones that he and his

students enjoy most.

For much of his 54 years as a teacher, Mr Durietz has been in charge of the social studies programme at Woodland. He has helped guide over 20 other social studies teachers at the school. He believes that people who want to be teachers should make sure they are patient with their students. He also encourages them to choose subjects that they care deeply about. “Keep working on what you love to do in life,” he said.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇新闻报道。Paul Durietz 是一位来自伊利诺伊州的七十七岁的教授社会科学课程的老师, 他创造了世界上最长教学生涯的吉尼斯世界纪录。

1. What made Paul Durietz decide to be a social studies teacher?  
A. Respect for his father.  
B. His love for history.  
C. Suggestions from a celebrity.  
D. His parents’ expectations.

**B 细节理解题。**根据第二段中的“Mr Durietz made up his mind to be a social studies teacher when he was just 11 years old, mainly because he became interested in history after hearing stories from his father, who fought in World War II.”可知, Mr Durietz 对历史的热爱促使他决定当一名社会科学课的教师。故选 B。

2. Which of the following best describes Paul

Durietz?

- A. Strict and innovative.
- B. Patient and humorous.
- C. Ambitious and considerate.
- D. Dedicated and enthusiastic.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“On September 1, 2023, he set a Guinness World Record for the world's longest teaching career. Mr Durietz has been teaching for 54 years since he was 23 years old.”可推断出, Mr Durietz 从教五十四年, 创造了世界上最长教学生涯的吉尼斯世界纪录, 说明他对教学是一心一意的; 再根据第三段中的“Ever since then, he has been teaching social studies at the same school. He says he loves sharing his knowledge of history with students.”和第四段中的“*But with or without technology, Mr Durietz has used creative activities to help his students learn.*”可推断出, Mr Durietz 喜欢和学生分享他的历史知识并用创造性的活动帮助他的学生学习, 因此他是真的热爱他的教育事业。故选 D。

3. What is Paul Durietz's particular teaching method?

- A. Planning social practice projects.
- B. Making full use of his free time.
- C. Assigning a lot of homework.
- D. Organising learning activities.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“*For example, he has organised virtual field trips and geography contests. He has even organised mock (模拟的) elections at school to help his students learn about politics. These activities are some of the ones that he and his students enjoy most.*”可知, 组织形式多样的学习活动的 Paul Durietz 的特殊教学方法。故选 D。

4. What is Paul Durietz's advice for people that want to be teachers?

- A. Being concerned about advanced technology.
- B. Working where teachers are most needed.
- C. Having patience with students.
- D. Selecting important subjects.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*He believes*

that people who want to be teachers should make sure they are patient with their students.”可知, Paul Durietz 对想当老师的人的建议是: 对学生有耐心。故选 C。

## II. 七选五

For some people, it's easy to get stuck in the same thought patterns. 1 People who have creative thinking, however, can have many solutions to any problem, and they can recognise innovative solutions more quickly. So, creative thinking may feel like a superpower reserved only for a “creative person”. 2 Anyone can develop a creative mind with some practice.

3 One powerful one is to meet new people, especially if they're in the arts or in a different industry from you. Sharing your interests and listening to others can inspire you to view the world differently. Practising boredom can help you develop your creativity, too. Allowing yourself to become bored and seeing what pulls your interest can help you practise letting your curiosity lead the way.

4 When you're feeling uninspired, coaching can refocus your attention and help you get curious about your experience.

Thinking more creatively can take effort, but a little practice can make you a better employee; it can make you a better parent, student, and leader, too.

- 5
- A. They may hold back people's innovation.
  - B. Coaching can also help train your creative thinking.
  - C. There are many ways to encourage creative thinking.
  - D. Inspiration is a powerful tool to help foster your related skills.
  - E. Thankfully, creative masters aren't the only ones with innovative ideas.
  - F. Many creative thinking methods work best when they're done in a group.
  - G. The benefits of thinking creatively can show up throughout your daily life.

答案: 1~5 AEBCG

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Language points

学习任务目标
1. Learn important expressions about the topic, and understand the whole text.
2. Practise using the expressions to complete relevant exercises.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The use of **celebrities** such as singers and movie stars is common in advertising. 名人, 明星
2. They have just returned from **faraway** places with wonderful stories to tell. 遥远的
3. Some adjustments of the **lens** may be necessary. 镜头
4. The traditional **craft** has been passed down from generation to generation. 技能
5. A painter friend I know expects me to **pose** for him by the hour. 摆好姿势

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>fascination</u> <i>n.</i> 着迷, 迷恋	<u>fascinate</u> <i>v.</i> 使着迷, 强烈吸引
	<u>fascinated</u> <i>adj.</i> 着迷的, 被强烈吸引的
	<u>fascinating</u> <i>adj.</i> 吸引人的, 迷人的
<u>fashion</u> <i>n.</i> 时尚	<u>fashionable</u> <i>adj.</i> 时尚的, 流行的
<u>uncomplicated</u> <i>adj.</i> 不复杂的, 简单的; 单纯的	<u>complicated</u> <i>adj.</i> 复杂的, 难懂的
	<u>complicate</u> <i>v.</i> 使复杂化
	<u>complication</u> <i>n.</i> 使更复杂化(或更困难)的事物;(医学)并发症

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>grocery</u> <i>n.</i> 食品杂货店	<u>grocer</u> <i>n.</i> 食品杂货商

III. 补全短语

1. regardless of 不管; 不顾
2. nothing more than 仅仅; 只是
3. pose for 为……摆好姿势
4. as much as 和……一样多; 多达
5. devotion to 对……的奉献
6. put... into 把……投入
7. approach to 对待……的方式
8. passion for 对……的热爱
9. not once 一次也不; 一次也没有
10. fascination with 对……的迷恋/着迷

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: what 引导表语从句  
This devotion and hard work is what we see reflected within his photos.  
我们所看到的奉献精神 and 辛勤工作反映在了他的照片中。
2. 句型公式: nor 置于句首引起的部分倒装  
Nor was it a wide range of contacts and connections.  
(坎宁安享有盛誉)也不在于他交友广泛、识人无数。
3. 句型公式: “no matter + 特殊疑问词”引导让步状语从句  
He valued his integrity and would not be bought by anyone, no matter how many free clothes or flights to faraway destinations he was offered.  
他珍视自己的正直, 不为任何人所收买, 无论提供给他多少免费的衣服或远程航班。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. fascination *n.* 着迷, 迷恋

[教材原文] Through his **fascination** with what people were wearing, and not who they were, he opened the doors of fashion to everyone...

他执着于人们的穿着, 而不是他们的身份, 通过这份执着, 他为每个人打开了时尚的大门……

[归纳拓展]

(1) fascination with 对……的迷恋/着迷

in/with fascination 着迷地

(2) fascinate *v.* 使着迷, 强烈吸引

be fascinated by 被……吸引, 对……着迷

(3) fascinating *adj.* 吸引人的, 迷人的

(4) fascinated *adj.* 着迷的, 被强烈吸引的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Some people admired him for his lifelong fascination with the ancient Chinese buildings.

② The dad walked into the son's room and he found that the son was reading a book in/with fascination.

③ Gradually he became fascinated (fascinate) by dinosaurs.

(2) 语境语法填空

Yesterday I went to the circus. I ① was fascinated (fascinate) by all kinds of performances in the circus. But what ② fascinated (fascinate) me most was the high-wire circus act. The ③ fascinating (fascinate) performance was so wonderful and thrilling that I watched it ④ in/with fascination.

(3) 写作微练

(应用文写作之邀请信) 知道你对多元文化非常着迷, 所以我很高兴地邀请你参加即将到来的“中国传统文化周”活动。

Knowing that you are fascinated by diverse cultures, so I'm exceedingly delighted to invite you to the upcoming event, Traditional Chinese Culture Week.

### 2. fashion *n.* 时尚

[教材原文] His hard work made him more than a **fashion** photographer...

他的辛勤工作使他不仅仅是一位时尚摄影师……

[归纳拓展]

(1) be/come back into/in fashion 再次流行起来  
come into fashion 流行起来

go/be out of fashion 过时

(2) fashionable *adj.* 时尚的, 流行的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① High heels are back in/into fashion.

② His ideas have gone right out of fashion.

③ Our clothes are lightweight, fashionable (fashion) and practical for holidays.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之报道) 五十位参与者积极参加了这次活动, 他们向我们展示了用各种回收材料制成的漂亮时尚的衣服。

50 participants took an active part in the show, during which they showed us beautiful and fashionable clothes made of various recycled materials.

### 3. nor 置于句首引起的部分倒装

[教材原文] **Nor was** it a wide range of contacts and connections.

(坎宁安享有盛誉) 也不在于他交友广泛、识人无数。

[句式分析] 本句中 Nor 置于句首, 句子用部分倒装, 即把系动词提到了主语之前。

[归纳拓展]

nor 置于句首时, 句子要用部分倒装, 即把助动词、系动词或情态动词提到主语之前。

#### 名师点拨

(1) 在上述结构中, nor 可以用 neither 替换。

(2) nor 与 neither 连用引导句子时, 若将两者置于句首, 则两句都用部分倒装, 表示“既不……也不……”。

**Neither has** he done it, and **nor will** he do it.

他没做过这事, 以后也不会做。

(3) 若表示两者中“一个……另一个也……”, 要用“so + 助动词、系动词或情态动词 + 主语”结构。

Daisy has been to China, and **so has** Sarah.

戴西去过中国, 萨拉也去过。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① My sister hasn't had breakfast, and nor have my parents.

② They didn't go to the park yesterday and neither/nor did we.

③Li Lei can't dance. Neither/Nor can Tom.

④Wang Fang performs well in the English class.  
So does Mary.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之情景描写)眼前的一切都不熟悉,我们也不知道农舍在哪里。

Nothing in sight was familiar and neither/nor did we know where the farm house was.

#### 4. “no matter+特殊疑问词”引导让步状语从句

[教材原文]He valued his integrity and would not be bought by anyone, **no matter how** many free clothes or flights to faraway destinations he was offered.

他珍视自己的正直,不为任何人所收买,无论给他提供多少免费的衣服或远程航班。

[句式分析]句中 no matter how 引导让步状语从句,该从句中 he was offered 是定语从句,修饰先行词 clothes or flights,省略了关系代词 that 或 which。

[归纳拓展]

在引导让步状语从句时“no matter + when/who/where/how/whom 等”相当于“when/who/where/how/whom 等+后缀-ever”。

名师点拨 ■■■■

“when/who/where/how/whom 等 + 后缀-ever”既能引导让步状语从句,又能引导名词性从句;但“no matter + when/who/where/how/whom 等”只能引导让步状语从句。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①No matter what happened, he wouldn't say a word.

②No matter where he may go, I'll follow him.

③He was always busy working no matter when I visited him.

④(2023·新课标I卷)Whatever it is, no matter how small it might seem, write it down.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写)无论我说什么,都无法抹去她眼中的失望和心中的伤痛。

No matter what I said, it could hardly remove the disappointment in her eyes and hurt in her heart.

### 多义词汇 专练

pose

A. v. (为画像、摄影)摆好姿势

B. v. 造成(威胁、问题等)

C. v. 提问

①The researchers **pose** problems that require detailed technical help. C

②This could **pose** a threat to jobs in the coal industry. B

③How did you get him to **pose** for this picture? A

## Unit 2 课后素养评价(六)

### Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

#### I. 单词拼写

- We are becoming one of the market leaders in the fashion (时尚) industry.
- All the students began to pose (摆好姿势) for a group photograph.
- The old view of Galileo was delightfully uncomplicated (不复杂的).
- Grocery (食品杂货店) stores have to offer enough specials to bring people into the store.
- The programme hosted by him is so fantastic that it attracts many celebrities (名人).
- The girls listened in fascination (着迷) as the story unfolded.
- So loud was the noise that it could be heard by the faraway (遥远的) hills.

#### II. 短语填空

regardless of; not once; as much as; nothing more than; put... into...

- There is solid evidence that they lived in these caves, regardless of the cold.
- After a few miles, Tom wanted nothing more than to lie down.
- Tom puts a lot of time and energy into improving his listening ability and he finally catches up with his classmates.
- As far as I'm concerned, it matters as much as a formal talk.
- I have not once asked for leave during the whole year.



## III. 完成句子

1. It is his devotion to his job that makes him succeed in this field.

正是他对工作的奉献精神使他在这个领域取得了成功。

2. Whether an approach to solving the problem can be found is what worries the public.

能否找到解决这个问题的办法是公众所担心的。

3. His father's passion for nature influenced him greatly, making him want to be a botanist when he grew up.

父亲对大自然的热情对他影响很大,这使得他长大后想成为一名植物学家。

4. During the journey, my sister didn't miss every chance to practise speaking English, nor did I.

在旅行中,姐姐不放过每次练习说英语的机会,我也是。

5. You should persist in your dream no matter what difficulties you meet.

无论你遇到了什么困难,你都应该坚持自己的梦想。

## IV. 完形填空

Last week we encountered a minor water crisis at our home. A water pipe (管子) had been leaking 1 within a bathroom wall, which my husband and I 2 for long. Consequently, we woke up one morning to a pool of water on the bedroom floor. We 3 the bedroom sofa that shares the same wall and located the 4: Water had spread from a break between the wall and the floor.

I got down to clearing up the 5. Initially, I used towels to absorb the water. When seeing the break was not huge, I tried 6 back the water with a mop (拖把). But the 7 quickly became bigger, making more water constantly well out. This was a sign that something deeper within the wall needed our 8.

We acted decisively, shutting 9 the main water line, opening up the wall and beginning the chaotic work of 10 the broken pipe. Despite quite a bit of wall repair and painting to do, we were 11 that it was no longer leaking and our water supply was back on track. Later, we were told by an architect friend that such a small leak can become a 12 break and eventually do serious structural damage to our home.

Big problems usually start small. I've been reflecting: How many times we don't bother to 13 small issues that demand our attention until they grow into big ones that almost 14 our life. With more care and earlier action, we can save ourselves much time and 15.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者家浴室墙上的水管有点漏水,作者及时进行了处理,避免了更大的问题;这也让作者意识到,面对小问题,我们要及时采取行动,避免更大的问题发生。

1. A. rapidly B. slightly  
C. heavily D. widely

B 根据上文的“Last week we encountered a minor water crisis at our home.”可知,作者家遇到的是一次小的漏水危机,由此可知,水管轻微漏水,并不严重。故选 B。

2. A. expected B. discussed  
C. considered D. ignored

D 根据下文的“Consequently, we woke up one morning to a pool of water on the bedroom floor.”可知,作者忽视了之前的漏水问题,结果遭遇了危机。故选 D。

3. A. occupied B. changed  
C. abandoned D. removed

D 根据下文的“Water had spread from a break between the wall and the floor.”可知,水是从墙和地板之间的缝隙中流出来的,由此可知,作者移开了卧室沙发,才发现了这个问题。故选 D。

4. A. fault B. resource  
C. item D. approach

A 根据下文的“Water had spread from a break between the wall and the floor.”可知,水是从墙和地板之间的缝隙中流出来的,由此可知,这是故障所在。故选 A。

5. A. objects B. doubt  
C. mess D. memories

C 根据上文的“Consequently, we woke up one morning to a pool of water on the bedroom floor.”可知,因为漏水,卧室地板上有一摊水,由此可知,作者要收拾混乱的场面。故选 C。

6. A. pushing B. drawing  
C. shipping D. blowing

A 根据上文的“When seeing the break was not huge”可知,裂缝不大,由此可知,作者尝试用拖把将水向后推。故选 A。

7. A. floor                      B. leak  
C. pipe                        D. wall  
B 根据下文的“making more water constantly well out”可知,更多的水不断流出,由此可知,裂缝变得更大了。故选 B。
8. A. mention                B. service  
C. attention                D. sympathy  
C 根据上文的“making more water constantly well out”可知,更多的水不断流出,由此可知,墙内更深处有问题需要注意。故选 C。
9. A. through                B. aside  
C. apart                      D. down  
D 根据下文的“opening up the wall and beginning the chaotic work of 10 the broken pipe”可知,作者开始修理破裂的管道,由此可知,作者应该先关闭主水管,再进行修理。故选 D。
10. A. arranging            B. preserving  
C. fixing                     D. distinguishing  
C 根据下文的“broken pipe”可知,管道破裂了,因此作者要进行修理工作。故选 C。
11. A. curious                B. anxious  
C. shocked                 D. relieved  
D 根据下文的“it was no longer leaking and our water supply was back on track”可知,管道不再

- 漏水,供水也回到了正轨,由此可知,作者放心了,松了口气。故选 D。
12. A. sharp                      B. major  
C. mental                    D. temporary  
B 根据下文的“eventually do serious structural damage to our home”可知,小的缝隙会变成大的裂缝,最终对房屋造成严重的破坏。故选 B。
13. A. address                B. highlight  
C. admit                      D. postpone  
A 根据下文的“they grow into big ones”可知,小问题会发展成几乎毁掉我们生活的大问题,因为我们不设法解决它。故选 A。
14. A. cure                      B. direct  
C. ruin                        D. dominate  
C 根据上文的“they grow into big ones”可知,小问题会发展成几乎毁掉我们生活的大问题。故选 C。
15. A. space                    B. trouble  
C. argument                D. water  
B 根据上文的“With more care and earlier action”可知,更早采取行动,小问题就不会发展成大问题,会给我们节省很多时间和避免麻烦。故选 B。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Study the sentence structures, and learn about predicative clauses.  
2. Study the usage of predicative clauses, and use the clauses in real context.

○ 自主式预习 ○

- I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思
1. The company has been targeted by animal rights groups for its use of dogs in drugs **trials**. 试验
2. **Hydrogen** and oxygen combine to form water. 氢
3. The nineteenth century witnessed (见证) a revolution in ship design and **propulsion**. 推进力
4. The other day, the **acclaim** coming from my head teacher at the class meeting made me excited. 表扬
5. Someone chooses to **shun** the focus of the public, while someone chooses to grab and make good use of it. 避开,躲开

6. It was hard to imagine much life in this **harsh** environment of rock, wind and fires. 恶劣的
- II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>atomic</u> <i>adj.</i> 原子能的;核能的	atom <i>n.</i> 原子,原子核
<u>prosperous</u> <i>adj.</i> 富裕的,繁荣的,兴旺的,发达的	prosperity <i>n.</i> 繁荣,富庶,昌盛
<u>craftsmanship</u> <i>n.</i> 手艺;工艺;技艺	craftsman <i>n.</i> 匠人;能工巧匠
	craft <i>n.</i> 手艺;工艺



## III. 补全短语

- allow for 考虑到, 顾及
- back down 退让; 认输
- think outside the box 不拘一格地思考, 跳出框框思考
- break new ground 开辟新的领域; 有新发现
- on a daily basis 每天
- keep on 反复地做; 继续进行

## IV. 补全句子

- 句型公式: 时间状语从句的省略

After coming back from the US, Deng devoted himself whole-heartedly to the development of the "two bombs".

从美国回国后, 邓稼先就全身心投入到“两弹”的研制工作中。

- 句型公式: make+宾语+宾语补足语

This lifelong devotion has made him one of the most celebrated Peking Opera artists of all time. 这种终生的奉献使他成为有史以来最著名的京剧艺术家之一。

- 句型公式: 现在分词短语作结果状语

In October 1964, China exploded its first atomic bomb, marking a successful start of the "two bombs, one satellite" project, in which more than 17,000 scientists and researchers participated.

1964年10月, 中国引爆了第一颗原子弹, 标志着“两弹一星”计划的成功开启, 这个计划有17 000多名科学家和研究人员参加。

## 任务型课堂

- trial n. 试验; 试用; 审判; 审理; 令人伤脑筋的人(事)

[教材原文] Although Walnut Creek was not where they grew naturally, Ruth managed to grow them by much trial and error.

虽然核桃溪市并不是它们的原产地, 鲁丝通过反复试验得以成功地种植了它们。

## [归纳拓展]

- by trial and error 反复试验(以得出最佳结果)
- be on trial for sth. 为某项罪名受审判
- bring sb. to trial = put sb. on trial 使某人受审, 审问某人

## [即学即练]

- 单句语法填空

① By trial and error, these scientists finally found out what caused the problem.

② She was on trial for theft.

③ Those who refused to pay fines were put on trial.

- 写作微练

(读后续写之动作描写) 这是一个反复试验的过程, 需要一些消防队员潜入冷水中, 在马胸前系上皮带。

It was a process of trial and error that required a few firefighters to slip into the cold water to tie belts under the chests of the horses.

- 现在分词短语作结果状语

[教材原文] In October 1964, China exploded its first atomic bomb, marking a successful start of the "two

bombs, one satellite" project, in which more than 17,000 scientists and researchers participated.

1964年10月, 中国引爆了第一颗原子弹, 标志着“两弹一星”计划的成功开启, 这个计划有17 000多名科学家和研究人员参加。

## [归纳拓展]

作状语的现在分词的逻辑主语是句子的主语, 表示时间、原因、结果、条件、方式或伴随等。现在分词的一般式表示的动作与谓语动词表示的动作同时发生。现在分词的完成式表示的动作在谓语动词表示的动作之前发生。

## 名师点拨

(1) 现在分词置于逗号之后除了作结果状语外, 还常作伴随状语, 这时现在分词相当于由 and 连接的并列谓语。

The boy dropped the bowl on the floor, breaking (= and broke) it into pieces.

那个男孩把碗摔在地上, 摔成了碎片。(结果状语)

He lay on the grass, staring (= and stared) at the stars in the sky.

他躺在草地上, 凝望着天上的星星。(伴随状语)

(2) 不定式和现在分词都可作结果状语, 现在分词作结果状语表示一种合乎情理的、自然而然的结果; 而不定式作结果状语通常表示未曾预料到的情况或结果, 有时不定式前加 only 或 never, 以加强“意想不到”的语气。

I rushed to the station in a hurry, only to find the train had already gone.

我匆忙赶到火车站, 不料火车已经开走了。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① Like ancient sailors, birds can find their way using (use) the sun and the stars.
- ② A cold wind swept across the street, making (make) the man shudder (颤抖) heavily.
- ③ Carrying (carry) many different viruses, wild animals can potentially infect human beings and should be banned for trade.
- ④ Having finished (finish) his homework, he went to bed.

⑤ Once losing (lose) this chance, you can't easily find one.

⑥ I arrived at the shop only to find (find) I'd left all my money at home.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之申请信) 得知我们学校的广播电台正在招聘英语播音员, 我写信来申请这个职位。  
Learning that our school radio station is looking for an English announcer, I'm writing to apply for the position.

## 语法研习课

### 表语从句

#### 语法感知

- ① The fact is **that** they never told me about it.
- ② The question is **whether** we should help him.
- ③ This is **what** makes them so special.
- ④ The problem is **who** we can send to look after him.
- ⑤ What I want to know is **when** we'll start the project.
- ⑥ A simple restaurant was **where** he usually had the same meal of sausages, eggs and coffee.
- ⑦ This is **how** they get the exact address of the lost man.
- ⑧ She looks **as if** she were ten years younger.

1. 以上句子中句①②为从属连词引导的表语从句; 句③④为连接代词引导的表语从句; 句⑤⑥⑦为连接副词引导的表语从句; 句⑧为 as if 引导的表语从句。(填序号)
2. 句①中 that 不作句子成分, 没有任何意义, 只起连接作用。
3. 句②中 whether 不作句子成分, whether 意为“是否”。
4. 句③④的连接代词在从句中作主语和宾语。
5. 句⑤⑥⑦中的连接副词在从句中作状语。

#### 语法精讲

##### 一、概述

在复合句中充当表语的从句叫表语从句。表语从句一般用在“主语+系动词+表语”的结构里, 它最明显的特征是跟在连系动词 be 之后。

##### 二、引导词

表语从句的常用引导词:

1. 从属连词 that, whether;

2. 连接代词 what, who, which, whom, whose, whatever, whoever, whomever, whichever 等;
3. 连接副词 when, where, how, why, whenever, wherever 等;
4. as if/as though 和 because.

#### 三、that 引导的表语从句

that 引导表语从句时只起连接作用, 在句子中不作任何成分, 也无任何意义, 通常不能省略。

The fact is **that** he is old enough to go to school.

事实是他已经到了上学的年龄。

The trouble was **that** they couldn't agree among themselves.

问题是他们内部意见不统一。

His **requirement** was **that** the floor (should) be kept clean.

他的要求是要保持地板干净。

My **advice** is **that** your homework (should) be finished in time every day.

我的建议是你每天要及时完成你的家庭作业。

#### 名师点拨

当主句的主语为 advice, suggestion, proposal, recommendation, order, command, request, requirement 等表示建议、命令、要求的名词时, 表语从句用虚拟语气, 即从句的谓语动词形式要用“should+动词原形”结构, 其中 should 可以省略。

#### 四、whether 引导的表语从句

whether 意为“是否”, 引导表语从句时只起连接作用, 在从句中不作任何成分。

His first question was **whether** Mr Smith had

arrived yet.

他的第一个问题是史密斯先生是否已经到达。

The question is **whether** he has passed the test.

问题是他是否通过了测试。

### 名师点拨

whether 引导表语从句时一般不能用 if 替代。

### 五、连接代词引导的表语从句

连接代词包括 what, who, which, whom, whose, whatever, whoever, whomever, whichever 等,在句中作主语、宾语、表语或定语。

The question is **what** caused the accident.

问题是什么造成了这次事故。

My trouble is **who (whom)** I can turn to.

我的麻烦是我能向谁求助。

My question is **whose** turn it is to be on duty today.

我的问题是今天轮到谁值日了。

What he told you was **what (= the thing that)** had been discussed at the meeting.

他告诉你的就是在会上讨论的内容。

The mountain is no longer **what** it used to be.

这座山已经不是过去的样子了。

This is **what (= the place that)** was once called the paradise.

这就是曾经被叫作乐园的地方。

### 名师点拨

what 引导表语从句时在从句中作主语、宾语、表语或定语,相当于定语从句中的“先行词+关系代词”的形式,表示“……的事情(内容、地点、样子等)”。

### 六、连接副词引导的表语从句

连接副词包括 when, where, how, why, whenever, wherever 等,在表语从句中作状语。

This is **where** he was born.

这就是他出生的地方。

That is **why** you see this old woman before you, Jeanne.

珍妮,这就是这位老妇人出现在你面前的原因。

### 七、as if/as though 引导的表语从句

as if/as though 引导的表语从句常置于系动词 look, seem, sound, appear 等后面。

It **looks as if/as though** it is going to rain.

看起来天要下雨了。

It **sounds as if/as though** someone is knocking on the door.

听起来好像有人在敲门。

The room looked **as if** it **had been untouched** for decades.

这个房间看起来好像几十年没人动过。

### 名师点拨

对于 as if/as though 引导的表语从句,如果描述的是事实,从句用陈述语气;如果与事实不符,从句用虚拟语气(表示与现在事实相反时,从句的谓语动词形式用动词过去式,be 动词用 were;表示与过去事实相反时,从句的谓语动词形式用“had+过去分词”;表示与将来事实相反时,从句的谓语动词形式用“should/would/could/might+动词原形”)。

### 八、because 引导的表语从句

because 引导的表语从句通常只用于“This/That/It is because...”结构中。

My anger is **because** you haven't called me for a long time.

我生气是因为你好长时间没给我打电话了。

### 名师点拨

(1) This/That/It is because... 强调原因; This/That/It is why... 强调结果。

He was sent to the hospital. **That's because** he was ill.

他被送往医院。那是因为他生病了。

He was ill. **That's why** he was sent to the hospital.

他生病了。所以他被送往医院。

(2) reason 作主语时,表语从句只能用 that 引导,而不能用 because。

**The reason** why he was late was **that** he missed the early bus.

他迟到的原因是他没赶上早班公共汽车。

## 语法冲关

### I. 用适当的连接词填空

1. Lisa is no longer what she used to be.
2. What I want to say is that I'm exhausted.
3. The question is whether it is worth doing.
4. That's where/why I can't agree with you.
5. The scissors are not what I need.
6. The reason why I was sad was that he didn't understand me at all.
7. Why were you absent from the meeting? Was it because you were ill?

## II. 完成句子

- Hearing the news, it seemed as if/as though he were mad.  
听到这个消息,他好像疯了似的。
- My suggestion is that we (should) set up a working group.

我的建议是我们应该设立一个工作小组。

- The reason why we don't trust him is that he often lies.  
我们不信任他的原因是他经常撒谎。
- That is what she is worried about.  
那就是她担心的。

## Unit 2 课后素养评价（七）

### Section III Using language

#### I. 选词填空

keep on; as well as; by trial and error; in addition to; rather than; back down; die out; contribute to; think outside the box; replace... with...

- The scientist found a new drug to cure the disease by trial and error.
- Arts contribute to cultural development when people gather together to share their experience and renew their energy.
- In order to think outside the box, we need to consider every possible explanation.
- We are taught that a business letter should be written in a formal style rather than in a personal style.
- In addition to basic salary, there's a list of extra benefits.
- When they argued, she refused to back down.
- Encouraged by his friends, Jack didn't lose heart and kept on trying.
- It is not a good idea to miss meals and replace them with snacks.
- Coursework (课程作业) is taken into account as well as exam results.
- This species has nearly died out because its habitat is being destroyed.

#### II. 单句语法填空

- The trouble is that I can't find my way.
- Without his support, we wouldn't be where we are now.
- This is what my father has taught me—to always face difficulties and hope for the best.
- Taking a boat is the only way to get here, which is how we arrived.
- He got caught in the heavy traffic. That was why he was late.
- Not only did he listen to the teacher carefully, but also he took notes in class.

- The problem is what contributed to the boy's obesity.
- The original text varies very much from the version we know today.

#### III. 阅读理解

In the 7th grade, I was a naughty boy. Ms Dinos pulled me aside for a fateful chat. What she had to say was simple—I was a follower with the potential of a leader, and what I needed was some new friends and some time to grow up. She suggested to my mother that I repeat the 7th grade. After a pout (噘嘴) and a plea, I made a deal, “Give me the summer and I'll show you!”

That summer, I made it my business to do just that. By the following school year, I was awarded a medal that valued my efforts. Those three friends she warned me of eventually dropped out. Ms Dinos saved my life.

Twenty years later, Ms Dinos and I were reunited on the Internet. However, she didn't remember the event at all. Right then it hit me. That event that meant so much to me was just a singular moment in her well-lived life. And I learnt that Ms Dinos had since become a famous garden designer, for she had a gift for planting seeds.

It was only months after reuniting with Ms Dinos that an old student of my own popped up online. She informed me of the moment that I inspired her. According to her, I once shared a drawing of mine with the class. That student was so moved by the drawing that she wanted to learn to do the same. That picture ignited in her a passion that she later turned into a career. My own little seed was planted and now has grown.

Now understanding what I do about the power of planting seeds, I take every opportunity: share

what I can with as many young people as possible. I offer bits of wisdom or words of encouragement, but sometimes just a smile—it goes a long way. I know that one day, when they're ready for it, that seed I planted will be there, ready to grow.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者小时候受到教师 Ms Dinos 的鼓舞，老师改变命运般的谈话在作者的心中埋下了努力奋斗的种子。多年后，作者成为老师，他也在学生的心中埋下努力向上的种子。

- How did the author respond to Ms Dinos' suggestion?
  - He ignored the advice.
  - He accepted it willingly.
  - He begged for another chance.
  - He decided to change schools.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“After a pout (噘嘴) and a plea, I made a deal, ‘Give me the summer and I'll show you!’”可知，作者请求 Ms Dinos 再给他一次机会。故选 C。
- What can we learn from Paragraph 3?
  - Ms Dinos could recall the event vividly.
  - Ms Dinos had become a famous teacher.
  - The author had the same feeling as Ms Dinos.
  - The author was surprised by Ms Dinos' reaction.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Twenty years later, Ms Dinos and I were reunited on the Internet. However, she didn't remember the

event at all. Right then it hit me. That event that meant so much to me was just a singular moment in her well-lived life.”可知，作者对 Ms Dinos 的反应感到惊讶。故选 D。

- What does the underlined word “ignited” mean in Paragraph 4?
  - Invited.
  - Unfolded.
  - Sparked.
  - Displayed.

C 词义猜测题。根据画线词前文中的“According to her, I once shared a drawing of mine with the class. That student was so moved by the drawing that she wanted to learn to do the same.”和文中的“... in her a passion that she later turned into a career.”可知，那张照片点燃了那个学生的热情，后来她把这种热情变成了事业。因此画线词的意思是“点燃”。故选 C。
- What does the author most likely want to tell us?
  - Seeds need planting.
  - We are all gardeners.
  - Pictures perform miracles.
  - Ms Dinos predicts the future.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容并结合文章讲述作者小时候受到教师 Ms Dinos 的鼓舞，老师改变命运般的谈话在作者的心中埋下了努力奋斗的种子，多年后，作者成为老师，他也在学生的心中埋下努力向上的种子，可推断出作者最有可能想告诉我们：我们都是园丁。故选 B。

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

### 学习任务目标

- Learn the main expressions and structures.
- Read and understand the main idea of the text, and learn the valuable spirit from Wang Jin.
- Learn about the spirit of craftsmanship.

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- You should make good use of every **precious** minute to study. 珍稀的；贵重的
- Priceless **antiques** were destroyed in the fire. 古董
- Temperatures usually reach their **maximum** after noon. 最大值
- He played a delightful **melody** on his flute (笛子). 曲调

- The dog **barked** madly at her after she got off the bus. (狗)吠叫
- This is truly a **timeless** piece of music. 永恒的
- The group is **comprised** of two guitarists, a drummer, and a singer. 由……构成
- This collection is made up of three parts: poems, **essays** and short stories. 短文，论说文



II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>restoration</u> <i>n.</i> (旧建筑或旧家具等的)修复, 整修	<u>restore</u> <i>v.</i> 恢复, 整修, 使复原
<u>polish</u> <i>v.</i> 擦亮, 擦光	<u>polished</u> <i>adj.</i> 擦亮的; 精炼的; 优美的
<u>exaggeration</u> <i>n.</i> 夸大, 夸张	<u>exaggerate</u> <i>v.</i> 夸大, 夸张
<u>preserve</u> <i>v.</i> 维护, 保护; 保存	<u>preservation</u> <i>n.</i> 维护; 保存
<u>modest</u> <i>adj.</i> 谦虚的, 谦逊的	<u>modestly</u> <i>adv.</i> 谦虚地, 谦逊地
	<u>modesty</u> <i>n.</i> 谦虚, 谦逊
<u>dominate</u> <i>v.</i> 支配, 控制, 主宰	<u>domination</u> <i>n.</i> 支配, 控制, 主宰
	<u>dominant</u> <i>adj.</i> 有优势的, 占统治地位的
<u>architecture</u> <i>n.</i> 建筑风格, 建筑设计	<u>architect</u> <i>n.</i> 建筑师
	<u>architectural</u> <i>adj.</i> 建筑的; 建筑学的
<u>associate</u> <i>v.</i> 与……有关	<u>association</u> <i>n.</i> 协会, 社团; 联系
<u>analysis</u> <i>n.</i> 分析	<u>analyse</u> <i>v.</i> 分析
<u>ambitious</u> <i>adj.</i> 宏大的, 艰巨的	<u>ambition</u> <i>n.</i> 抱负, 雄心, 野心; 追求; 理想

III. 补全短语

1. take up 开始从事; 占据(空间或时间); 拿起; 继续
2. at one's own pace 按照自己的节奏
3. originate from 源于; 起源于
4. pass on... to 把……传递给……
5. take on 承担; 呈现; 接受; 从事; 开始雇用
6. range from... to ... 从……到……不等; 在……范围内变化
7. bring back to life 使……恢复生机/有活力

8. day in, day out 日复一日

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: neither... nor...

It is suddenly clear that when the clock masters say that “these antiques have lives”, it is neither an exaggeration nor a metaphor.

人们突然明白, 当钟表大师们说“这些古董有生命”时, 这既不是夸大其词, 也不是比喻。

2. 句型公式: even if/even though 引导让步状语从句

Even if every clock in the Palace Museum were restored, there would still be work to do, because restoration would probably need to begin again on the clocks that were repaired long ago.

即使故宫博物院的每一件钟表都被修复了, 仍然有工作要做, 因为可能需要重新开始对很久以前修复过的钟表进行修复。

3. 句型公式: not only... (but) also...

This new generation of artisans will not only help preserve traditional skills; the innovation they bring to the craft will also ensure that the art of clock repairing stands the test of time.

新一代的工匠们不仅将帮助保留传统技艺, 他们对工艺的创新也将确保钟表修复艺术能经受住时间的考验。

4. 句型公式: if 引导的虚拟条件句

If it hadn't been for a three-episode documentary, outsiders would never have known that the plainly-dressed people working here are masters of their craft, who have spent their lives restoring precious antiques.

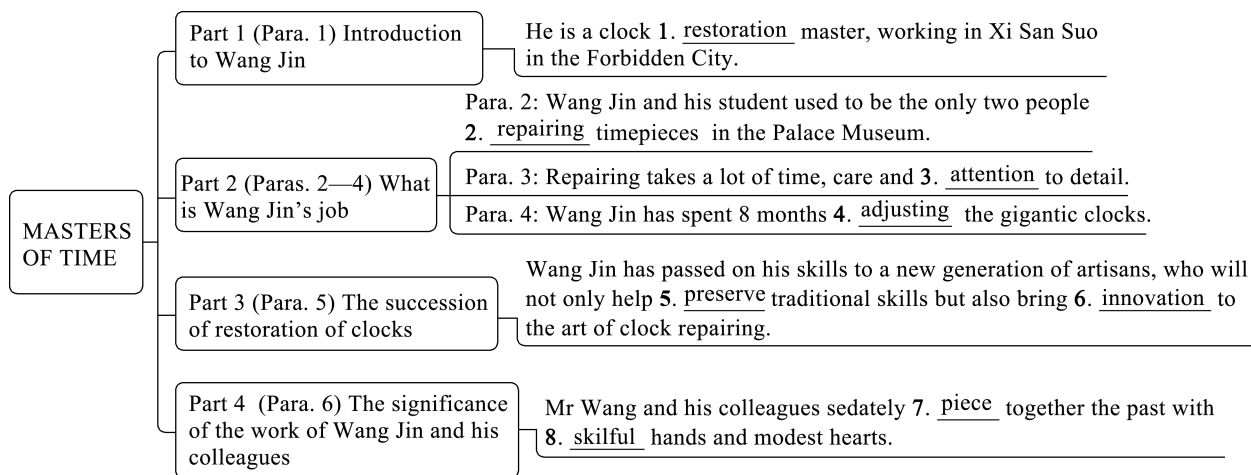
如果不是因为一部三集的纪录片, 外人永远不会知道, 在这里工作的穿着朴素的人竟然都是精于各门技艺的大师, 他们花了一生的时间来修复珍贵的古董。

## 任务型课堂

### Part 1 课文理解

#### 文本整体理解

##### Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



#### 文本细节领悟

##### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Why do many people want to take a photo with Wang Jin?  
A. Because his restoration work has a long history.  
B. Because people admire him for his work.  
C. Because he is the director of the Palace Museum.  
D. Because he is one of the only two people working there.
- Where do the timepieces in the Palace Museum mostly come from?  
A. North America and Asia.  
B. Asia and Africa.  
C. Europe and China.  
D. Africa and Australia.
- What is Wang Jin's attitude towards the future of the timepieces?  
A. Negative.                      B. Optimistic.  
C. Worried.                      D. Indifferent.
- Which of the following can best describe Wang Jin?  
A. Devoted and modest.  
B. Hard-working and caring.  
C. Smart and skilled.  
D. Patient and selfless.

答案: 1~4 BCBA

#### 语言知识运用

##### Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- If it hadn't been for a three-episode documentary, outsiders would never have known that the plainly-dressed people working here are masters of their craft, who have spent their lives restoring precious antiques.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。if 引导的虚拟条件句, 表示与过去事实相反的假设; 主句中 that 引导宾语从句, 在这个从句中 people 后的现在分词短语 working here 作其后置定语; who 引导的非限制性定语从句对 masters 进行补充说明。

[尝试翻译] 如果不是因为一部三集的纪录片, 外人永远不会知道, 在这里工作的穿着朴素的人竟然都是精于各门技艺的大师, 他们花了一生的时间来修复珍贵的古董。

- Even if every clock in the Palace Museum were restored, there would still be work to do, because restoration would probably need to begin again on the clocks that were repaired long ago.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。even if 引导让步状语从句, 且使用了虚拟语气; because 引导原因状语从句, 在这个从句中 that 引导定语从句, 修饰先行词 the clocks。

[尝试翻译] 即使故宫博物院的每一件钟表都被修复了, 仍然有工作要做, 因为可能需要重新开始对很久以前修复过的钟表进行修复。



## ○思维品质培养

### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What can you do to help pass on traditional skills and the spirit of craftsmanship?

I will focus on one thing for decades, no matter how boring it is. I will really love what I am

doing with higher standards and higher demand.

2. What do Bill Cunningham and Wang Jin in the two reading texts of this unit have in common?

They are both devoted, motivated, passionate and skilled masters in their fields of work.

## Part 2 语言梳理

### 1. preserve v. 维护,保护;保存

[教材原文] This new generation of artisans will not only help **preserve** traditional skills; the innovation they bring to the craft will also ensure that the art of clock repairing stands the test of time.

新一代的工匠们不仅将帮助保留传统技艺,他们对工艺的创新也将确保钟表修复艺术能经受住时间的考验。

[归纳拓展]

(1) preserve... from... 保护……免受……

(2) preservation n. 维护;保存

【易混辨析】preserve, protect

易混词	区别
preserve	意为“维护,保护;保存”,着重表示保持原有的状态或保持完好的状态
protect	意为“保护,保卫”,着重表示保护或保卫不受外界的伤害或侵害

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The institute was set up to preserve the endangered species from extinction.

② More money is needed for the preservation (preserve) of historic buildings and monuments.

(2) 选词填空(preserve, protect)

① The union was formed to protect the rights and interests of miners.

② Fish are preserved in ice and salt until they are sold.

(3) 写作微练

(应用文写作之环境保护)生态旅游是为当地社区创造收入的一种手段,从而有助于保护动植物的生物多样性。

Ecotourism is a means of generating incomes for local communities, thus helping preserve the biodiversity of plants and animals.

### 2. ambitious adj. 宏大的,艰巨的;有抱负的,有雄心的

[教材原文] Each generation conscientiously learnt their craft and undertook **ambitious** projects, many of which took years to complete.

每一代人都认真地学习他们的手艺,并从事宏大的项目,其中许多项目需要花费数年才能完成。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be ambitious for... 对……有强烈的期望;渴望得到……

(2) ambition n. 抱负,雄心,野心;追求;理想  
achieve/realise/fulfill one's ambition of doing sth.  
实现某人做某事的理想/抱负

an ambition to do sth. 做某事的愿望

have no ambition to do sth. 完全不想做某事

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① It's clear that the man is ambitious for success in politics.

② The young man's ambition (ambitious) is to sail round the world.

③ They had the ambition to dominate (dominate) this small country.

④ She attained her ambition of becoming (become) a pilot.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之总结升华)同时,他告诉亨利,只有通过努力工作,坚持自己的梦想,他才能受益,才能实现自己的抱负。

Meanwhile, he told Henry only by working hard and sticking to his dream can he benefit and fulfill his ambition.

### 3. associate v. 与……有关

[教材原文] Yet they did not seek fame, and even today, their great works are **associated** more with the imperial court than with them.

然而,他们并不追求名声,即使在今天,他们的伟大作品也更多地与朝廷有关,而不是他们自己。

## [归纳拓展]

- (1) be associated with 与……有关  
 (2) associate... with... 把……和……联系起来  
 (3) association *n.* 协会, 社团; 联系  
 in association with 与……联合; 与……有联系

## [即学即练]

## (1) 单句语法填空

① Teaching of Chinese should be associated with the students' life and focus on their emotion.

② Many doctors have pointed out that cigarette smoking and lung cancer are closely associated (associate).

③ Research associations (associate) are often linked to a particular industry.

④ We work in association with a number of local companies to raise money for the homeless.

## (2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之申请信) 听说我们学校的英语协会需要一些志愿者迎接外国学生, 我写信申请这份工作。

Hearing that our school's English Association needs some volunteers to welcome foreign students, I'm writing to apply for the job.

## 4. if 引导的虚拟条件句

[教材原文] If it hadn't been for a three-episode documentary, outsiders would never have known that the plainly-dressed people working here are masters of their craft, who have spent their lives restoring precious antiques.

如果不是因为一部三集的纪录片, 外人永远不会知道, 在这里工作的穿着朴素的人竟然都是精于各门技艺的大师, 他们花了一生的时间来修复珍贵的古董。

[句式分析] 本句为 if 引导的虚拟条件句, 表示与过去事实相反的假设, 所以从句的谓语动词形式用“had+过去分词”, 主句的谓语动词形式用“would have+过去分词”。

## [归纳拓展]

在 if 引导的虚拟条件句中, 若陈述的情况与过去事实相反, 则虚拟条件句的谓语动词形式用“had+过去分词”, 主句的谓语动词形式用“would/should/could/might have+过去分词”; 若陈述的情况与现在事实相反, 则虚拟条件句的谓语动词形式用“过去式”(be 动词用 were), 主句的谓语动词形式用“would/should/could/might+动词原形”; 若陈述

的情况与将来事实相反, 则虚拟条件句的谓语动词形式用“过去式/were to do/should do”, 主句的谓语动词形式用“would/should/could/might+动词原形”。

## 名师点拨

- (1) “If it be not for...” 句型相当于 “Without...” 或 “But for...”。
- (2) 该句型还可以用倒装形式, 即把 if 省略, 然后把 had 或 were 提到 it 的前面, 转换成 “Had it not been for...” 和 “Were it not for...” 的句型。

## [即学即练]

## (1) 单句语法填空

① If it hadn't been (not be) for your suggestion, I wouldn't have completed the project.

② If it were (be) not for the atmosphere, the earth would be either very hot or very cold.

## (2) 写作微练

(读后续写之总结升华) 如果没有周围那些人的爱

和关心, 我不可能做到这一点。  
 If it hadn't been for the love and care/Had it not been for the love and care from those around me, I wouldn't have made it.

## 多义词汇 专练

- Just last year, I was conducting a **workshop** when someone knocked at the classroom door. B  
 A. *n.* 车间  
 B. *n.* 研讨会
- It should be at a 45° angle to the boat. It needs to be out far enough to catch the wind, but it shouldn't **flap**. B  
 A. *v.* 振(翅)  
 B. *v.* 摆动  
 C. *v.* 忧虑
- I bought the house at a **modest** price. B  
 A. *adj.* 谦虚的  
 B. *adj.* 不太昂贵的  
 C. *adj.* 朴素的
- It's one of the biggest buildings in this area, and it really **dominates** this whole place. C  
 A. *v.* 支配, 控制  
 B. *v.* 在……中占最重要的地位  
 C. *v.* 俯视, 高耸于

## Unit 2 课后素养评价 (八)

### Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### I. 单词拼写

1. The committee is comprised (由……组成) of representatives from both the public and private sectors.
2. With their excellent architecture (建筑风格) and structure, they fascinate visitors from around the world.
3. These essays (短文) represent a considerable improvement on your recent work.
4. Some analyses (分析) suggest that physical activity in a natural environment can help reduce stress.
5. What is the absolute maximum (最大值) you can afford to pay?

#### II. 单句语法填空

1. I'm sure that you will achieve your ambition (ambitious) if you work hard.
2. I was surprised to learn that he was chosen to take on this difficult task.
3. The local government has taken effective measures to preserve (preserve) their natural resources.
4. Nothing is more precious (precious) than a mother's love in the world.
5. His father specialises in the cleaning and restoration (restore) of antique paintings.
6. Her desire for domination (dominate) over the others caused trouble in the family.
7. The problem is how we can raise people's awareness of protecting the rare animals.

#### III. 短语填空

date back to; be fond of; range from... to; pass on... to; take up; (be) associated with; bring... back to life; work on

1. Kate is fond of reading novels in bed, which is a

bad habit.

2. He has come back and taken up the post of the company's manager.
3. My friend tells me that she is working on a new novel.
4. The stone steps, dating back to 1855, are beginning to wear.
5. Stay at home, or you will pass on the disease to other people.
6. I think that it's up to us to bring this fantasy land back to life.
7. At the meeting, the young doctor asked some problems associated with cancer treatment.
8. According to the weather report, the temperature ranges from 15 to 35 degrees.

#### IV. 完成句子

1. They might have been lost in the forest without the compass.  
要是没有指南针,他们可能就在森林里迷路了。
2. I can neither confirm nor deny details of any operation without the Secretary's approval.  
我既不能确认也不能否定任何行动的细节,除非获得部长的批准。
3. He never apologises, even though he knows that he is wrong.  
他从不道歉,即使他知道自己错了。
4. It is clear that the old man is experienced in paper cutting.  
很明显,这位老人在剪纸上很有经验。
5. So dark was it that he couldn't see the faces of his companions.  
天这么黑,他看不见自己同伴的脸。

## V. 语法填空

Cheng Yongmao, **1. who** is in his 60s and has been repairing and maintaining the Great Wall's Jiankou section for nearly two decades, reaches his office at 6:30 am and **2. gets** (get) right down to business.

Jiankou is widely considered one of the most dangerous parts of the Great Wall in Beijing and is known by **3. hikers** (hiker) as the "Wild Wall". The Great Wall has been subjected to natural disasters and human impact after **4. standing** (stand) for more than 450 years, and now extremely needs maintenance and reinforcement.

"Construction work is **5. generally** (general) conducted from April to October, and now it's time **6. to prepare** (prepare) documents for future work," said Cheng. "Previous work has to be reviewed, and historical items **7. unearthed** (unearth) during the cleaning and repairs need to be properly put in files, while construction charts for future efforts have to be readied."

Cheng's office is filled **8. with** traces of his dealings with the Great Wall. A dozen walking sticks he made out of branches stand in the corner behind the door, next to **9. a** pile of tools he uses for tiling. Detailed overall plans of the Jiankou section and the restored parts in Huairou District spread across the office walls. They clearly show towers and **10. various/varied** (vary) scenic spots Cheng has mapped using a computer programme.

## VI. 写作

## 第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你校英文网站正在为“中学生职业规划”栏目公开征集稿件。请以“Career Planning”为题,写一篇短文投稿。内容包括:

1. 职业规划的意义;
2. 中学生职业规划现状;
3. 给中学生的建议。

注意:词数 80 左右。

## Career Planning

---



---



---



---



---

## 【参考范文】

## Career Planning

Career planning is an essential exercise for senior students, because the career is a crucial part of who we are, thus defining our future life to some extent.

Unfortunately, many students struggle with career planning with just a few ideas bouncing around in their heads, leading to stress or lack of motivation. To overcome these challenges, we students can complete a "career aptitude test" to get some insight on a possible career. If still in a dilemma, we can turn to parents or teachers for advice.

By prioritising career planning, we are bound to excel in our academic and personal lives.

## 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I was a 20-year-old nursing student in 1968, assigned as Chris's post-operative nurse.

Chris was an eight-year-old boy filled with energy, who excelled in every sport he played. Disobeying his parents' words, he explored a neighbour's construction site, climbed a ladder, and

fell, which got him a broken arm that later had to be cut off.

The first few days passed quickly. I provided Chris's physical care with forced cheerfulness. As his need for medication decreased, his level of awareness increased, as did his moodiness. When I offered him the towel for a sponge bath and suggested he take over, he washed his face and neck with great difficulty, then quit. And I finished.

The next day, I insisted on his doing whole bath by himself. He was more than halfway through when he sat down and said, "I can't make it!"

"You won't be in the hospital much longer," I said gently. "You need to learn to take care of yourself."

"Well, I can't," he frowned. "How can I do anything with just one hand?"

Putting on my brightest face, I searched for a silver lining in my mind. Finally I said, "Sure you can do it, Chris. At least you have your right hand."

He turned his face away and muttered, "I'm left-handed. At least I used to be." Suddenly, I felt ashamed. How could I have taken right-handedness for granted? It seemed he and I both had a lot to learn.

The next morning, I greeted Chris with a big smile and a rubber band. He looked at me suspiciously. I put my right hand behind my back and kept it there by winding the rubber band around my uniform buttons. "You're left-handed and I'm right-handed," I said. "Every time I ask you to do something with your right hand, I will do it first, with my left hand. And I promise not to practise before I see you."

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

I started from brushing teeth. \_\_\_\_\_

Ten minutes later, I ultimately succeeded. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 【参考范文】

I started from brushing teeth. However, the once simple routine action proved to be a disaster. With my teeth clenching the toothbrush tightly, I made great efforts to squeeze toothpaste onto it with my clumsy left hand, but I missed the target at the first attempt. I stole a glance at Chris and spotted a flicker of disappointment in his eyes. Taking a deep breath, I kept concentrating on the action in front of the mirror and did better.

Ten minutes later, I ultimately succeeded. "This is incredible!" Chris grinned. "I can do it faster!" he declared and sprang from the bed. After several attempts, he made it! Over the next two weeks, we competed with each other to practise these seemingly easy tasks single-handed, from buttoning up the coats to taking notes. Chris soon learned to do almost everything neatly with one hand. The day he left hospital, he hugged me, with tears of gratitude, saying, "You are a truly good nurse. Thank you."

#



### ○学以致用

卓有成就的科技创新人才是我们学习的榜样。请根据下面的提示,用英语写一篇介绍药学家屠呦呦的短文,内容包括:

1. 人物简介:著名的药学家,诺贝尔生理学或医学奖获得者,发现了青蒿素;
2. 主要品质:坚持不懈,乐于奉献等;
3. 简要评价。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:药学家 pharmacologist; 青蒿素 artemisinin; 疟疾 malaria

---



---



---

### 【参考范文】

Talking about pharmacologists, especially women pharmacologists in China, no one can equal Tu Youyou.

Owing to her many years' perseverance, Tu Youyou has made great achievements in medicine. Since graduation, she has been devoted herself whole-heartedly to studying traditional Chinese medicine and modern Western medicine.

Before she won the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine, she was not famous at all. But she sought no fame and persisted in her research with the purpose of curing the malaria patients. After she succeeded in discovering and developing artemisinin, millions of lives have been saved all over the world.

## Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

In 1989, fresh out of high school, I had the difficult task of choosing a career path before college started in three months. In those days in Pakistan, there were limited choices: becoming a doctor or an engineer, or entering the financial world after getting a business degree. I wasn't interested in engineering, so that I was left with medicine or business. I couldn't decide.

My uncle suggested that I do a work placement (实习) to experience it for a month in an international company followed by a month in a hospital. After that, I could make a decision. It seemed like a good idea.

I was accepted for a month's placement at a foreign bank in Karachi. I got a feel of how the world of finance functioned, made new friends, and generally enjoyed the mostly easy-going work surroundings.

The month passed rapidly, and soon I began working at a leading hospital in Karachi. The experience couldn't have been more different. The hospital had a stressful environment. The days started early (at 7 am, compared to 9 am at the bank), and were filled with endless duties. And the night calls! This was crazy, working all day, through the night, and again the next day.

I began thinking about my two experiences. The bank had offered a more relaxing atmosphere, better working hours and less stress. The hospital was full of excitement, but studying and training were difficult. It seemed that the business choice was going to win out.

Near the end of my month at the hospital, I was driving home after an especially busy night call. In front of me was a public bus, with college students sitting on the top. As the driver weaved through (穿梭) traffic, I could see the boys shaking from side to side.

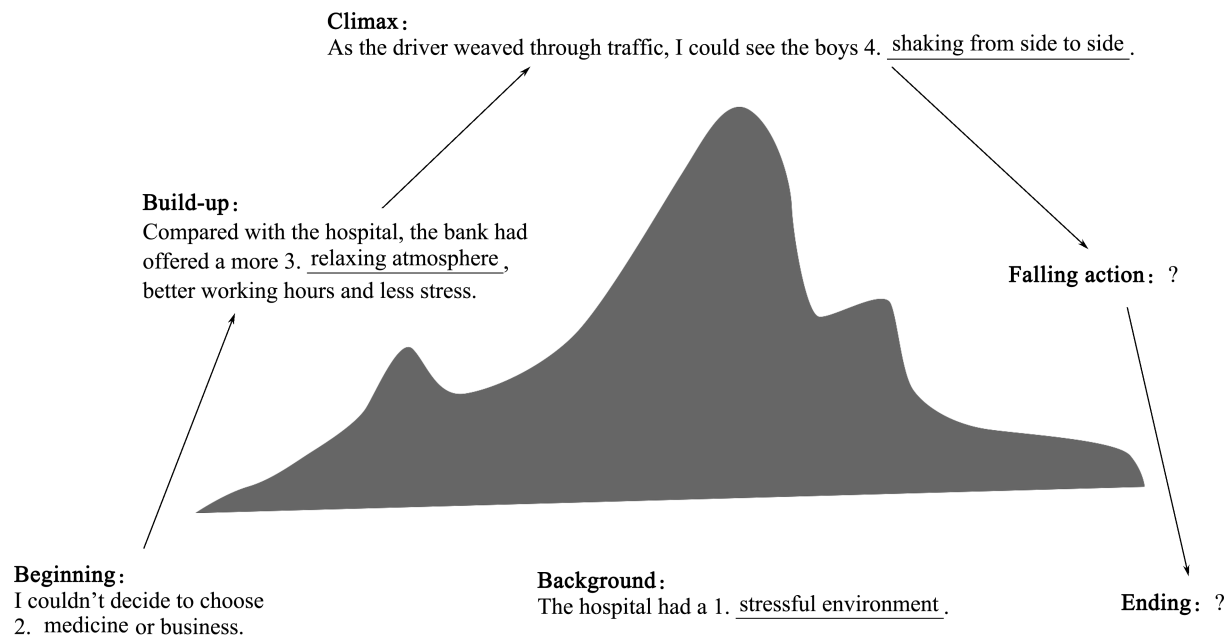
任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the passage mainly talk about?

The author didn't decide what major he would study at college at first, but he was determined to choose medicine after helping a boy.



任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下列问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思并完善故事发展的情节。

<p><b>Paragraph 1:</b></p> <p>Suddenly, a boy fell off the back of the bus. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What happened to the boy after falling off the bus? <u>He hit the road face down and rolled over. He lay still in the middle of the road as the bus sped away.</u></p> <p>2. How did other cars react? <u>None of the cars behind stopped.</u></p> <p>3. What did the author do? <u>He stopped his car and carefully examined the boy. With the help of some passers-by, he lifted the unconscious boy into the car and raced back to the hospital.</u></p>
<p><b>Paragraph 2:</b></p> <p>The next day, when I went to the hospital to see the boy, all his family got up, with grateful smiles on their faces. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. How did the author feel after seeing the boy and his family? <u>He spent the rest of the day in a state of the most fabulous mood he had ever experienced.</u></p> <p>2. What decision did the author make when driving home? <u>Driving home that evening, he decided to study medicine at college.</u></p> <p>3. What did the experience teach the author? <u>This experience taught him that at times, the decisions are made for you—and that whatever happens is always for the best.</u></p>

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Suddenly, a boy fell off the back of the bus. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

The next day, when I went to the hospital to see the boy, all his family got up, with grateful smiles on their faces. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

#### 【参考范文】

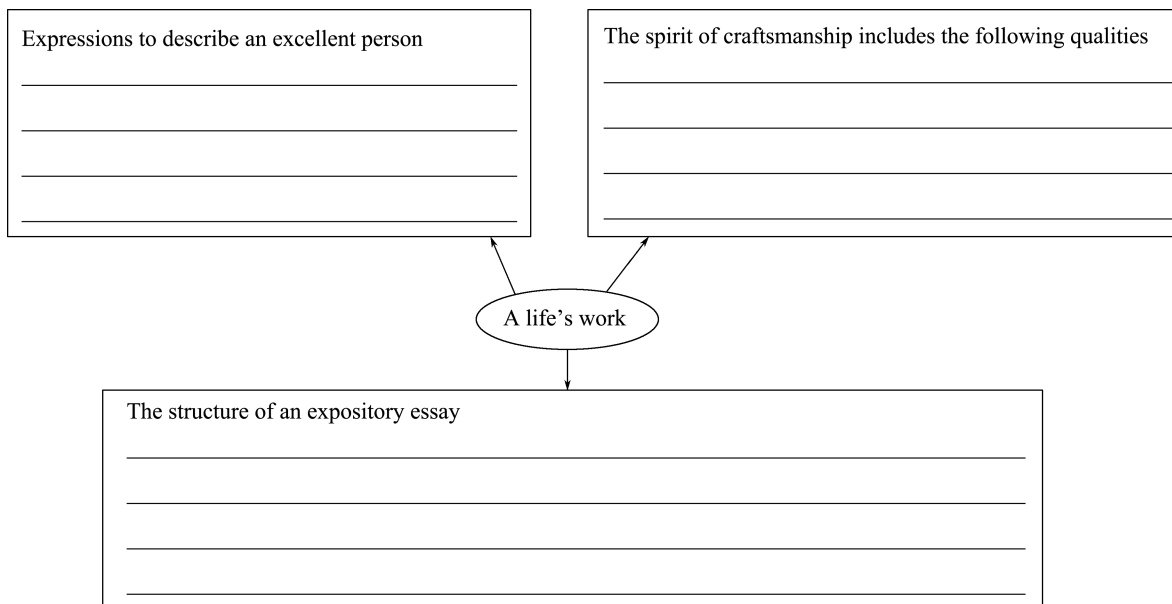
Suddenly, a boy fell off the back of the bus. He hit the road face down and rolled over. He lay still in the middle of the road as the bus sped away. None of the cars behind stopped. Thinking that he could die in a matter of minutes, I stopped my car and carefully examined the boy. With the help of some passers-by, I lifted the unconscious boy into the car and raced back to the hospital. After his family was contacted, he was wheeled into emergency surgery. I drove home, exhausted but happy.

The next day, when I went to the hospital to see the boy, all his family got up, with grateful smiles on their faces. What a feeling it was to help save the life of another person! I spent the rest of the day in a state of the most fabulous mood I had ever experienced. Driving home that evening, I decided on my career path. Two months of placements could not do what 30 minutes' helping an accident victim had done for me. This experience taught me that at times, the decisions are made for you—and that whatever happens is always for the best.

## ★ ★ ★

# 重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

### 一、单元重构



答案:略

### 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

#### A PIONEER FOR ALL PEOPLE

Yuan Longping, known as the “father of hybrid rice”, was one of China’s most famous scientists. Yet, he considered himself a farmer because he continually worked the land in his research. Indeed, his slim but strong body was just like that of millions of Chinese farmers, to whom he had devoted his life.

Yuan Longping was born in 1930 in Beijing. His parents wanted him to pursue a career in science or medicine. However, what concerned him most was that farmers often had poor harvests and sometimes even had a serious shortage of food to eat. To tackle this crisis, he chose to study agriculture and received an education at Southwest Agricultural College in Chongqing.

After graduating in 1953, he worked as a researcher. Yuan Longping realised that larger fields were not the solution. Instead, farmers needed to boost yields in the fields they had. How this could be done was a challenging question at the time. Yuan was convinced that the answer could be found in the creation of hybrid rice. A hybrid is a cross between two or more varieties of a species. One characteristic of hybrids is that they usually attain a higher yield than conventional crops. However, whether it was possible to develop a hybrid of self-pollinating plants such as rice was a matter of great debate. The common assumption then was that it could not be done. Through intense effort, Yuan overcame enormous technical difficulties to develop the first hybrid rice that could be used for farming in 1974. This hybrid enabled farmers to expand their output greatly.

Today, it is estimated that about 60 percent of domestic rice consumption in China is comprised of crops generated from Yuan’s hybrid strains, and his strains have allowed China’s farmers to produce around 200 million tons of rice per year. Yuan’s innovation has helped feed not just China, but many other countries that depend on rice as well, such as India and Vietnam. Because of his invaluable contributions, Yuan Longping received numerous awards both in China and abroad.

Given that Yuan's hybrids made him quite wealthy, one might think he would have retired to a life of leisure. However, this is far from the case. Deep down, Yuan was still very much a farmer at heart. As a man of the soil, he cared little about celebrity or money. Instead, he made large donations to support agricultural research.

What impressed people most about Yuan Longping was his ongoing ability to fulfil his dreams. Long ago, he envisioned rice plants as tall as sorghum, with each ear(穗) of rice as big as a broom, and each grain of rice as huge as a peanut. He succeeded in producing a kind of rice that could feed more people at home and abroad. His later vision for "seawater rice" also became a reality, and potentially opened up nearly one million square kilometres of salty land in China for rice production. Even in his later years, Yuan Longping was still young at heart and full of vision, and everyone was always excited to see what he would dream up next.

1. Why did Yuan Longping consider himself a farmer?

Because he continually worked the land in his research.

2. What is the main advantage of hybrid crops?

They usually attain a higher yield than conventional crops.

3. What was Yuan's attitude to money?

A. He tried his best to earn enough money.

B. He thought that one should own a large sum of money in his life.

C. He cared little about money and being famous.

D. He hated money and thought it was nothing.

答案:C

## 单元测试卷(二)

(考查范围:Unit 2 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

### A

As the colder weather closes in, we've sought out activities that will make you want to embrace the frost.

#### Ice Village

Cathedral gardens, Manchester

Featuring an ice sculpture cave, ice bar and woodland market complete with winter games, Manchester's Ice Village is the ultimate frosty destination. Highlights include a steam train, arctic animals and the frozen history of Manchester, including nods to famous local figures such as Emmeline Pankhurst.

#### The Ice Academy

Torfaen, Wales

Ever admired the detailed beauty of an ice sculpture and wondered just how they do it? Keen visitors can discover the tricks of the trade for themselves with a guided taster class in ice sculpting

at Cardiff's Ice Academy. The Academy offers workshops for clients who wish to create their own ice sculpture for a special event.

#### Curling

Tunbridge Wells, Kent

Fenton's Rink, located just outside of Tunbridge Wells, is the perfect place for beginners to try the sport for themselves. Originating from Scotland in the 16th century, curling was first played by rolling stones across frozen ponds and it has been recognised as a Winter Olympic sport since 1998. Fenton's Rink features a full Olympic sized ice pad, friendly coaches and space for up to 30 players on the ice. For solo players, senior groups offer special curling cues(球杆) for those with bad backs and rubber ice-gripping shoes for those less certain on their feet.

#### Sled Dogs

Cairngorms, Scotland

The centre has a top-class team of snow dogs

who are constantly in training for international events. It's the only daily working sled dog centre in the UK and one of just five in wider Europe. Guests on the sled dog safari (游猎) can enjoy the breathtaking scenery of the Cairngorms, passing herds of red deer and views of two mountain ranges. More adventurous guests can also opt for an overnight experience using state-of-the-art night vision goggles (护目镜) to take in the splendid surroundings of Scotland's most remote forests.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了四个享受冬季娱乐活动的胜地。

1. Where will you go if you are interested in making ice sculptures?

- A. Cathedral gardens.
- B. Torfaen.
- C. Tunbridge Wells.
- D. Cairngorms.

B 细节理解题。根据 **The Ice Academy** 部分中的内容可知,如果你对制作冰雕感兴趣,可以去 Torfaen。故选 B。

2. What do we know about Fenton's Rink?

- A. It is intended for professional athletes.
- B. It features 30 friendly coaches and players.
- C. Curling has been an Olympic sport since the 16th century.
- D. It provides equipment for players with special needs.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Curling** 部分中的“*For solo players, senior groups offer special curling cues (球杆) for those with bad backs and rubber ice-gripping shoes for those less certain on their feet.*”可知, Fenton's Rink 为有特殊需要的运动员提供装备。故选 D。

3. What can guests do in the sled dog centre?

- A. Hunt red deer in the mountains.
- B. Pay respects to famous local figures.
- C. Take part in training for international events.
- D. Appreciate beautiful scenery of remote forests.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*More adventurous guests can also opt for an overnight experience using state-of-the-art night vision goggles (护目镜) to take in the splendid*

*surroundings of Scotland's most remote forests.*”可知,游客在雪橇犬中心可以欣赏偏远森林的美景。故选 D。

## B

As a mushroom scientist, you are vastly outnumbered, with estimates suggesting that there are between 2.2 million and 3.8 million species of fungi (真菌), the majority of which are yet to be identified. However, professionals in the field are not alone in their efforts to uncover new species. An enthusiastic community of amateurs has emerged, bridging the gap between professionals and non-professionals. These amateurs have even made significant discoveries. One such amateur is Taylor Lockwood, a 74-year-old mushroom enthusiast and professional photographer.

In 1984, while living on the Mendocino coast of California, Taylor Lockwood developed a fascination with mushrooms. “Outside my cottage were these amazing mushrooms,” he says. “And it was as if these mushrooms looked at me and said, ‘Taylor, go out and tell the world how pretty we are.’” Lockwood answered their call and purchased camera equipment to capture their true nature. His passion for photographing mushrooms was so intense that he would even dig holes next to the mushrooms to get the perfect angle for his shots.

In the Monongahela National Forest, Taylor Lockwood discovered an unusual mushroom that looked like tiny fingers wearing off-white gloves. Upon deeper investigation, fungi researcher Amy Rossman confirmed that it was a “hazel glove” mushroom, which is a rare find. “Mushrooms are not like plants,” Rossman says. “They don't come up at the same time every year, and so sometimes it can be decades between when a fungus fruits.” Rossman says that's why it's so valuable to have people like Taylor Lockwood searching through the forest with a trained eye.

A few years ago, Taylor Lockwood realised that still photos weren't sufficient, so he chose to create time-lapse (延时拍摄的) videos of mushrooms. “When I do time-lapse, I see so much

life happening around the mushrooms—insects, worms and other small creatures interacting with them,” he says. Lockwood’s love for art is evident in his approach to filming mushrooms over time. Although he appreciates the scientific aspect of his work, he identifies himself as an artist at heart.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要介绍了 Taylor Lockwood——一名业余蘑菇爱好者和摄影师的故事。

4. What can we learn about mushroom amateurs from Paragraph 1?

- A. They keep close track of the growth of fungi.
- B. They help identify new species of mushroom.
- C. They replace professional scientists in the field.
- D. They classify the majority of mushroom species.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“However, professionals in the field are not alone in their efforts to uncover new species. An enthusiastic community of amateurs has emerged, bridging the gap between professionals and non-professionals. These amateurs have even made significant discoveries.”可知，蘑菇爱好者们在探索新真菌品种方面有重大发现。故选 B。

5. What inspired Lockwood to photograph mushrooms?

- A. His desire for knowledge.
- B. His curiosity about nature.
- C. The beauty of nearby mushrooms.
- D. The appeal of outdoor photography.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知，小屋附近蘑菇的美让 Taylor 决定用相机去拍摄它们。故选 C。

6. Which of the following best describe Lockwood according to Paragraph 3?

- A. Skilled and observant.
- B. Focused and flexible.
- C. Talented and optimistic.
- D. Organised and responsible.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“In the Monongahela National Forest, Taylor Lockwood discovered an unusual mushroom that looked like

tiny fingers wearing off-white gloves.”可知，Taylor 在森林里发现了稀有的蘑菇品种；再根据第三段中的““They don’t come up at the same time every year, and so sometimes it can be decades between when a fungus fruits.” Rossman says that’s why it’s so valuable to have people like Taylor Lockwood searching through the forest with a trained eye.”可推断出，Taylor 是一个有经验且善于观察的人。故选 A。

7. Why did Lockwood decide to make time-lapse videos of mushrooms?

- A. To improve his photography techniques.
- B. To capture dynamic life in an artistic way.
- C. To collect biological data for deeper research.
- D. To use a new approach to scientific studies.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的““When I do time-lapse, I see so much life happening around the mushrooms—insects, worms and other small creatures interacting with them,” he says. Lockwood’s love for art is evident in his approach to filming mushrooms over time. Although he appreciates the scientific aspect of his work, he identifies himself as an artist at heart.”可推断出，Taylor 决定拍摄蘑菇的延时视频是为了以艺术的方式捕捉生动的生活。故选 B。

### C

A recent study in the journal *Current Biology* found that people danced 12% more when very low frequency bass (低音) was played. Scientists wanted to see what factors of music make us want to dance. “We look at things like what kinds of rhythms make us really drawn in and want to move more,” said Daniel Cameron, a neuroscientist and the lead author of the study.

Volunteers were led into a lab that was changed into an electronic dance music concert, with live music performed for them, who were equipped with headbands that had a motion capture sensor. The lab had special speakers that could play a very low frequency bass, undetectable to the human ear. The set lasted about an hour. Researchers introduced the very low bass every 2.5 minutes and found that the



concertgoers moved more when the speakers were on—even though they couldn't hear it.

Cameron thinks that our vestibular (前庭的) system can help explain the reason. "It's the inner-ear structures that give us a sense of where our head is in space," he says. "That system is sensitive to low-frequency stimulation, especially if it's loud."

Some people hear music and can't help but move, whether there are low, silent bass frequencies or not. So why do humans dance? "It's hard to test this, but there has been some work on why we may have evolved this way. We know that moving together in synchrony (同步) when we're making music together and dancing together leads to social bonding. We feel better about the people we're with. We feel more connected with them," Cameron says. "So you can imagine this has potential advantages for groups throughout the long history of our species."

Evolution aside, Cameron finds value in knowing his study has uncovered just one of the ingredients for what makes us want to dance a little bit more.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要介绍了一项关于人们为什么想跳舞的研究。

8. What does Cameron's research focus on?
- The popularity of dancing among people.
  - The evolutionary reasons why humans dance.
  - The musical elements that encourage dancing.
  - The little effect of low frequency bass on dancers.
- C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "Scientists wanted to see what factors of music make us want to dance. 'We look at things like what kinds of rhythms make us really drawn in and want to move more,' said Daniel Cameron, a neuroscientist and the lead author of the study." 可知, Cameron 的研究主要关注让人们想跳舞的因素。故选 C。
9. What can we learn about the research setup described in Paragraph 2?
- Low frequency bass was played regularly.

- Participants tracked their own movements.
- The dance music was performed in a live concert.
- The human speakers performed for an entire hour.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 "Researchers introduced the very low bass every 2.5 minutes and found that the concertgoers moved more when the speakers were on—even though they couldn't hear it." 可知, 研究设置了定期播放低音。故选 A。

10. Why might humans have evolved to dance according to Cameron?
- To inspire imagination.
  - To promote communication.
  - To create work opportunities.
  - To stimulate the body's potential.

B 推理判断题。根据第四段中的 "We know that moving together in synchrony (同步) when we're making music together and dancing together leads to social bonding. We feel better about the people we're with. We feel more connected with them," 可知, 按照 Cameron 的说法, 人类跳舞是为了促进交流。故选 B。

11. Which can be the best title for the text?
- The Science of Dance
  - The Benefit Behind Dancing
  - The Role of Rhythms in Music
  - The Evolution of the Musical System

A 标题归纳题。根据全文内容, 再结合第一段中的 "Scientists wanted to see what factors of music make us want to dance." 和最后一段的内容可知, 文章主要介绍了一项关于人们为什么想跳舞的研究。因此, A 项 "跳舞的科学" 为最佳标题。故选 A。

## D

Imagine a new smartphone product. It works the same as any other smartphone, but when dropped, those cracks that appear after an annoying fall slowly begin to fade away, and the phone magically repairs itself. A team of researchers led by chemistry professor Takuzo Aida have found a way

to create self-repairing plastics that can be used in smartphones, cars and other products. But their new plastics won't only be used to create unbreakable products, but also help the fight against growing wastes harming the planet.

91% of plastic is non-recyclable and filling Earth with waste. The increasing plastic in landfills is a growing concern due to its negative environmental impact. In 2019 about only 9% of plastics were recycled globally, leading Japanese scientists to seek to find plastic that can start its own formation or self-repair.

The self-repairing plastics are made by adding a tiny amount of a specialised substance into ordinary plastic to hold the monomers (单体) together by hydrogen bonds (氢键). When the new plastic is broken down by heat, instead of burning to waste, the hydrogen bonds mix and allow for the formation of special shaped monomers to create a foundation for more monomers to layer on and rebuild itself. The team found that their self-healing plastic was able to automatically repair at room temperature over an hour to regain its durability.

The team's work suggests great prospects for the future of plastic. "The technique could lead to the development of a made-to-last plastic that does not need to be recycled and can one day be in products from smartphones to cars and even buildings," lead professor Aida said at the conference.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要讲述了一种可以自我修复的新型塑料,包括其工作原理及应用前景。

12. What is the special feature of the new plastics?

- A. Hard to break.
- B. Cheap to produce.
- C. Good to health.
- D. Easy to recycle.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“A team of researchers led by chemistry professor Takuzo Aida have found a way to create self-repairing plastics that can be used in smartphones, cars

and other products. But their new plastics won't only be used to create unbreakable products, but also help the fight against growing wastes harming the planet.”可知,新型塑料的特性是可以自我修复、牢不可破。故选 A。

13. What drove scientists to search for the new plastics?

- A. Global warming.
- B. Industrial needs.
- C. Economic crisis.
- D. Green awareness.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“The increasing plastic in landfills is a growing concern due to its negative environmental impact. In 2019 about only 9% of plastics were recycled globally, leading Japanese scientists to seek to find plastic that can start its own formation or self-repair.”可知,塑料垃圾对环境的影响驱使科学家研究新型塑料。故选 D。

14. What does Paragraph 3 mainly tell us about the new plastic?

- A. Its social effect.
- B. Its main function.
- C. Its working principle.
- D. Its economic value.

C 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容可知,第三段主要讲述了新型塑料的工作原理。故选 C。

15. What is Aida's attitude towards the new plastic?

- A. Doubtful.
- B. Favourable.
- C. Disapproving.
- D. Unconcerned.

B 观点态度题。根据最后一段中的“‘The technique could lead to the development of a made-to-last plastic that does not need to be recycled,’ lead professor Aida said at the conference. ‘And can one day be in products from smartphones to cars and even buildings.’”可知,Aida 对新型塑料是持赞同态度的。故选 B。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Many years ago, my dad was diagnosed (诊断)

with a terminal heart condition. He was put on permanent disability and was unable to work at a steady job.

He wanted to do something to keep himself busy, so he decided to volunteer at the local children hospital. 16 He ended up working with the terminally and critically ill children. One of his kids was a girl who had been admitted with a rare disease that paralysed (使瘫痪) her from the neck down. She couldn't do anything, and she felt hopeless.

17 He started visiting her, bringing paints, brushes and paper. He stood the paper up against a backing, put the paintbrush in his mouth and began to paint. He didn't use his hands at all. Only his head would move. He would visit her whenever he could and paint for her. All the while he would tell her, "See, you can do anything you set your mind to."

18 Soon after, the little girl was discharged because the doctors felt there was nothing else they could do for her. My dad also left the children hospital for a little while because he became ill. Sometime later my dad recovered and returned to work at the volunteer counter in the lobby of the hospital. 19 In came the little girl who had been paralysed, but this time she was walking. She ran straight over to my dad and hugged him really tight. She gave my dad a picture she had done using her hands. 20

Sometimes love is more powerful than doctors, and my dad—who died just a few months after the little girl gave him the picture—loved every single child in that hospital.

- A. She cried often.
- B. My dad loved kids.
- C. My dad decided to try to help her.
- D. He hoped that the little girl would recover soon.
- E. One morning he noticed the front doors open.
- F. At the bottom it read, "Thank you for helping me walk."

G. Eventually, she began to paint using her mouth, and she and my dad became friends.

答案: 16~20 BCGEF

### III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

I had my first job at the age of thirteen, when a friend of my mother who owned a bookshop hired me for six hours a week to help her in the shop. I was very 21 to earn my own pocket money and my parents never interfered with (干涉) 22 I spent it, even when I was spending it foolishly. They 23 that by earning money, spending it, and learning from my mistakes, I would become more mature (成熟的) and responsible about how to 24 work, relationships with others, and money.

Like many American parents, my parents also let my brother and me do things over which they 25 a great deal. When I was sixteen, 26, after I finished high school and before I entered 27, I wanted to spend the summer months travelling around Europe. My mother was against the idea of my travelling 28 at such a young age, but my father felt that it would be a great 29 for me. In the end, my father won the argument on the condition that I limited my travelling to France, my mother's home, 30 I had many relatives who could 31 shelter and help if I needed it.

Three years later, when my brother was eighteen, he decided to 32 a year off after his first year in university and 33 through the States and the Caribbean. Again my mother was worried to see my brother leave school, but my father 34 him and my brother had a fantastic year 35 his way on trains and ships to earn passage (旅费) to different ports and cities, and discovering many fascinating places and people.

Such experiences are probably rare for children in many countries, but in the US they are fairly common.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章通过讲述作者和弟弟的一些经历,指出父母对待孩子成长过程的不同态度,父亲总是鼓励他们去尝试,这锻炼了他们的独立性。

21. A. anxious B. successful  
C. disappointed D. proud  
D 句意:我为挣自己的零花钱感到很骄傲……  
故选 D。

22. A. how B. whether  
C. when D. where  
A 句意:……我的父母从不干涉我怎样花钱,即使是在我愚蠢地花钱的时候。根据语境可知,作者的父母不干涉作者花零花钱的“方式”。故选 A。

23. A. believed B. explained  
C. suggested D. mentioned  
A 句意:他们认为,通过挣钱、花钱和从错误中吸取教训,我会变得更加成熟……故选 A。

24. A. handle B. deal  
C. make D. take  
A 句意:……对如何处理工作、与他人的关系和金钱负责。工作是用来“处理”的,只有选项 A 符合文义。故选 A。

25. A. panicked B. suffered  
C. worried D. struggled  
C 句意:和许多美国父母一样,我的父母也让我  
和我的弟弟做一些他们非常担心的事情。根据  
下文作者的母亲反对作者去欧洲环游以及弟弟  
休学一年去旅行可知,作者的母亲对此事应该非  
常担心。故选 C。

26. A. as a result B. in reality  
C. on the whole D. for example  
D 句意:例如,在我 16 岁高中毕业之后,进入  
大学之前,我想在暑假里环游欧洲。下文举了一个  
日常生活中的一个例子。故选 D。

27. A. politics B. business  
C. university D. market  
C 句意:例如,在我 16 岁高中毕业之后,进入  
大学之前,我想在暑假里环游欧洲。作者高中毕  
业后当然是要进入大学。故选 C。

28. A. alone B. apart  
C. along D. aboard

A 句意:我的母亲反对我这么小就独自旅行的  
想法,但我的父亲认为这对我来说是一次很好的  
经历。travel alone 意为“独自旅行”。故选 A。

29. A. practice B. schedule  
C. performance D. experience

D 句意:我的母亲反对我这么小就独自旅行的  
想法,但我的父亲认为这对我来说是一次很好的  
经历。故选 D。

30. A. which B. what  
C. where D. that

C 句意:……我母亲的老家,在那里我有很多亲  
戚,如果我需要的话可以提供住处和帮助我。前  
面的先行词为地点,且后面的从句缺少地点状  
语,故填 where 作从句的状语。故选 C。

31. A. support B. equip  
C. provide D. take

C 根据下文的“... shelter and help if I needed  
it.”可知,如果作者需要住宿,作者的亲戚可以  
提供帮助。故选 C。

32. A. send B. take  
C. pick D. give

B 句意:三年后,当我的弟弟十八岁时,他决定  
在大学一年级后休一年假……take (time) off 为  
固定搭配,意为“休假”。故选 B。

33. A. travel B. march  
C. explore D. push

A 句意:……周游美国和加勒比海地区。下文  
提到弟弟乘火车和轮船去不同的港口和城市,由  
此可以推断出,他是去旅行。故选 A。

34. A. encouraged B. agreed  
C. prevented D. blamed

A 句意:我的母亲又一次担心我弟弟要离开学  
校,但我的父亲鼓励他……由上文内容可知,作  
者的母亲担心,即不支持,只有得到父亲的支持,  
作者的弟弟才有可能去。故选 A。

35. A. finding B. working  
C. making D. forcing

B 此处表示“我”的弟弟在通过工作赚旅费旅游

中度过了美妙的一年。根据下文的“earn passage (旅费)”可知,“我”的弟弟需要工作。故选 B。

#### IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

I have been in Taiyuan, the provincial capital of Shanxi, for two years since I **36. was admitted** (admit) to a PhD programme in Shanxi University as an international student from Bangladesh.

Over the two years, I found myself falling in love with Shanxi and China as I got more **37. absorbed** (absorb) in local lives and got more familiar **38. with** the city, the province and the country. I must admit that it's normal to feel lonely when **39. starting** (start) a new life in a new place. You have to adapt to everything—food, language and culture. **40. However**, my adaptation didn't take a long period of time. I have got used to eating noodles for breakfast and using online payment via my smart phone very quickly. After a while at the university, I didn't feel much pressure in my study. There is still enough spare time to allow me to visit various parts of Taiyuan and Shanxi and **41. to make** (make) friends with locals.

My favourite sport is cycling and I find China is very cyclist-friendly because it is **42. convenient** (convenience) to hire bicycles in every city in the country. I like to cycle in the streets in Taiyuan and visit places **43. that/which** I meet randomly. The cycling tours helped to deepen my understanding of the city.

The city has a history of more than 2,300 years, making it one of the **44. oldest** (old) cities in China. Plenty of well-preserved ancient structures are the material evidence to help you get a glimpse into **45. what** ancient China looked like.

I hope more international students come to study in Shanxi University and to live and work in China as the country is full of opportunities.

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是校英语报记者李华,你校外教弗兰克

(Frank) 荣获“最美外教(The Best Foreign Teachers)”称号,你想预约采访他。请给他写一封电子邮件,内容包括:

1. 表示祝贺;
2. 告知采访内容;
3. 商定采访时间与地点。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Frank,

Yours,

Li Hua

#### 【参考范文】

Dear Frank,

I am Li Hua, a journalist of our school English newspaper. Congratulations to you on receiving the award of “The Best Foreign Teachers”. I'm writing to ask whether I may have the honour to arrange a face-to-face interview with you.

During the interview, I'll ask about your impressions of our country and your personal experiences in China. Besides, I would appreciate it if you could share with us some suggestions for English study. If it is convenient, may I pay you a visit at your office next Friday afternoon? If not, please tell me the specific time that suits you best.

Looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

#### 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Life had seemed perfect for my mother between working in her small garden and writing children's stories for a website, to which she had been a regular contributor until the birth of my little baby Elon. Her stories had always been well-received winning her hundreds of thousands of fans. Updates of her special column had been their weekly

anticipation (期盼) during the years.

My husband, Mathew, and I ran a trade business with 26 countries. We were struggling for a balance between family and work when Mum offered to help out. She decided to retire from writing to take care of Elon. I supposed it must have been a hard decision for her to give up her long-loved career and say goodbye to her devoted fans. The sacrifice would be a huge one though it was the best for Elon.

I owe too much to Mum, a single mother who not only brought me up and provided me with the best education but also accompanied me through thick and thin, enlightening (启发) me about life and bringing me up as a happy and responsible person. So I told Mum to think twice and we could discuss other alternatives.

On one of her visits to us, Mum brought with her an old photo album, which was filled with old pictures of Mum and me in my childhood. Looking at the pictures one by one, I was flooded by blurry (模糊的) but sweet memories. In the pictures, Mum, looked young, beautiful and content. Mum told me how much happiness I had brought to her and how much inspiration she had got from me for writing children's stories.

I came to truly understand what it was that made Mum a popular writer and why she was referred to as "having the best skills to express what love really means" by critics. Having the belief that Mum would surely be happy with Elon. I finally accepted Mum's offer, though still feeling sorry for her readers and the website she wrote for.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

One day, Mum told me she got an email from the website owner, Mr Smith, saying he would come to visit us as a friend. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---



---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

At the end of the dinner, Mr Smith told us the real purpose of his visit. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

#### 【参考范文】

One day, Mum told me she got an email from the website owner, Mr Smith, saying he would come to visit us as a friend. I guessed he would try to persuade Mum to go on writing for him, but the fact was that she wouldn't have the time. Anyway, we couldn't refuse a friend's visit. Mr Smith arrived at a weekend, and we prepared a dinner party for him, at which he expressed his understanding about Mum's choice and we talked about the stories Mum had written, her enthusiastic fans and, of course, Mum's life with our baby, Elon.

At the end of the dinner, Mr Smith told us the real purpose of his visit. He took the advice of the readers and came to discuss about a new column on his website, which he named *Elon and Grandma*. In the new weekly column, he would like us to share photos and videos of Mum's life with the baby as well as Mum's feelings about them. Thinking that it won't be too much trouble, we happily accepted the idea. We knew the column would be successful, but what we didn't expect was Elon became an Internet celebrity overnight.



单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, focusing on war and peace. In this unit we will understand the importance of peace, develop the passion for peace and try to maintain world peace.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“战争与和平”主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	理解并运用主谓一致原则。
		语篇	1. 阅读与战争相关的两篇文章,思考维护和平的重要性; 2. 了解文中描写战斗英雄的结构与写作要点。
		语用	1. 学习与“战争与和平”相关的词汇和表达,并合理运用; 2. 了解描写战斗英雄的基本要领。
	语言技能	听	结合“读”“听”等技能,理解听力材料大意。
		说	能用所学表达描写一场战斗的过程。
		读	通过阅读与战争相关的文章,认识到和平的珍贵并努力维护和平。
		写	1. 能正确运用主谓一致原则描述一场战争; 2. 能写一篇有关战斗英雄的文章。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	熟练运用本单元知识,围绕“战争与和平”这一话题进行听、说、读、写训练,从而提升综合运用语言的能力。
文化意识	通过对“THE D-DAY LANDINGS”和“LIANDA: A PLACE OF PASSION, BELIEF AND COMMITMENT”的学习,掌握二战中一致抗德以及抗日战争中成立联大的知识,认识到现在的和平生活来之不易,珍惜今天的和平环境。
思维品质	在现实生活中,要敢于同破坏和平的人作斗争,努力维护世界和平。

### ◦ 必备知识

必背单词	violent, objective, violence, tank, recall, barely, liberate, memorial, outstanding, uniform, bomb, friction, weapon, stability, academic, emerge, representative, sum, grain, relevant
重点表达	be made up of, free... from, have... confidence in, nothing less than, prepare for, make it, meet up with
重点知识	1. 独立主格结构 2. 过去分词短语作状语
单元语法	主谓一致(1)
单元写作	战斗英雄人物简介

# 探 · 究 · 构 · 建

## Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

### 学习任务目标

1. Watch the video, and learn something about World War I and World War II.
2. Read the text, get the main idea, and explore the meaning of the text.

### ○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一) 核心词汇

1. violent *adj.* 狂暴的, 凶暴的
2. objective *n.* 目的, 目标
3. violence *n.* 暴力
4. recall *v.* 回想, 回忆起
5. memorial *adj.* 纪念的, 追悼的
6. outstanding *adj.* 杰出的, 优秀的
7. weary *v.* (使) 非常疲倦
8. barely *adv.* 勉强才能
9. liberate *v.* 解放(城市、国家等)
10. commander *n.* 指挥官, 长官
11. amongst *prep.* 在……当中
12. drown *v.* (使) 淹死
13. horror *n.* 惊恐
14. be made up of 由……组成; 由……构成
15. free... from 使……不受……控制; 使……摆脱……
16. have(...) confidence in 对……有(……)信心

17. prepare for 为……做准备

18. make it 及时到达; 成功; 约定时间

19. meet up with 遇见

20. at the same time 与此同时

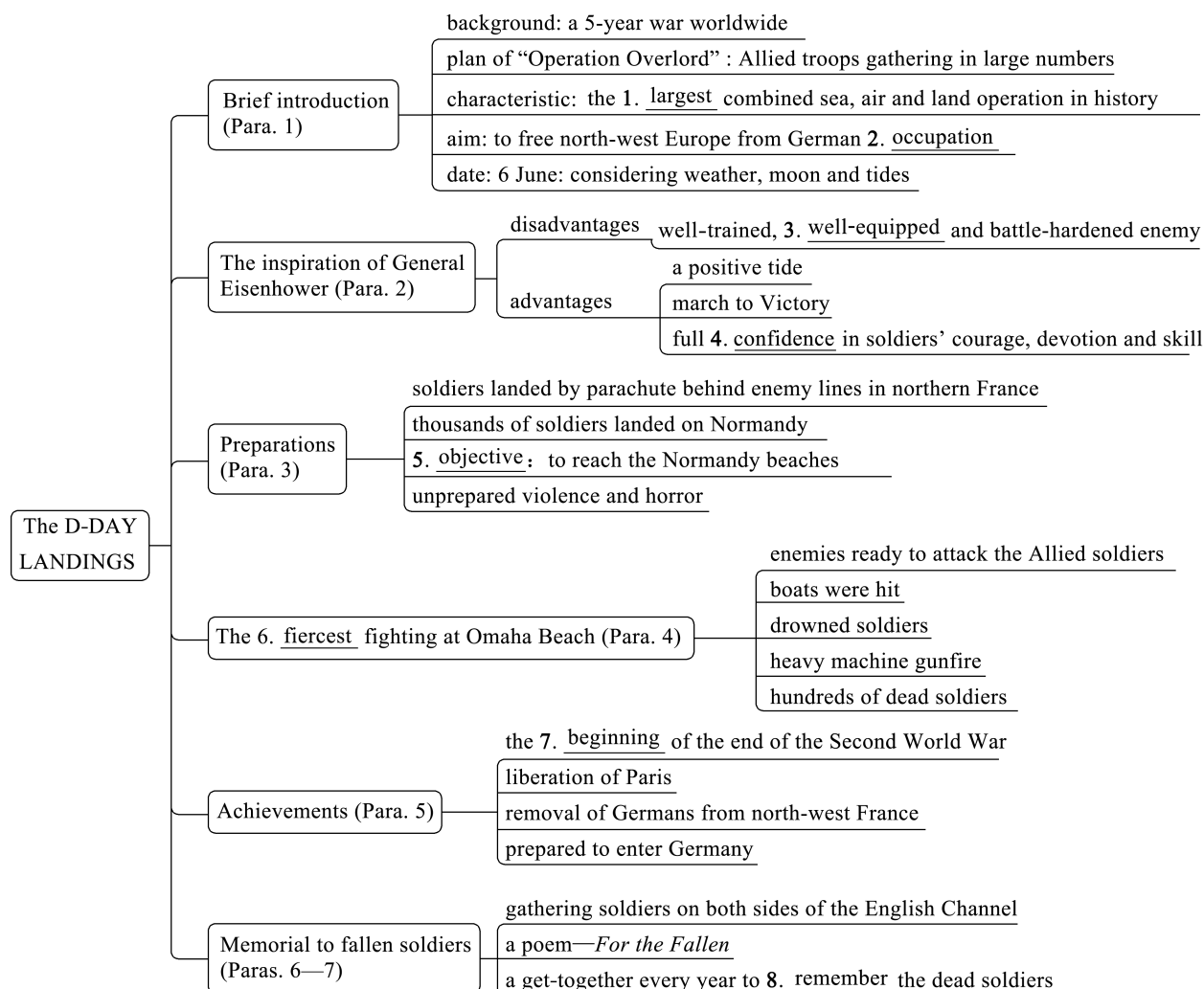
#### (二) 阅读词汇

1. supreme *adj.* 最高的
2. allied *adj.* (第二次世界大战) 同盟国的
3. landing *n.* (军队的) 登陆
4. troop *n.* 部队; 军队
5. tank *n.* 坦克
6. code-name *v.* 起代号为
7. tide *n.* 潮水
8. parachute *n.* 降落伞
9. coastline *n.* 海岸线
10. gunfire *n.* 炮火
11. solemn *adj.* 严肃的, 庄重的
12. condemn *v.* 迫使(某人)处于不幸的境地
13. nothing less than 简直; 完全

## ○ 任务型课堂 ○

### ○ 文本整体理解

#### Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### ○ 文本细节领悟

#### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What can we infer from Paragraph 1?
  - The war had swept across the world since the spring of 1944.
  - The top-secret operation would end before long.
  - The Allied troops aimed to free Europe from Germany after the operation.
  - The weather, moon, tides made Operation Overlord run totally successfully.
- What is the meaning of the lines from the poem *For the Fallen* in the text?
  - The men who had fought on D-Day should gather together to mourn for the dead.
  - All the people will get old except the ones who

had fought on D-Day.

- The ones who died on D-Day should be remembered though the time passes by.
- Survivors of the D-Day landings should continue to meet each year on the beach.

#### 3. Where can we find this text?

- A travel guidebook.
- A museum brochure.
- An interview report.
- A news column.

答案: 1~3 BCB

### ○ 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- With these words ringing in their ears, Allied soldiers prepared for what would become known

as D-Day.

[句子分析] 句中 With these words ringing in their ears 为介词 with 的复合结构, 其结构为 “with + n. + doing...”, 作伴随状语, what would become known as D-Day 为 what 引导的宾语从句。

[尝试翻译] 这些话在他们的耳畔回响, 盟军士兵为后来著名的诺曼底登陆日做好了准备。

2. Although each year they are fewer in number, their outstanding acts of courage mean that we will always remember them—as well as those who lost their lives on the beaches of northern France.

[句子分析] 句中 Although each year they are fewer in number 为 although 引导的让步状语从

句, that we will always remember them 为 that 引导的宾语从句, who lost their lives on the beaches of northern France 为 who 引导的定语从句, 修饰先行词 those。

[尝试翻译] 尽管他们的人数每年都在减少, 但他们杰出的勇敢行为意味着我们将永远记住他们——以及那些在法国北部海滩上牺牲的人。

### 思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What is your understanding of the poem *For the Fallen*?

略

2. What's your opinion about the historical significance of the D-Day landings?

略

## Unit 3 课后素养评价(九)

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

#### I. 阅读理解

Zachariah Fike has an unusual hobby. He finds old military (军队的) medals for sale in antique stores and on the Internet. But unlike most collectors, Zac tracks down the medals' rightful owners, and returns them.

His effort to reunite families with lost medals began with a gift from his mother, a Purple Heart with the name Corrado A.G. Piccoli, found in an antique shop. Zac knows the meaning of a Purple Heart—he earned one himself in a war as a soldier. So when his mother gave him the medal, he knew right away what he had to do.

Through the Internet, Zac tracked down Corrado's sister Adeline Rockko. But when he finally reached her, the woman flooded him with questions: “Who are you? What antique shop?” However, when she hung up, she regretted the way she had handled the call. So she called Zac back and apologised. Soon she drove to meet Zac in Watertown, N.Y. “At that point, I knew she meant business,” Zac says. “To drive eight hours to come to see me.”

The Piccolis grew up the children of Italian

immigrants in Watertown. Corrado, a translator for the Army during World War II, was killed in action in Europe.

Before hearing from Zac, Adeline hadn't realised the medal was missing. Like many military medals, the one Zac's mother had found was a family treasure. “This medal was very precious to my parents. Only on special occasions would they take it out and let us hold it in our hands,” Adeline says.

As a child, Adeline couldn't understand why the medal was so significant. “But as I grew older and missed my brother more and more, I realised that was the only thing we had left,” Adeline said. Corrado Piccoli's Purple Heart medal now hangs at the Italian American Civic Association in Watertown.

Zac recently returned another lost medal to a family in Alabama. Since he first reunited Corrado's medal, Zac says his record is now 5 for 5.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Zac 的特殊爱好。他在古董店或网上收集军功勋章, 并将其归还原主。

1. Where did Zac get a Purple Heart medal for

himself?

- A. In the army.
- B. In an antique shop.
- C. From his mother.
- D. From Adeline Rockko.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Zac knows the meaning of a Purple Heart—he earned one himself in a war as a soldier.”可知，Zac 当兵时在一场战争中获得过一枚紫心勋章，因此，他是在军队中获得了自己的紫心勋章。故选 A。

2. What did Zac realise when Adeline drove to meet him?

- A. She was very impolite.
- B. She was serious about the medal.
- C. She suspected his honesty.
- D. She came from a wealthy family.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Soon she drove to meet Zac in Watertown, N.Y. ‘At that point, I knew she meant business,’ Zac says. ‘To drive eight hours to come to see me.’”可知，Zac 在得知 Adeline 开车 8 小时来见他的时候，他意识到 Adeline 对于勋章的态度是认真的。故选 B。

3. What made Adeline treasure the Purple Heart?

- A. Her parents’ advice.
- B. Her knowledge of antiques.
- C. Her childhood dream.
- D. Her memory of her brother.

D 细节理解题。根据第六段中的“‘But as I grew older and missed my brother more and more, I realised that was the only thing we had left,’ Adeline said.”可知，随着 Adeline 年龄的增长，她越来越思念她的哥哥，她意识到紫心勋章是她哥哥留下的唯一的東西，由此可推知，Adeline 珍视这枚紫心勋章是由于她对哥哥的回忆。故选 D。

## II. 七选五

Do you know some surprising innovations (创新) came from World War I? Here are some introductions to you.

### Daylight Saving Time

The idea of fiddling with (拨弄) the clock has been around since ancient times, but it was not until World War I that governments around the globe

officially adopted daylight saving time. Why? To save resources such as fuel and extend the workday for the war effort. 1, and the Allies followed shortly after. To clear up confusion about the concept, *The Washington Times* used a comic strip to explain the first “spring forward” in the United States in 1918.

### Blood Banks

2, but doctors rarely performed them before World War I, when they were accomplished by transfusing blood directly from one person to another. Captain Oswald Robertson, a US Army Reserve doctor consulting with the British army, recognised the need to stock blood before casualties (伤亡) occurred.

### Hollywood

With so much of Europe in the line of fire, the European film industry had to scale back (相应缩减) dramatically. 3. Hollywood was still in its early stage, but its studios soon made fortunes producing wartime movies. The war itself provided material for countless movies in the 1920s and 1930s, including the winner of the first Academy Award for Best Picture.

### Plastic Surgery

4. British army surgeon Harold Gillies and his colleagues performed more than 11,000 operations, mostly on soldiers suffering from facial wounds from gunshots. 5.

There were other innovations made during World War I, such as wristwatches, modern passports, zippers, drones, etc.

- A. The Germans did it first in 1916
- B. That opened the door for the Americans
- C. Blood transfusions (输血) date back to the 1600s
- D. Gillies’ operation became successful immediately
- E. World War I left thousands of men scared and maimed (伤残的)
- F. Gillies became known as the father of modern plastic surgery
- G. After World War I the blood banks appeared in the United States

答案: 1~5 ACBEF



## Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

### 学习任务目标

1. Learn important expressions about “war and peace” and use them properly.
2. Practise using the expressions to describe a war.

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The survivors **recalled** the harsh battle on the beach. 回忆起
2. He is an **outstanding** athlete and deserves to win. 杰出的
3. My first **parachute** jump from a helicopter was a thrilling experience. 降落伞
4. The **tanks** were mainly constructed of steel plates. 坦克

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>commander</u> <i>n.</i> 指挥官, 长官	command <i>v.</i> 命令; 指挥, 统率; 掌管
	<i>n.</i> 命令; 指挥, 控制; 掌握, 运用能力
<u>horror</u> <i>n.</i> 惊恐	commanding <i>adj.</i> 指挥的
	horrible <i>adj.</i> 极坏的; 恐怖的
	horrify <i>v.</i> 惊吓; 使厌恶
<u>liberate</u> <i>v.</i> 解放(城市、国家等)	horrifying <i>adj.</i> 令人震惊的; 使人毛骨悚然的
	liberation <i>n.</i> 解放

#### III. 补全短语

1. make it 及时到达; 成功; 约定时间
2. be made up of 由……组成; 由……构成
3. free... from 使……不受……控制; 使……摆脱……
4. nothing less than 简直; 完全
5. meet up with 遇见
6. prepare for 为……做准备

#### IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: 独立主格结构

Code-named “Operation Overlord”, it was the largest combined sea, air and land operation in history, the aim being to free north-west Europe from German occupation.

这次作战行动的代号为“霸王行动”, 它是历史上规模最大的海、空、陆联合行动, 目的是解放德国占领的欧洲西北部地区。

2. 句型公式: 省略 that 的定语从句

But even in the depths of war, few could have been prepared for the violence and horror they would experience there.

但即使深陷战争, 也很少有人能够做好准备, 面临即将发生的残暴和恐怖。

3. 句型公式: 关系副词 where 引导的定语从句

The Allied forces then prepared to enter Germany, where they would meet up with the Soviet military moving in from the east.

盟军随后准备进攻德国, 在那里他们将与从东部攻入的苏联军队会合。

### 任务型课堂

#### 1. commander *n.* 指挥官, 长官

[教材原文] An order issued by Supreme Allied **Commander** General Eisenhower to the troops read...

盟军最高指挥官艾森豪威尔将军在鼓舞军队士气时说道……

#### [归纳拓展]

(1) command *v.* 命令; 指挥, 统率; 掌管

command sb. to do sth. 命令某人做某事

command that... 命令……(从句用虚拟语气, 即从句的谓语要用“should + 动词原形”, should 可省略)

(2)command *n.* 命令;指挥;控制;掌握,运用能力  
at sb.'s command 听从某人的吩咐;运用自如  
under sb.'s command/under the command of sb. 由某人指挥

take/be in command (of sth.) 指挥;控制(某事);负责(某事)

have a good command of 精通(尤指语言)

#### [即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①She commanded him to shut (shut) the gate.

②The general commanded that we (should) attack (attack) at once.

③Who is the officer in command here?

④He has an impressive command of the details.

⑤Those men had to work strictly under the command of their leader.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之申请信)此外,我精通英语,这使我能够顺利地与外国客人交流。

Moreover, I have a good command of English, enabling me to communicate with foreign guests smoothly.

## 2. horror *n.* 惊恐

[教材原文]But even in the depths of war, few could have been prepared for the violence and **horror** they would experience there.

但即使深陷战争,也很少有人能够做好准备,面临即将发生的残暴和恐怖。

#### [归纳拓展]

(1)to one's horror 让某人恐惧的是  
in horror 惊恐地

horror film 恐怖片

(2)horrible *adj.* 极坏的;恐怖的

(3)horribly *adv.* 可怕地;恐怖地;极其

(4)horrify *v.* 惊吓;使厌恶

(5)horrifying *adj.* 令人震惊的;使人毛骨悚然的

(6)horrified 惊骇的;害怕的

#### [即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①It's horrifying (horrify) to see so many species are disappearing at such a rate.

②I have never seen such a horrible (horror) car accident.

③It seemed like a good idea at the time, and then it all went horribly (horrible) wrong.

④You can realise the horrified (horrify) look on

her face when she saw the bear moving towards herself.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之动作描写)同时,彼得森先生注意到了我,冲了出来,大声威胁我,把我赶走了。

Meantime, Mr Peterson noticed me, and charged out, yelling horrible threats and chasing me away.

②(读后续写之情绪描写)我惊恐地看着她的杂货洒满了人行道。

I watched in horror as her groceries spilled all over the sidewalk.

## 3. get (sth.) across (to sb.)横过,渡过;使(某事)被(某人)理解;(向某人)把(某事)讲清楚

[教材原文]The seventh man was the next one to **get across** the beach without being hit.

第七个冲出来的士兵是第二个穿过海滩没有被击中的。

#### [归纳拓展]

get rid of 摆脱,除去

get along/on with 与……相处

get down to (doing) sth. 开始认真地做某事

get over 解决,克服;从……中恢复

#### [即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Did you get across the message to the students?

②School uniforms are traditional in Britain, but some schools are starting to get rid of them.

③That stubborn girl is difficult to get along with, so you must be patient with her.

④I'm going to get down to studying (study) English this term.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之心理描写)幸运的是,他告诉自己,如果他渴望学习滑冰,他必须摆脱这些不好的想法。

Luckily, he told himself if he was eager to learn skating, he must get rid of these bad thoughts.

②(读后续写之细节描写)吉姆对狗的服务表示怀疑,他知道他必须在阿尔茨海默病发作之前学会如何与狗相处。

Jim, doubtful about the dog's service, knew he had to learn how to get along with the dog before Alzheimer's took hold.

## 4. 独立主格结构

[教材原文]Code-named "Operation Overlord", it was the largest combined sea, air and land

operation in history, **the aim being to free north-west Europe from German occupation.**

这次作战行动的代号为“霸王行动”，它是历史上规模最大的海、空、陆联合行动，目的是解放德国占领的欧洲西北部地区。

[句式分析] the aim being to... 是独立主格结构，the aim 是逻辑主语，being to... 是逻辑谓语。

[归纳拓展]

独立主格结构由“逻辑主语+逻辑谓语”构成，逻辑主语可由名词或主格代词充当，逻辑谓语可由名词、形容词、副词、介词短语、不定式、分词等充当。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The party will be held in the garden, weather permitting (permit).

② All things considered (consider), the planned trip will have to be called off.

③ They decided to buy a car, Mike to pay (pay) half the money.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之情感描写) 我紧紧地拥抱着她，**泪流满面**。

I hugged her tightly, tears streaming down my face.

② (读后续写之天气描写) 他和艾登熟练地工作，我站在一旁假装帮忙，**远处雷声隆隆**。(rumble)

He and Aiden worked expertly, while I stood around and pretended to help, thunder rumbling in the distance.

### 多义词汇 专练

1. It takes courage to speak out against the **tide** of opinion. A

A. *n.* 趋势；潮流 B. *n.* 潮水 C. *n.* 怒潮

2. **memorial**

A. *adj.* 纪念的，追悼的

B. *n.* 纪念碑

C. *n.* 纪念物

① The statue is a lasting **memorial** to those who died in the war. C

② The nation built a grand **memorial** to those who fell in the Napoleonic wars. B

③ This is a **memorial** service in the dead man's honour. A

## Unit 3 课后素养评价(十)

### Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

#### I. 单词拼写

- The man became violent (狂暴的) and threw petrol bombs at the police.
- His objective (目的) was to stop the space station project altogether.
- Her teacher recalled (回忆), “She was always on about modelling.”
- He was barely (勉强) able to drag his poisoned leg behind him.
- At the sight of the snake, he drew back in horror (惊恐).
- The boy who won the scholarship was a quite outstanding (优秀的) student.
- Dear Madam, thank you for your interest in our memorial (纪念的) scheme.
- The book offers tips for how to liberate (解放) ourselves from fear and anxiety in high-pressure situations.
- He would relay the information to his commander (指挥官).

#### II. 短语填空

by the end of; be made up of; be known as; meet up with; have confidence in; make it; prepare for; come up with

- The medical team is made up of five specialists, ten doctors and fifteen nurses.
- Only when you have confidence in yourself can you succeed in your work.
- We shall have finished the project by the end of this year.
- We met up with our favourite basketball player as we left the stadium.
- Dr John is known as an experienced specialist nationwide.
- David always prepares for each exam intently.
- The expert came up with some precious suggestions just now.
- Those soldiers who shunned heavy machine gunfire made it to the beach.

### III. 完成句子

1. This is not an occasion for laughter, where you must take everything seriously.  
这不是一个应该笑的场合,你必须认真对待每一件事情。
2. The secretary as well as three employees was removed from their posts.  
秘书和三个员工被撤职了。
3. People injured in the accident were sent to the nearby hospital.  
此次事故中受伤的人被送进了附近的医院。
4. More time given, we should have done it much better.  
如果给更多的时间,我们会把它做得更好。
5. He spent seven days in the wind and snow, cold and hungry.  
他在风雪中度过了七天,又冷又饿。

### IV. 完形填空

Before retiring, my father was a successful corporate executive. Growing up, I got used to learning that he had received 1, from vice president to executive vice president to senior executive vice president, and so on. I was always impressed by my father's 2 and viewed him as a wonderful role model.

Therefore, I couldn't have been more 3 when my father got annoyed with me after I showed him one of my new business cards, 4 "Tina L. Seelig, President". I had started my own business and 5 my own business cards. My father looked at the cards and said, "You can't just call yourself president." In his experience, I had to wait for someone else to promote me to a leadership role and the thought of my 6 myself with that title 7 him.

I have 8 his mentality (心态) time and time again. Twenty years ago when I told a friend I was going to write a book, she asked, "What makes you think you can write a book?" She couldn't 9 taking on such a project without the 10 of someone in a position of greater authority. I, on the other hand, felt confident I could do it. The task was certainly 11, but why not try? I put together a detailed proposal, wrote some sample chapters, shopped it around, and 12 a contract.

Over time, I've become increasingly 13

that people are divided into two categories. Some look inside themselves for 14 and others wait to be pushed forward by outside forces. From my experience, there's a lot to be said for 15 opportunities instead of waiting for someone to hand them to you.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和父亲以及朋友的事情,以此告诉我们,与等着别人给你机会相比,抓住机会更有优势。

1. A. increases B. promotions  
C. changes D. shifts

B 根据下文的 "... from vice president to executive vice president to senior executive vice president, and so on." 可知,这是工作职位的晋升。故选 B。

2. A. strengths B. accomplishments  
C. perseverance D. patience

B 根据下文的 "... viewed him as a wonderful role model." 可知,爸爸在工作上取得了成就,是作者的榜样。故选 B。

3. A. amused B. ashamed  
C. surprised D. concerned

C 根据下文的 "when my father got annoyed with me" 可知,爸爸生作者的气,这让作者很惊讶。故选 C。

4. A. reading B. writing  
C. indicating D. illustrating

A 根据下文的 "Tina L. Seelig, President" 可知,卡片上写着 "Tina L. Seelig 总裁"。故选 A。

5. A. sold B. delivered  
C. printed D. spread

C 根据上文的 "after I showed him one of my new business cards" 可知,作者打印了自己的名片。故选 C。

6. A. appointing B. assigning  
C. polishing D. shaping

A 根据上文的 "Tina L. Seelig, President" 可知,这是作者对自己职位的任命。故选 A。

7. A. puzzled B. amazed  
C. relieved D. upset

D 根据上文的 "when my father got annoyed with me" 可知,一直被提拔的爸爸对孩子自己任命自己职位的想法感到不高兴。故选 D。

8. A. weighed up B. backed down  
C. banked on D. come across

D 根据下文的 "... his mentality (心态) time and

time again.”可知，作者经常遇到爸爸的这种心态。故选 D。

9. A. tolerate B. acknowledge  
C. imagine D. confirm

C 根据上文的“What makes you think you can write a book?”可知，这个朋友不能想象作者在没有权威人士赞同的情况下做这件事。故选 C。

10. A. vision B. reputation  
C. approval D. passion

C 根据下文的“I, on the other hand, felt confident I could do it.”可知，作者在没有权威人士赞同的情况下做这件事，这是朋友不能想象的。故选 C。

11. A. ambitious B. meaningful  
C. valuable D. absurd

A 根据上文的“What makes you think you can write a book?”可知，写一本书不容易。故选 A。

12. A. refused B. appreciated  
C. took D. landed

D 根据上文的“I put together a detailed proposal, wrote some sample chapters, shopped it around, and...”可知，经过一系列准备，最后签下了合同。故选 D。

13. A. aware B. afraid  
C. grateful D. accustomed

A 根据上文的“Over time...”可知，随着时间的推移，作者越来越意识到人可以分为两类。故选 A。

14. A. stability B. motivation  
C. satisfaction D. growth

B 根据下文的“... and others wait to be pushed forward by outside forces.”可知，此处是指一些人从自己的内部寻找动力。故选 B。

15. A. missing B. witnessing  
C. pursuing D. seizing

D 根据下文的“... instead of waiting for someone to hand them to you.”可知，与等着别人给你机会相比，抓住机会更有优势。故选 D。

## Section III Using language

### 学习任务目标

1. Study the sentences, understand and use the subjective-verb agreement principle.
2. Use the subjective-verb agreement principle in real life.

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The **uniform** makes the guard look handsome. 制服
2. A group of UN **peacekeepers** were sent to help with the **peacekeeping**. 维和人员 维持和平(的行动)
3. The two sides will agree on **disarming** troops and leaving their weapons at military positions. 解除武装
4. I have never suggested that UN forces could physically separate the **combatants** in the region. 战斗人员
5. She looked desperately around for a **weapon**. 武器
6. We only have three rounds of **ammunition** left. 弹药

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>stability</u> <i>n.</i> 稳固, 稳定	<u>stable</u> <i>adj.</i> 稳定的; 沉稳的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>professionalism</u> <i>n.</i> 专业水准; 专业素质; 职业精神	<u>profession</u> <i>n.</i> 职业; 专业
	<u>professional</u> <i>adj.</i> 职业的; 专业的
	<u>professor</u> <i>n.</i> 教授
<u>friction</u> <i>n.</i> 冲突, 摩擦	<u>frictional</u> <i>adj.</i> 摩擦(力)的; 由摩擦产生的

#### III. 补全短语

1. put down 镇压; 记下
2. at the beginning of 在……开头
3. on standby 待命
4. carry out 进行; 实行
5. make sure 确保



#### IV. 补全句子

##### 1. 句型公式:way 作先行词的定语从句

Politics is the study of the ways in which countries are governed.

政治学是对国家治理方式的研究。

##### 2. 句型公式:全部倒装

Among the many horrors inflicted on humanity by the Second World War was the massive bombing of civilians, often referred to as “terror

bombing”.

对平民的大规模轰炸是第二次世界大战给人类带来的众多恐怖事件之一,通常被称为“恐怖轰炸”。

##### 3. 句型公式:to be done 作后置定语

James Ryan is the fourth son in his family to be sent to fight in the Second World War.

詹姆斯·瑞恩是他家中第四个被送去参加第二次世界大战的儿子。

### 任务型课堂

#### 1. uniform n. 制服 adj. 全部相同的,一致的

[教材原文] The soldiers' **uniforms** look very smart.

士兵们的制服看起来很整洁。

[归纳拓展]

(1)in uniform 穿着制服;服兵役

out of uniform 穿便服

(2)be uniform in 在……方面整齐/一致

#### 名师点拨

uniform 作“制服”讲时,既可用于可数名词也可用作不可数名词。在 in uniform 和 out of uniform 中,uniform 前不带冠词。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①The rows of houses were uniform in appearance.

②The students are in school uniforms.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之动作描写)她穿上红色制服,把头发从棒球帽后面绾了起来。

She put on her red uniform and pulled her hair through the back of her baseball cap.

#### 2. sacrifice n. 牺牲;祭品 v. 牺牲,献出;献祭

[教材原文] *Saving Private Ryan* is an unforgettable war film and, also, a story of courage and **sacrifice**.

《拯救大兵瑞恩》是一部令人难忘的战争电影,也是一个关于勇气和牺牲的故事。

[归纳拓展]

(1)make sacrifices (for...) (为……)做出牺牲

(2)sacrifice A for B 为了B而牺牲A

sacrifice... to do sth. 牺牲……去做某事

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①She made many sacrifices (sacrifice) to get her son a good education.

②The designers have sacrificed speed for fuel economy.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之体育锻炼)越来越多的人不得不牺牲运动的时间去工作。

More and more people have to sacrifice the time for sports to work.

### 语法研习课

#### 主谓一致(1)

##### 语法感知

①Your enemy **is** well trained, well equipped and battle-hardened...

②The enemy **were** hiding, ready to attack the Allied soldiers...

③The cattle **are** grazing in the field.

④The species of fish **are** numerous.

⑤This species of rose **is** very curious.

⑥The goods **are** to be exported to Canada.

⑦Fifty years **is** not a long time.

⑧The old **are** well looked after by the government.

⑨Listening to loud music at rock concerts **has**



caused hearing loss in some teenagers.

⑩ To be strict with oneself **is** a good quality of a person.

1. 由句①②可知,当集体名词作主语时,如果指整体概念,谓语动词用单数形式;如果指具体成员,谓语动词用复数形式。
2. 由句③可知,当 cattle 等有生命的集体名词作主语时,谓语动词只用复数形式。
3. 由句④⑤可知,当单复数同形的名词作主语时,谓语形式要根据句意来确定。
4. 由句⑥可知,有些只有复数形式的名词作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式。
5. 由句⑦可知,表示时间的复数名词作主语时,谓语动词常用单数形式。
6. 由句⑧可知,“the+形容词”表示一类人时,谓语动词常用复数形式。
7. 由句⑨⑩可知,动词-ing 形式或不定式作主语时,谓语动词一般用单数形式。

### 语法精讲

1. 集体名词作主语,如果指整体概念,谓语动词用单数形式;如果指具体成员,谓语动词用复数形式。

The company was set up last year.

这家公司是去年成立的。

The company are mostly young men.

这家公司的成员大都是年轻人。

The team is well organised.

这个队组织得很好。

The team are all good players.

这个队的队员都是好样的。

This hotel is at the foot of a hill.

这家旅馆在一座小山脚下。

All the hotel are gathered in the hall.

全旅馆的人都集中在大厅里。

2. 有些集体名词作主语,谓语动词用单数或复数形式都可以。

The local council **is/are** to look into the matter.

地方议会将会调查此事。

The data we have collected **is/are** not enough to be convincing.

我们收集到的数据还不足以令人信服。

The school's teaching staff **is/are** excellent.

这个学校的教学人员很优秀。

### 名师点拨

(1) 可以用“every one of+集体名词”表示单数。

Every one of the committee **is** for the plan.

委员会的每个人都赞成这个计划。

(2) “the whole+集体名词”作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式;“all the+集体名词”作主语时,谓语动词用单复数形式均可。

The whole staff **has signed** the petition.

= All the staff **have/has signed** the petition.

全体工作人员都在请愿书上签了字。

3. 有些有生命的集体名词作主语时,谓语动词只用复数形式。常见的这类名词有 cattle, people, police, mankind 等。

The police **have not made** any arrests.

警方没有进行任何抓捕。

The mankind **long** for peace.

人类渴望和平。

4. 无生命的集体名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。如 clothing, jewellery, machinery, scenery, stationery 等。

Much of the jewellery **was** missing.

许多珠宝丢了。

5. 单复数同形的名词作主语,谓语动词形式要根据意义来确定。常见的这类名词有 fish, species, deer, means, sheep, works, headquarters, crossroads 等。

Every means **has been tried**.

每种方法都试过了。

The means of communication between here and outside **are interrupted**.

这里同外界的通讯方式都中断了。

6. 用作书名、剧名、报纸名、国名、组织机构名等的复数名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式;但如果是山脉、群岛、瀑布等的名称作主语,谓语动词用复数形式。

The Arabian Nights **is** a very interesting storybook.

《天方夜谭》是一本非常有趣的故事书。

The United Nations **is** an international organisation.

联合国是一个国际性的组织。

The Niagara Falls **are** the falls on the Niagara River.

尼亚加拉瀑布位于尼亚加拉河上。

7. 表示时间、距离、价格、度量衡等的复数名词或短语作为一个整体看待时,谓语动词一般用单数形式。  
Four thousand dollars **is** more than she can afford.  
她付不起 4 000 美元。

### 名师点拨

若强调时间、距离、价格、度量衡等这类词组的复数意义时,谓语动词也可用复数形式。

Two hundred tons of water **were** used last month.

上个月用了 200 吨水。

## 语法冲关

### I. 用括号内所给动词的适当形式填空

- We all remember the days which are (be) filled with hard work and cooperation.
- The equipment in our lab is (be) perfect.
- All the machinery in the factory is made (make) in China.
- Eighty dollars is (be) what she needs.
- The Great Lakes lie (lie) between the US and Canada.
- A series of robberies has shaken (shake) up residents of the neighbourhood recently.
- War and peace is (be) a constant theme in history.
- This class are (be) all boys.

### II. 完成句子

- The team are driving to the game in their own cars.  
队员们正开着自己的车去参加比赛。
- The committee consists of seven members.  
该委员会由七名成员组成。
- Twenty years is only a very short span in human history.  
在人类历史上,20 年只不过是弹指一瞬间。
- Most of their equipment has been shipped ahead of schedule.  
他们的大部分设备已被提前运走了。
- The audience were all deeply impressed by the plot.  
这一剧情给所有观众留下了极为深刻的印象。

## Unit 3 课后素养评价 (十一)

### Section III Using language

### I. 选词填空

weapon; uniform; stability; make sure; play a role in; sacrifice; refer to; friction

- Students are required to make sure that their uniforms are clean when they are at school.
- The Nobel Peace Prize is given to such people who have made great contributions to maintaining global peace and stability.
- If you want to know his telephone number, you may refer to the telephone directory.
- Experts say the way you design your home could play a role in whether you pack on the pounds or keep them off.
- In old times, a sword was one of the most important weapons.
- In designing a machine it is necessary to reduce friction as much as possible.
- You shouldn't have to sacrifice one aspect of your life for another.

### II. 单句语法填空

- The audience was (be) so large that every seat was taken in the great hall.
- Our family has been (be) in this city for about sixteen years.
- A number of celebrities were invited (invite) to attend the party, but the number of the celebrities present was (be) less than ten.
- So far more than one film has been directed (direct) by my father, making us proud.
- The enemy trapped in the forest were caught (catch) by our troop.
- The strike has been put down by the government troop.
- Extensive (全面的) tests have been carried out on the patient.
- Buses were placed on standby for the journey to London.

### III. 阅读理解

If you're not at least a bit terrified by the

climate and ecological breakdown unfolding before our eyes, you haven't grasped the scale of the crisis. Eco-anxiety, defined as "a chronic (长期的) fear of environmental doom", is on the rise. But redirecting this anxiety into anger and collective action might just pull humanity back from the brink.

We don't yet know how deeply eco-anxiety affects people, but we can learn not to repeat the mistakes of long-gone societies lost to environmental collapse. Jared Diamond's *Collapse: How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed* uncovers the common driver that led to the fall of ancient civilisations such as the Central American Mayan, the remote Pacific Easter Island, and the Mycenae: People accidentally destroyed the environmental resources on which their societies depended.

Today, we are living in a new climate and ecological age. The new normal is one that humans have never before experienced on earth, and that has occurred within a single generation. We can't claim ignorance. Numerous scientific reports show: unprecedented (空前的) wildfires in the Arctic, heatwaves annually breaking records, the Amazon shrinking and drying, and species extinction rates accelerating. Nature's dangerous decline is unprecedented.

So, it's not surprising that eco-anxiety is on the rise. Anxiety is often a private emotional state: We feel alone, stuck inside our own heads, and our emotions stop us from doing the things we want. But anger, directed appropriately, can fuel powerful collective action for change.

We are on a pathway to destroying the global conditions for human survival. Unlike previous civilisations, we have the science and technology to understand our danger and chart a new pathway. This is a moment for all of us to channel our eco-anxiety, fear and anger into energy for change.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要讲述了生态焦虑——对环境毁灭的长期恐惧。

- Which of the following best describes "eco-anxiety"?  
A. Uncertainty about the future.  
B. Anxiety about modern civilisation.  
C. Fear of changes in the living standards.  
D. Worries about the destruction of nature.  
D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的"Eco-anxiety,"

defined as 'a chronic (长期的) fear of environmental doom', is on the rise."可知,生态焦虑是指对自然破坏的担忧。故选D。

- Why are some ancient civilisations mentioned in Paragraph 2?  
A. To warn people to learn a lesson from the past.  
B. To prove the importance of ancient civilisations.  
C. To present the collapse of ancient civilisations.  
D. To add some background information on eco-anxiety.  
A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的"We don't yet know how deeply eco-anxiety affects people, but we can learn not to repeat the mistakes of long-gone societies lost to environmental collapse."可知,古文明的衰败警示人们从过去吸取教训。故选A。
- Why is eco-anxiety on the rise?  
A. People lack the knowledge about nature.  
B. Nature is in its most dangerous state ever.  
C. Climate issues can't be solved effectively.  
D. People have limited access to natural resources.  
B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的"Numerous scientific reports show: unprecedented (空前的) wildfires in the Arctic, heatwaves annually breaking records, the Amazon shrinking and drying, and species extinction rates accelerating. Nature's dangerous decline is unprecedented."和第四段中的"So, it's not surprising that eco-anxiety is on the rise."可知,生态焦虑的加重,是因为自然界正处于有史以来最危险的状态。故选B。
- How does the author feel about the global conditions for humans in the future?  
A. Frustrated.  
B. Doubtful.  
C. Hopeful.  
D. Concerned.  
C 观点态度题。根据最后一段中的"Unlike previous civilisations, we have the science and technology to understand our danger and chart a new pathway. This is a moment for all of us to channel our eco-anxiety, fear and anger into energy for change."可知,作者对人类未来的全球状况充满希望。故选C。

# Section IV    Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Learn the main expressions and structures.

2. Read and understand the main idea of the text.

○ 自主式预习 ○

- I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思
1. A large **sum** has been allocated (分配) for buying new books for the library.                      金额, 款项

2. The bench had a **rough** wooden table in front of it.                      粗糙的

3. The president will offer delegates his **blueprint** for the country's future.                      蓝图

4. There was about 300 million tons of **grain** in the fields at the start of the harvest.                      谷物

5. The flowers were gently swaying (摇摆) in the **breeze**.                      微风

6. To achieve his own goal, he placed **collective** interests in the back of his mind.                      集体的; 共同的

7. The swimmer **emerged** from the lake, took a deep breath and then made another dive into the water.                      出现

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>emerge</u> v. 出现	emergence n. 出现; 浮现
<u>academic</u> adj. 学术的	academy n. 研究院; 学会
<u>aggression</u> n. 侵略	aggressive adj. 侵略的
<u>invader</u> n. 侵略者, 侵略军	invade v. 侵略, 侵入
	invasion n. 侵犯; 入侵; 侵略
<u>glory</u> n. 辉煌的成就; 荣耀的事	glorious adj. 辉煌的; 荣耀的
<u>dedication</u> n. 奉献	dedicate v. 奉献
<u>representative</u> n. 代表	represent v. 代表; 表示; 象征, 体现; 描述, 描绘
	representation n. 代理; 代表; 描绘; 表现

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>intellectual</u> adj. 智力的, 脑力的	intellect n. 智力; 领悟力; 理解力; 思维能力; 智力出众者

- III. 补全短语
1. due to 由于

2. serve as 用作; 充当

3. be occupied by 被……占据

4. a sum of 一笔

5. for example 例如

6. if necessary 如果需要的话

- IV. 补全句子
1. 句型公式: as 引导原因状语从句  
Real war is never romantic as it brings suffering and immense challenges.  
真正的战争从来不是浪漫的, 因为它会带来痛苦和巨大的挑战。

2. 句型公式: It is no wonder that...  
It is no wonder that many, if not most, of China's leading scholars and scientists emerged at Lianda...  
难怪即使不是大多数, 但也有许多中国顶尖的学者和科学家都是联大出身……

3. 句型公式: 非限制性定语从句  
On windy days, we had to hold down the paper on the desk, which would otherwise be blown away.  
在刮风的日子, 我们必须把纸按在桌子上, 否则纸就会被风吹走。

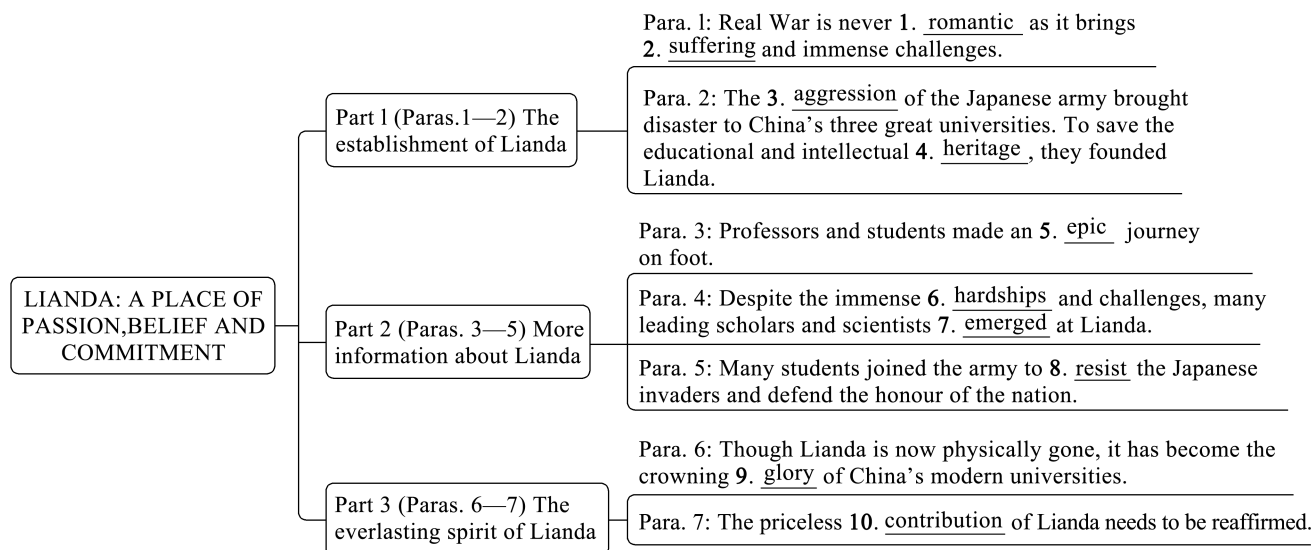
4. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作状语  
Driven by a sense of commitment, a great many joined the army to resist the Japanese invaders and defend the honour of the nation.  
在责任感的驱使下, 许多人参军抵抗日本侵略者, 保卫国家的荣誉。

## 任务型课堂

### Part 1 课文理解

#### 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



#### 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What else university was Lianda made up of besides Peking University and Tsinghua University?
  - Yunnan Normal University.
  - Nankai University.
  - Renmin University.
  - Nanjing University.
- What can we conclude from the third paragraph?
  - At that time, the conditions of Lianda were very difficult.
  - Classes were frequently disrupted because the students needed to work in the field.
  - Only the students went to Lianda on foot, while the professors by bus.
  - With the help of the national government, their diet was guaranteed.
- Which of the following is the reason why Lianda has become the crowning glory of China's modern universities?
  - Its prominent professors.
  - Its talented students.

C. The school's strong spirit of perseverance and dedication.

D. All of the above.

答案: 1~3 BAD

#### 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- However, despite the immense hardships and the daunting challenges, it was right in this place, over a period of eight long years, that the nation's intellectual heritage was not only guarded but fortified by the passion and belief of the worthy academics of Lianda.

[句子分析] despite 构成的介词短语作让步状语, "it was... that..." 是强调句型, 强调了地点状语和时间状语, "not only... but (also)..." 连接了 guarded 和 fortified.

[尝试翻译] 然而, 尽管面临着巨大的困难和艰巨的挑战, 正是在这个地方, 经过八年漫长的岁月, 国家的知识遗产不仅得到了保护, 还得到了强化, 这些都归功于联大杰出学者们的热情和信念。

- But it has become the crowning glory of China's modern universities, not only because of its prominent professors and talented students, but also because of the school's strong spirit of perseverance and dedication.

[句子分析]句中 not only... but also...“不仅……而且……”用作并列连词，相当于“not just... but also...”，连接了两个原因状语。

[尝试翻译]但它已经成为中国现代大学的最高荣耀，不仅因为它那杰出的教授和有才华的学生，还因为学校坚韧不拔和勇于奉献的精神。

## Part 2 语言梳理

### 1. representative *n.* 代表 *adj.* 典型的；有代表性的

[教材原文] In 2017, **representatives** from Peking University, Tsinghua University, Nankai University and Yunnan Normal University gathered to commemorate the 80th anniversary of its founding.

2017年，北京大学、清华大学、南开大学及云南师范大学的代表们齐聚一堂，共同纪念联大建校80周年。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be representative of 代表……的

(2) represent *v.* 代表；表示；象征，体现；描述，描绘

represent... as/to be 把……说成……

represent sth. to sb. 向某人陈述某事

(3) representation *n.* 代理；代表；描绘；表现

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① They were represented (represent) as true patriots in the film.

② He represented himself as an expert.

③ He seemed to take it for granted that he should speak as a representative (represent).

④ (2023·新课标Ⅱ卷) In artists' representations (represent) of books and reading, we see moments of shared humanity that go beyond culture and time.

(2) 写作微练

(2024·新课标Ⅰ卷应用文写作之活动分享) 这幅画不仅描绘了风景，还反映了我所感受到的宁静。

The painting not only represented the scene but also mirrored the peacefulness I sensed.

### 2. sum *n.* 金额，款项

[教材原文] In 1938, the Japanese army offered a large **sum** of money for Yang's head and a large number of troops surrounded his men.

1938年，日军悬赏一大笔钱要杨靖宇的人头，大批军队包围了他的部下。

### 思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following question

What is your understanding of the poem written by Zha Liangzheng?

略

[归纳拓展]

(1) a large sum of money 一大笔钱

(2) sum *v.* 合计，总计

sum to 共计

sum up 总结，概括

to sum up 总之

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① These instances sum to several dozen.

② To sum up, for a healthy heart you must take regular exercise and stop smoking.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之发言稿) 总之，只有成为聪明的在线学习者，我们才能真正享受现代技术的好处。

To sum up, only by being smart online learners can we truly enjoy the benefits of modern technology.

### 3. relevant *adj.* 有关的，切题的

[教材原文] ... think of another **relevant** topic. ....考虑另外一个相关的话题。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be relevant to 与……有关的

(2) relevance/relevancy *n.* 关联，相关性

(3) relevantly *adv.* 有关联地；有关系地

[即学即练]

(1) 完成句子

① What experience do you have that is relevant to this position?

你有哪些和这个职位相关的经验？

② These comments are not directly relevant to this enquiry.

这些意见与这项调查没有直接联系。

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 我们可以张贴一些相关的海报，在附近发一些传单。

We can put up some relevant posters and hand out some leaflets in the neighbourhood.



## 4. emerge v. 出现

[教材原文] It is no wonder that many, if not most, of China's leading scholars and scientists **emerged** at Lianda, including the two Nobel Prize-winning physicists, Yang Zhenning and Li Zhengdao.

难怪即使不是大多数, 也有许多中国顶尖的学者和科学家都是联大出身, 包括两位诺贝尔物理学奖得主——杨振宁和李政道。

## [归纳拓展]

emerge from 从……中出现或显露

emerge out of 从……出现, 显露

emerge as 作为……出现

## [即学即练]

## (1) 单句语法填空

① Several facts started to emerge from my investigation.

② The musical forms emerged out of the American black experience.

③ The Pacific region has rapidly emerged as a leading force on the world stage.

## (2) 写作微练

(2024·全国甲卷应用文写作之发言稿) 共享单车已经成为城市出行的象征, 为短途旅行提供了一种经济实惠、绿色环保的选择。

Shared bicycles have emerged as a symbol of urban mobility, offering an affordable and green alternative for short trips.

## 5. 过去分词短语作状语

[教材原文] **Driven by a sense of commitment**, a great many joined the army to resist the Japanese invaders and defend the honour of the nation.

在责任感的驱使下, 许多人参军抵抗日本侵略者, 保卫国家的荣誉。

## [归纳拓展]

过去分词(短语)作状语, 可以表示时间、方式、让步、条件、原因、目的等, 过去分词往往表示一个被动完成了的动作, 和句子主语之间存在着被动关

系。现在分词(短语)作状语, 往往表示一个正在进行的或和谓语动词同时发生的动作, 和句子主语之间是主动关系。有时为了使分词表示的意义更明确, 可在分词前加上一定的连词, 如 when, while, if, unless 等。

## [即学即练]

## (1) 单句语法填空

① Seen (see) from the tower, the south foot of the Purple Mountain is a sea of trees.

② He hurried to the hall, followed (follow) by two guards.

③ Dressed (dress) in white, she suddenly appeared.

④ He walked down the hill, singing (sing) softly to himself.

⑤ Having been trained (train) for three months, now she can handle many problems by herself.

## (2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写) 我充满了愤怒, 一个字也说不出。

Filled with anger, I was unable to utter a single word.

## 多义词汇 专练

## rough

A. *adj.* 艰难的

B. *adj.* 高低不平的

C. *adj.* 粗鲁的

D. *adj.* 做工粗糙的

E. *adj.* 汹涌的

① He said I was like a **rough** diamond and I needed polishing. D

② They journeyed for several weeks over **rough** roads. B

③ His **rough** manners annoyed everybody. C

④ The sea was **rough** and dangerous, and the ship went up and down. E

⑤ Friends are the best to turn to when you're having a **rough** day. A



## Unit 3 课后素养评价 (十二)

### Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### I. 单词拼写

1. He's been informed that he doesn't qualify for the scholarship because of his academic (学术的) background.
2. I felt lucky to be chosen as a representative (代表) of our school and join in the cultural tour.
3. Ten years later, a paper relevant (有关的) to this research was published.
4. The new technology, if applied to farming, will help increase the grain (谷物) output.
5. It's said that the sum (金额) amounted to a little over twelve million dollars.
6. This associated (联合的) company selling furniture is now in the charge of Mr White.
7. There is no doubt that high levels of lead could damage the intellectual (智力的) development of children.
8. We celebrated our 25th wedding anniversary (周年纪念日) in Florence.

#### II. 单句语法填空

1. Dodgeball (躲避球) has emerged (emerge) as a popular middle school, high school and college sport as well.
2. The death of the doctor is relevant to the terrible accident happening last night.
3. We have spent large sums (sum) of money on treating the disease.
4. The whole village was bombed (bomb) during the conflict, resulting in many deaths.
5. The troop led by the commander broke through the enemy's lines and bombed their castle.
6. Each class should elect ten representatives (represent) to take part in the voluntary activity.

7. To be good at the game, you need a reasonable level of intelligence (intellectual).
8. The participants are asked to write down all the ideas associated (associate) with candles.

#### III. 短语填空

more than; a large number of; serve as; for example; due to; because of; blow away; lay the foundation for

1. The girl did cherish the educational opportunity and she always adopted the motto to serve as a reminder.
2. You had better switch on the fan to blow away the smoke.
3. Due to the fact that they did not read English, the visitors were unaware of what they were signing.
4. Forming the good habit of reading will lay the foundation for your success in study and career.
5. According to the traffic rule, you can't drive more than 30 kilometres per hour in this area.
6. There are a large number of attractions and you may not have time to see them all.
7. The police are advising motorists to reduce the speed because of the fog.
8. Many countries, for example Mexico and Japan, have a lot of earthquakes.

#### IV. 补全句子

1. 他投身于自己的研究,因此难怪他成功地研制出了疫苗。(no wonder)  
He devoted himself to his research, so it was no wonder that he succeeded in the development of the vaccine.
2. 被准许参军后,他感到自豪。(过去分词作状语)  
Allowed to join the army, he felt proud.

3. 有些人浪费食物,然而另一些人却吃不饱。(while 表示对比)

Some people waste food while others don't have enough to eat.

4. 天气允许的话,筹划很久的舞会将在花园中举行。(独立主格结构)

The party which has been planned for a long time will be held in the garden, weather permitting.

5. 只有通过采取有效措施,我们才能保护好濒危动物。(部分倒装)

Only by taking effective measures can we preserve the endangered animals well.

#### V. 语法填空

Power walking is a style of walking performed at a rapid, energetic pace. There is no special **1. requirement** (require) for you to start except a pair of comfortable walking shoes, and love for fresh outdoor air. Power walking offers many benefits. Walking at a quick pace of 4 mph **2. burns** (burn) around 300 calories per hour. **3. Consequently** (consequent), power walking, in addition to a healthy diet, helps manage your weight. Also, power walking decreases the risks of serious **4. diseases** (disease) like high blood pressure, heart attacks and certain types of cancers.

Power walking helps reduce the stress associated with day-to-day living, **5. removing** (remove) yourself from the busy home atmosphere or **6. stressful** (stress) office environment for power walking can leave you refreshed and energetic.

Power walking uses both upper and lower body strength, **7. which** results in stronger muscles and bones. And **8. improved** (improve) body condition makes **9. it** easy for you to carry out daily tasks.

Power walking can transport you to your destination. You not only avoid the need for a car,

**10. but** save money on gas. If the family dog needs a walk and you need a workout, power walking is a convenient way to do both at the same time. This activity fits all different lifestyles.

#### VI. 写作

##### 第一节 应用文写作

你校英语俱乐部组织了“你最喜爱的中国古代传说历史人物”英语征文活动。假定你最喜欢的人物是花木兰,请你根据以下提示写一篇英语短文参加评选:

1. 简述木兰代父从军的故事;
2. 你喜欢这一人物的理由。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

#### 【参考范文】

I choose Mulan as my favourite historical figure in ancient Chinese legends.

Living in ancient times, Mulan was a young girl who decided to join the army as a way to help her family. Because her brother was too young to enlist, she made sacrifices in order to stop the forced recruitment of her father.

I really love this character because she is both brave and caring. She fights with courage and determination and she makes a great contribution to the country. She is also a wonderful role model, showing that women need not feel limited when it comes to what they can achieve.

## 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

### The Real Champion

I like running and for me, success was winning every race I participated in. My classmates called me Incredible Dash. One day, there was a sporting event planned in my school. Well-prepared for the running competition, I took part in almost every race there was. A large number of people gathered to watch. Crowds were eager to see the running race because it was the most exciting event. When the race for 400m started, all the boys ran fast. Unsurprisingly, I finished first in the race and received a big round of applause. While it was tiring, I felt proud and was on top of my world.

In the race for 200m, I ran full speed and finished the race first once again. The crowd gave thundering claps to me. I jumped all over the ground and was not bothered to give handshakes to my fellow racers.

Then came the race for 100m. Discouraged by the previous races, most boys quit the race except one, a boy named Matt who was invited as an honorary runner. Matt was born with low vision but he was a determined participant of many sports. The judge came to Matt and explained the situation, asking whether he would like to quit too. I, wild with joy, thought I would win the champion without effort. However, to everyone's surprise, Matt decided to complete the event. I sniffed (不以为然地说), "It is a waste of time. I bet he even doesn't figure out where the finish line is."

The race of two started. On hearing the starting gun, both Matt and I ran to the finish line. Soon I sped up and left Matt behind. Just 30 metres before arriving at the finish line, I was expecting to receive the applause for the third time when I suffered a leg

spasm (痉挛).

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

I fell hard to the ground. \_\_\_\_\_

Arm by arm, we walked towards the finish line.

### 【参考范文】

I fell hard to the ground. At this moment I felt sad and ashamed that I couldn't finish the race. I lay on the ground, unwilling to face the fact and the crowds. I imagined the sneering faces and didn't know how to react. Suddenly a hand reached out to me. I raised my head and found it was Matt. "Let's run together," he said. There was just sincerity on his face, no mock. I believed I should trust him, and gave him my hand.

Arm by arm, we walked towards the finish line. The crowds fell into silence, and then broke into loud applause. What did they applaud for? I think I know. Bowing to Matt, I thanked Matt for his help and admitted he was the champion. "No, I participate in the race not for the champion, just for the participation. You are very excellent," he said. I was surprised at first, and then realised that the one who showed full engagement and good faith deserved the real champion.

★ ★ ★  
迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

## Part 1 应用文写作——战斗英雄人物简介

## ○写作指导

## (一)文体指导

战斗英雄人物简介属于记叙文的范畴,它以写人、记事为主,以叙述和描写为主要表达方式。人物简介一般可分为三大部分,即生平介绍、事迹叙述和简短的评论。时态的选择要视情况而定,若写人物的过去事件就用过去时态,若写人物的现在情况就用现在时态。

## (二)基本框架

## 1. 首段:生平介绍

人物的出生时间和地点是必不可少的信息;介绍生平时要尊重客观事实,材料要真实。

## 2. 中段:事迹叙述

选材要着眼于人物的生活背景、主要事迹及成就,起到突出人物的特点和树立榜样的作用。选材要有重点。

## 3. 尾段:简短的评论

对所描述的人物的评论要客观公正。

## ○典题示例

假设你是李华,你的好友约翰(John)来信说董存瑞的英雄事迹让他深受感动,请根据下面表格提供的信息用英语给他写封回信,详细介绍一下董存瑞。

英雄人物	董存瑞
人物简介	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 1929 年生于河北省张家口市怀来县;</li><li>• 1945 年参加八路军;</li><li>• 1947 年加入中国共产党;</li><li>• 1948 年 5 月 25 日,在解放隆化县的战斗中英勇牺牲。</li></ul>
主要荣誉	被授予“战斗英雄”和“模范共产党员”称号。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

## Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主

续表

人称	以第三人称为主
要点	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. 说明写信原因</li><li>2. 人物生平简介、主要事迹及所获得的主要荣誉</li><li>3. 祝福语</li></ol>

## Step 2: 要点补全

①Dong Cunrui was born (出生) in Huailai County, Hebei Province, in 1929.

②He joined the Eighth Route Army (加入八路军) in 1945.

③Because of his mastery of (由于他精通) military skills, intelligence and bravery in the battlefield, he won “Combat Hero” and “Model Communist”.

④Dong Cunrui sacrificed his life (牺牲了他的生命).

⑤He opened a way for (为……打开通路) the troops.

## Step 3: 句式升级

①用分词作状语连接 Step 2 中的①②两句。

Born in Huailai County, Hebei Province, in 1929, Dong Cunrui joined the Eighth Route Army in 1945.

②用分词作状语连接 Step 2 中的④⑤两句。

Sacrificing his life, Dong Cunrui opened a way for the troops.

## Step 4: 连句成篇

## 【参考范文】

Dear John,

I'm glad to receive your letter! I'm writing this letter to introduce something about Dong Cunrui to you.

Born in Huailai County, Hebei Province, in 1929, Dong Cunrui joined the Eighth Route Army in 1945. Dong joined the Communist Party of China in 1947. Because of his mastery of military skills, intelligence and bravery in the battlefield, he won “Combat Hero” and “Model Communist”.

On May 25, 1948, he died in the battle of assaulting Longhua County. Sacrificing his life, Dong Cunrui opened a way for the troops. As a result, Dong Cunrui is regarded as the national combat hero.

Best regards!

Yours,  
Li Hua

### ○学以致用

邱少云为了战斗的胜利,严格遵守纪律,在烈火中壮烈牺牲。假设你是李华,你的好友凯特(Kate)来信说想进一步了解这位战斗英雄。请用英语写一封回信,向她详细介绍一下邱少云。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Kate,

In your last letter, you said you wanted to know more about Qiu Shaoyun. I hope this letter can help you. \_\_\_\_\_

Looking forward to receiving your letter!

Yours,  
Li Hua

### 【参考范文】

Dear Kate,

In your last letter, you said you wanted to know more about Qiu Shaoyun. I hope this letter can help you.

Qiu Shaoyun was born in 1926 in a rural village in Tongliang District, Chongqing City. He joined the People's Liberation Army in 1949.

In early 1951, Qiu joined the Chinese People's Volunteer Army, taking part in the Korean War. In October 1952, Qiu died a martyr's death. In the struggle for Hill 391, Qiu and his unit crawled closer to the enemy position, using hay and twigs as natural camouflage. The enemy used incendiary bombs dropped by airplanes to try to smoke out the Chinese units. Trapped in the ensuing brush fire and in order not to expose the other Chinese soldiers taking part in the assault, he did not move and was burned to death.

Looking forward to receiving your letter!

Yours,  
Li Hua

## Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

No matter how small you are, you can also give help or support to others. I didn't understand these words until I saw my grandfather weep that day.

I grew up in Southern California, and my family often went to some parks. The highlight of those park visits for me was always the evening activities when there would be fireworks.

As I grew older and more observant, I noticed that my grandfather would go missing just before the fireworks were scheduled to start and reappear shortly after they finished. I asked my mother about this and was told that Grandpa didn't like to hear the noise of the explosions. They reminded him of the war and his fellows who died in the war. So every time there were fireworks, he would go inside the bathrooms until they were done. I felt surprised because my grandfather was such a strong man.

One summer night, somewhere near my tenth birthday, my family and I exited a ride just in time to hear over the loudspeakers, "In only two minutes, the lights will be turned off around the Rivers of America, and the park will present their fireworks in the skies over the park." At this moment, Grandpa was just in front of me, and when he heard the announcement, he started jogging ahead without a word to anyone. Without really thinking, I took after him, against the orders of my mother, who repeatedly called after me to stay with the rest of the family. Grandpa, unaware that I was behind him, tried desperately to walk through the masses of people who were stopped in the street waiting for the show to begin.

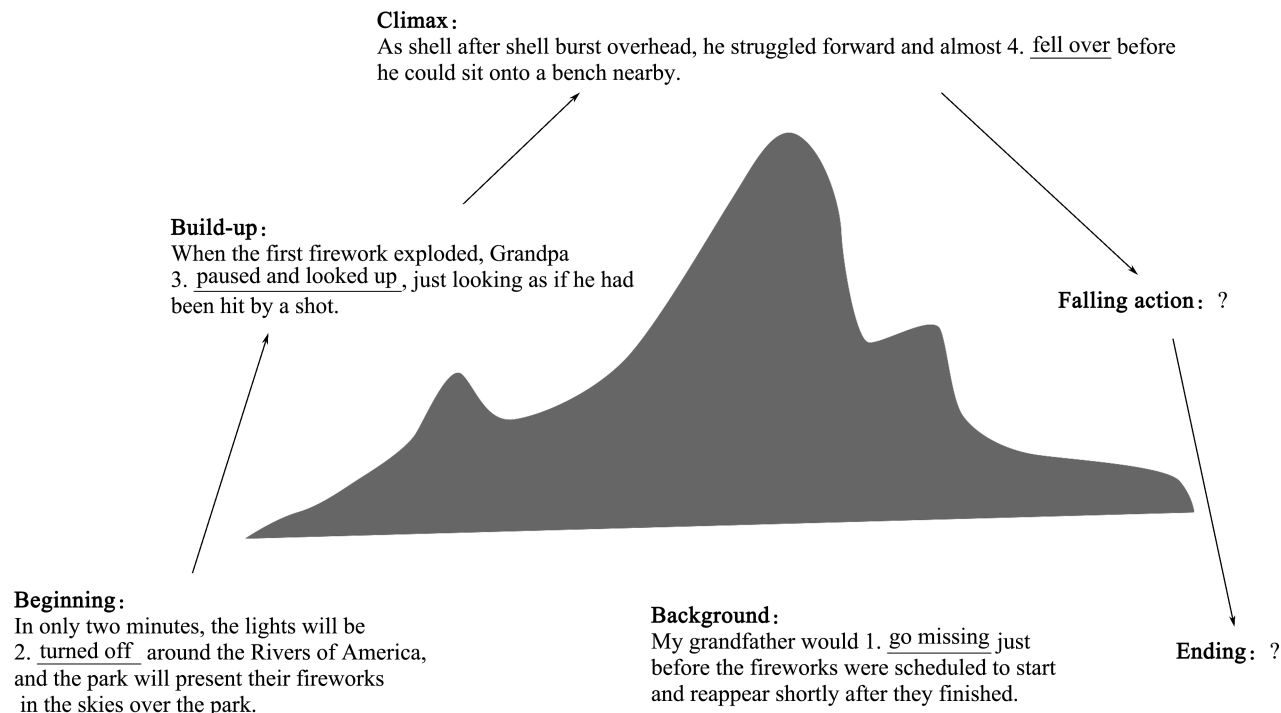
As he tried to reach the bathrooms, the first shell broke in the skies above us. Grandpa paused and looked up, just looking as if he had been hit by a shot. And then he kept moving forward. As shell after shell burst overhead, he struggled forward and almost fell over before he could sit onto a bench nearby.

任务一：阅读文章，回答问题。

What does the passage mainly talk about?

My grandfather was afraid of fireworks because explosions would remind him of the war and his dead comrades. But one night, during the explosions, I comforted him and he thanked me.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下列问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思并完善故事发展的情节。

<p><b>Paragraph 1:</b></p> <p>Instantly, I went forward and was by his side. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What was Grandpa's response when seeing the author around him?</p> <p><u>When he looked at me in surprise, I saw fear on a face that had only shown strength and kindness before.</u></p> <p>2. How did the author and his grandpa perform later?</p> <p><u>I grasped his hand in mine. It was trembling and seemed suddenly much weaker than I remembered. Grandpa sunk into my arms. His breath was quick, and he wept soundlessly. I kept perfectly still and didn't say a word.</u></p>
<p><b>Paragraph 2:</b></p> <p>When the fireworks show ended, he straightened up suddenly and wiped the tears. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What did his grandpa do after wiping the tears?</p> <p><u>He calmed himself for just a moment, and then put his arm around me and said, "Thanks, child." Seconds later, he was on his feet, declaring that we should find the others and leading me into the crowd by the hand.</u></p> <p>2. How did the author feel after that?</p> <p><u>I once again felt his strong hand.</u></p> <p>3. What lesson did the author learn from the experience?</p> <p><u>I realised that everyone can offer help and support to others however little he is.</u></p>

任务四：根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

Instantly, I went forward and was by his side. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

When the fireworks show ended, he straightened up suddenly and wiped the tears. \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

【参考范文】

Instantly, I went forward and was by his side. And when he looked at me in surprise, I saw fear on a face that had only shown strength and kindness before. I grasped his hand in mine. It was trembling and seemed suddenly much weaker than I remembered. Grandpa sunk into my arms. His breath was quick, and he wept soundlessly. I kept perfectly still and didn't say a word. Absorbed in the show, no one noticed us on that bench as we sat for what seemed like hours.

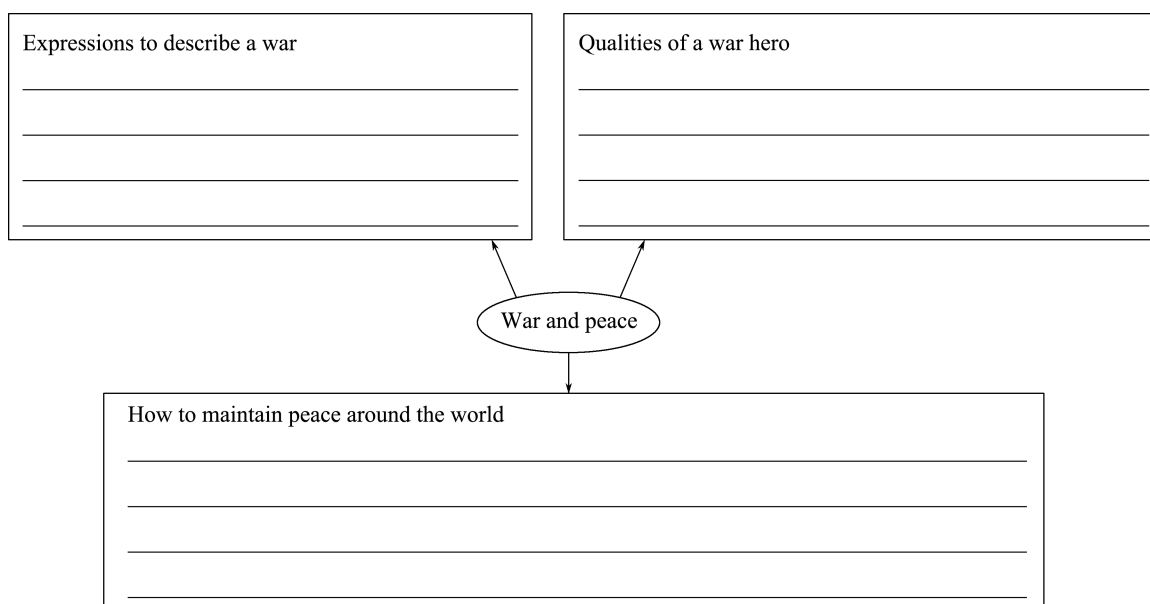
When the fireworks show ended, he straightened up suddenly and wiped the tears. He calmed himself for just a moment, and then put his arm around me and said, "Thanks, kid." Seconds later, he was on his feet, declaring that we should find the others and leading me into the crowd by the hand. I once again felt his strong hand. Walking through the crowds, I knew that I ought to never mention this to anyone. At the same time, I realised that everyone can offer help and support to others however little he is.



## 重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

### 一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



答案:略

### 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

#### Hell Comes to Pearl Harbor

It was Sunday, December 7, 1941. As usual, the wake-up call came at 5:45 a.m. The men aboard the warship USS Arizona stretched and rubbed their eyes. Seaman Russell Warriner was awakened by Quartermaster Louis Conter. Russell made his bed and helped clean the huge, shared room. The men went to the washroom, dressed in their uniforms and sat down to breakfast. It looked like it would be a normal day on board the ship.

But nobody ate their breakfast; at that moment, there was a huge crashing sound from above. The ship shook violently and the men looked at each other in horror. Above their heads, hundreds of Japanese planes circled like eagles. They were diving down to drop bombs on Pearl Harbor. The scream of their engines was deafening. As bombs thundered all around, clouds of black smoke rose into the sky and hung over the sea. Russell felt his blood freeze, but he quickly came to himself and rushed up to the deck. Moments later, a bomb hit the USS Arizona and Russell was thrown more than 100 meters across the ship. He suffered serious burns on his hands, arms and legs, and watched many of his friends die.

Louis, meanwhile, also standing on the deck, was lucky not to be thrown into the sea. With only minor injuries, he was able to help others who were severely burnt and in terrible pain. After receiving the order to abandon ship, Louis saved more men from the water, dragging them into the lifeboat. In the chaos and confusion after the attack, the US Navy sent a message to his family that Louis had been killed in the attack. Luckily, he was able to get in touch with them before the message arrived. Despite his remarkable actions, Louis did not think that he was a hero. "The heroes are the ones that gave their lives that day," he said.

Russell was saved from the water, but he was badly burnt, bleeding heavily. Fortunately, he was taken to hospital and survived. For many years, Russell refused to talk about what happened that morning,

describing it simply as “hell”. His wife Elsa said, “When he opened up later on, he always mentioned the horror of it.”

Louis and Russell would never forget the terrible scene of the attack, but they were fortunate enough to be among the few survivors from the Arizona. Nobody had expected the bombing. Japan had hatched a plot to launch a surprise attack on Pearl Harbor, so the attack began without warning and without declaring war on the United States. The attack destroyed nearly 20 American ships and over 180 airplanes. In total, more than 2,000 American people were killed and over 1,000 others were wounded that day. More than 1,000 people aboard the Arizona lost their lives. Out of 37 sets of brothers, Russell and his brother were the only full pair to survive the attack.

The surprise attack came as a great shock to the whole nation. The next day, President Roosevelt delivered his famous Pearl Harbor Speech, in which he described December 7 as “a date which will live in infamy” and asked that the US Congress declare war on Japan. In response to the attack and the president’s address, the United States joined the Second World War.

Today, the USS Arizona lies where it sank: in the middle of the Pacific Ocean. Its location is marked with a memorial shaped like a bridge, which crosses the ship’s sunken remains. Each year, more than two million people visit the memorial. They come to see the shadow of the ship at the bottom of Pearl Harbor, to learn about the attack, to show respect for those who had lost their lives in the attack and to pray for world peace. Although about eight decades have passed, the attack on Pearl Harbor, one of the darkest episodes in American history, will never be forgotten.

1. When did the attack take place?

- A. In the morning. B. At noon.  
C. In the evening. D. At midnight.

2. What happened to the ship on which Louis worked?

- A. It saved many soldiers. B. It escaped from the attack.  
C. It was protected by Louis. D. It was hit and abandoned.

3. Why did Russell refuse to talk about the attack?

- A. Because it was too cruel. B. Because it was long ago.  
C. Because it was not worth mentioning. D. Because it didn’t sound comfortable.

4. What is mainly talked about in the fifth paragraph?

- A. The luck of survivors. B. The cruelty of the war.  
C. The number of the deaths. D. Great loss of the attack.

答案:1~4 ADAD

## 单元测试卷(三)

(考查范围:Unit 3 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

### A

Modern life is evolving fast. Think about how much things have changed even in the last twenty years. This rate of change isn’t slowing down. If anything, it’s increasing. Technology is augmenting (提高) human life in all kinds of ways.

#### Electric Cars

The way that we approach motor vehicles has changed. Electric cars are the response to the

pollution of gas vehicles. For a long time, electric vehicles were inaccessible. They were expensive and unattainable. Things have changed. Now electric automobiles are cheaper than ever. They are similarly priced as regular gas vehicles. Furthermore, car charging stations are more common. More are being installed on the streets and in parking lots. Soon electric cars will be as common as gas vehicles. It is changing our way of life by alleviating pollution.

### Virtual Reality

Virtual Reality (VR) is a part of technological advance that will continue to change the way we live for years to come. VR will change entertainment. With a headset, you don't just watch a video. You are a part of it. You can experience things digitally. It provides immersion (沉浸) that is difficult to accomplish otherwise.

### Augmented Reality

Beyond entertainment, Augmented Reality (AR), when you use the organic environment with the technology, will facilitate medicine. Remote surgeries can be performed with AR on the 5G Internet. These technologies can also help terminal patients (whose illness cannot be cured and will lead to death) find a new state of mind. There is no shortage of the number of ways that AR will change the way we live.

Artificial Intelligence (AI) uses machine learning to recognise patterns, create algorithms and analyse data. AI can synthesize (综合) all the information available to it. AI can excel to the optimal point in effectiveness and productivity. It is used for many different purposes. There is no end to how AI will improve human life. It isn't just used to improve social media sites to show consumers advertisements for products they might want to buy. It can perform all kinds of tasks out of thin air.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了三种科学技术以及应用。

1. According to the passage, what's the advantage of electric cars?
  - A. More eco-friendly.
  - B. Less expensive than others.
  - C. Conveniently in stalled.
  - D. Commonly visible.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“It is changing our way of life by alleviating pollution.”可知,电动汽车的优势是更环保。故选 A。
2. What can we know from the passage?
  - A. The price of electric cars is similar to regular gas vehicles.
  - B. Achieving the effect of immersion is tough for VR.
  - C. AR can provide dying people with a new mindset.

D. AI has enhanced human life indefinitely.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“They are similarly priced as regular gas vehicles.”可知, A 项“电动汽车的价格和其他汽车差不多”正确。故选 A。

3. What does the underlined word “optimal” probably mean in the last paragraph?

- A. Productive.
- B. Splendid.
- C. Effective.
- D. Diverse.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在的句子及前句可知,人工智能可以综合利用所有可用的信息,可以在效率和生产力上达到最优点。故画线词的意思是“极佳的”。故选 B。

### B

On June 5, 2019, undersea explorer Tim Taylor and his team at the Lost 52 Project announced that they had located the long-lost submarine (潜艇) about 1,427 feet underwater off Okinawa, Japan. In 2018, researcher Yutaka Iwasaki found that the Navy had originally made an error in translating the Japanese war records that detailed where the Grayback had likely sunk. All this time, the Navy's historical records had listed an incorrect site for the submarine's location.

With the help of autonomous underwater vehicles, remotely operated vehicles and advanced imaging technology, the team discovered the Grayback about 100 miles from the area where it was originally thought to have gone down. The discovery was officially confirmed by the Navy, Robert S. Neyland, the head of the Naval History and Heritage.

On January 28, 1944, the Grayback set sail from Pearl Harbor for the East China Sea. About a month later, the submarine reported sinking two Japanese ships on February 19. Though the Grayback was scheduled to arrive in Midway on March 7, more than three weeks passed without sight of the submarine. And on March 30, 1944, the Grayback, one of the most successful submarines of World War II, was reported lost.

Gloria Hurney, whose uncle Raymond Parks died on the Grayback, said that she wasn't sure that the Grayback would ever be recovered. So when she first learned of the discovery, she felt a mixture of shock, disbelief and sadness. Eventually, though,

those feelings turned into relief, comfort and peace. Hurney said in a statement to CNN, “I believe it will allow recovery as relatives of crew members come together to share their stories.”

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了水下探测组织利用现代高科技发现了二战时沉没的一艘潜艇。

4. Why was the submarine not found before?

- A. The Navy was wrong in changing records into Japanese.
- B. The technology was not so advanced.
- C. No information about the submarine was obtained.
- D. There was no need to find it.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“In 2018, researcher Yutaka Iwasaki found that the Navy had originally made an error in translating the Japanese war records that detailed where the Grayback had likely sunk.”可知,因为海军在翻译时出了错误,导致 Grayback 未被发现。故选 A。

5. How was the submarine located?

- A. By accident.
- B. By the Navy's hard work.
- C. By the families' determination.
- D. By modern technology.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“With the help of autonomous underwater vehicles, remotely operated vehicles and advanced imaging technology, ... have gone down.”可知,该团队在现代高科技设备的帮助下找到了 Grayback。故选 D。

6. What can be inferred from the text?

- A. People's feeling about the discovery was complicated.
- B. The Grayback would be recovered soon.
- C. The Grayback was the most successful submarine of World War II.
- D. The Grayback was supposed to reach the destination on April 7.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“So when she first learned of the discovery... relief, comfort and peace.”可知,人们对于沉船的发现有不同的看法和感受。故选 A。

7. What is the main idea of this text?

- A. Tim Taylor and his team announced a new discovery.

B. A World War II submarine was discovered.

C. An opportunity to remember and honour the service of sailors.

D. A mistake the Navy made in translating the Japanese war records.

B 主旨大意题。根据文章的主要内容,尤其是第一段中的“On June 5, 2019, undersea explorer Tim Taylor... off Okinawa, Japan.”可知,本文主要讲述了一艘在二战时期执行任务的沉没潜艇被发现了。故选 B。

### C

A new study by Yale University found that reading books was positively correlated with increased lifespan—people who read books lived for around two years longer than those who didn't.

In the study, published in the journal *Social Science and Medicine*, researchers evaluated data on 3,635 Americans aged over 50. Respondents were separated into those who read for 3.5 hours or more a week, those who read for up to 3.5 hours a week, and those who didn't read at all, controlling for factors such as gender, race and education.

The researchers discovered that those who read for more than 3.5 hours a week were 23% less likely to die within 12 years, while those who read for up to 3.5 hours a week were 17% less likely to die within that period.

Co-author of the study, Becca R. Levy, Professor of Epidemiology at Yale University, said, “People who report as little as a half-hour a day of book reading had a significant survival advantage over those who did not read.”

The researchers found that people who read books showed stronger cognitive abilities, such as recall and counting backwards.

However, reading magazines or newspapers didn't have the same effect unless readers spent more than seven hours on the activity each week. This was associated with an 11% reduction in mortality.

It is not clear why there is such a strong association between reading and longevity although previous studies have suggested that people who read books tend to be healthier, richer, and better educated in general, all of which could contribute to a longer life.

A separate survey of 4,164 adults in the UK, including both those who read and those who don't, found that adults who read for just 20 minutes a week are 20% more likely to feel satisfied with their lives. By contrast, non-readers were 28% more likely to report feelings of depression than those who read regularly for pleasure. One in five readers said that reading helps them to feel less lonely.

“Reading not only helps to introduce or reconnect readers to wider life systems and more broadly shared meanings. It can also remind people of activities or occupations they once pursued, or knowledge and skills they still possess, helping to restore their sense of having a place and purpose in the world,” Josie Billington, one of the researchers explains.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。最新研究发现，读书与寿命的延长呈正相关——读书的人比不读书的人寿命更长。

8. Where can you most probably read this passage?

- A. In a research findings report.
- B. In a news report on reading.
- C. In a health guide for the elderly.
- D. In a public service ad for reading.

A 文章出处题。根据第一段的内容可知，这篇文章最有可能是一篇研究成果报告。故选 A。

9. What can we know from the passage?

- A. People who read books lived much longer than those who didn't.
- B. Findings show that reading newspapers had as much positive effect as reading books.
- C. It is uncertain whether there is a strong connection between reading and longevity.
- D. The survey in the UK revealed that regular readers were less likely to suffer depression.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“By contrast, non-readers were 28% more likely to report feelings of depression than those who read regularly for pleasure. One in five readers said that reading helps them to feel less lonely.”可知，英国的调查显示，定期读书的人患抑郁症的可能性较小。故选 D。

10. Which of following are the benefits of reading on a daily basis?

- A. Longevity, high spirits and courage.
- B. Long lifespan, tolerance and pursuit.

C. Long lifespan, power and well-being.

D. Longevity, status and cognitive abilities.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“people who... than those who didn't.”可知，此处表达阅读与 longevity 有关；根据第五段的内容可知，此处表达阅读与 cognitive abilities 有关；根据最后一段中的“... having a place and purpose in the world.”可知，此处表达阅读与 status 有关。故选 D。

11. What message does the writer intend to convey in the passage?

- A. Reading extends your life.
- B. Reading makes a full man.
- C. An idle youth, a needy age.
- D. Read wherever you are.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“... people who read books lived for around two years longer than those who didn't.”以及全文大意可知，作者意图在文章中传达阅读延长生命的信息。故选 A。

#### D

In 1917 Orville Wright predicted that “the aeroplane will help peace in many ways—in particular I think it will have a tendency to make war impossible”. Earlier in 1904, American journalist John Walker declared, “As a peace machine, the value of the aeroplane to the world will be beyond computation.” This wasn't the first grand promise of technology. In that same year Jules Verne announced, “The submarine may be the cause of bringing battle to a stoppage.”

Alfred Nobel sincerely believed his dynamite (火药) would be a war obstacle: “My dynamite will sooner lead to peace than a thousand world conventions (公约).” Similarly, when Hiran Maxim, inventor of the machine gun, was asked in 1893, “Will this gun not make war more terrible?” He answered, “No, it will make war impossible.” Guglielmo Marconi, inventor of the radio, told the world in 1912, “The coming of the wireless time will make war impossible, because it will make war ridiculous.” General James Harbord, chairman of the board of RCA in 1925, believed, “Radio will serve to make the concept of Peace on Earth, Good Will Towards Men a reality.”

David Nye, a historian of technology, adds to

the list of inventions imagined as abolishing war forever and leading to universal peace the hot-air balloon, poison gas, land mines and laser guns.

It is not that all these inventions are without benefits—even benefits towards democracy. Rather, it's the case that each new technology creates more problems than it solves. "Problems are the answers to solutions," says Brian Arthur.

Most of the new problems in the world are problems created by previous technology. These problems are nearly invisible to us. Every year 1.2 million people die in automobile accidents. The technological transportation system kills more people than cancer. Global warming, environmental poisons, nuclear terrorism, and species loss, are only a few of the many other serious problems troubling people.

If we embrace (拥抱) technology, we need to face its costs.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了飞机、炸药、机枪、无线电通信的发明者的初衷,即阻止战争、保卫和平;但事实上这些新科技给人类带来的问题远比它们解决的问题要多。

12. What will new inventions do according to the first two paragraphs?

- A. They will increase wars.
- B. They will lead to peace.
- C. They will serve people.
- D. They will break conventions.

B 推理判断题。根据第一、二段中的关键词“help peace”“make war impossible”“bringing battle to a stoppage”“would be a war obstacle”“make the concept of Peace on Earth”等可知,每一项发明都是想阻止战争、保卫和平。故选 B。

13. What invention was considered to make war silly by its inventor?

- A. The radio.
- B. The aeroplane.
- C. Dynamite.
- D. The machine gun.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Guglielmo Mareconi, inventor of the radio, told the world in 1912, ‘The coming of the wireless time will make war impossible, because it will make war ridiculous.’”可知,无线电通信的发明者认为他的发明会使战争变得荒唐。故选 A。

14. Why does the author list so many inventions?

- A. To show people's creativity.
- B. To appreciate their benefits.
- C. To contradict the original ideas.
- D. To prove grand promises.

C 推理判断题。根据第一、二段的内容可知,发明者都认为自己的发明可以阻止战争。根据最后三段,尤其是第四段中的“Rather, it's the case that each new technology creates more problems than it solves.”可知,很多问题都是由之前的发明带来的。因此,作者用这些发明为例,是为了反驳它们被发明出来的初衷。故选 C。

15. What does the author hope to tell us about new technology through the text?

- A. It will experience many tests.
- B. It will bring about huge costs in the world.
- C. It provides answers to many problems.
- D. It presents more problems than it solves.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“Rather, it's the case that each new technology creates more problems than it solves.”和第五段中的“Most of the new problems in the world are problems created by previous technology.”可知,作者想要通过文章告诉我们:科技带来的问题远比它解决的问题多。故选 D。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Household chores like cooking, cleaning, washing the dishes, and making the bed are never done; they just get repeated like a broken record. Boring! Like many people, you may regard chores as something annoying. 16 It turns out that doing chores is great for your health.

Chores can lead to creative problem-solving. As researchers state in a report, doing undemanding tasks allows the mind to wander. 17 In fact, undemanding tasks stimulate more creative ideas than demanding tasks or just resting.

18 To discover what activities might be linked to a lower rate of dementia (痴呆), researchers analysed massive amounts of healthcare data from the UK Biobank. They found that those most engaged in household chores had a 21 percent lower risk of dementia compared to those least engaged in chores. This result indicated simple changes could make a difference to health.

Finishing your chores can increase motivation (动力). B.J. Fogg, author of *Tiny Habits: The Small Changes That Change Everything*, states that the most important skill is recognising and celebrating successes. Completing even a small task, like making your bed, can give you a sense of satisfaction. 19 Similarly, author Admiral William H. McRaven argues that if you want to change the world, start off by making your bed.

Chores are good for children's mental health. Children develop a sense of ownership when they have jobs to do around the house and it makes them feel like they are an important member of the household. Doing chores with children also improves the parent-child relationship. 20

- A. Chores are linked to a lower dementia risk.  
B. Chores are an opportunity for "me time".  
C. In this way, they can be taught to be confident.  
D. Thus, you feel encouraged to deal with tasks one after another.  
E. But there are science-based reasons for changing your attitude towards chores.  
F. Your mind gets a break, which allows you to consider old problems with new eyes.  
G. In my own case, I bond with my daughter by chatting while we do chores together.

答案: 16~20 EFADG

### III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

It is now my senior year, and it is quickly coming to an end. I am always very fond of 21 and I am proud to be a member of our 22. However, I once almost gave up last year because of my 23 of playing solos (独奏曲).

Two months ago my director 24 me that he wanted me to be the featured soloist in a piece of music. Of course I was 25, but he told me that everything would be okay. Up until four days before the performance, I could not 26 it through the solo. I would always seem to get discouraged before I played it, and 27 every morning thinking "I wonder how I can mess things up today". I decided to ask my 28 for help thinking that he would tell me that I didn't have to do it and that he was still proud of me. 29, all he said was "You just have to have 30 in yourself." I thought what he said was cliché (老生常谈), so I didn't really

31 it. But, I figured trying his advice wouldn't 32, so I started the next morning 33. Instead of wondering how I could mess up, I 34 myself playing through my solo with confidence and I kept on telling myself that I could do it.

The 35 thing was it worked! Every single day after that I played the solo without any mistakes.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者有一次被告知要进行独奏,他有些恐惧,甚至想放弃音乐。但是指挥告诉他要自信,最终他克服了恐惧。

21. A. dancing B. music  
C. paintings D. poems  
B 根据下文的 "... of playing solos (独奏曲)." 可知,作者非常喜欢音乐(music)。  
22. A. band B. family  
C. society D. homeland  
A 根据上文内容可知,作者喜欢音乐,故此处指作者为自己是乐队(band)的成员之一而感到骄傲。  
23. A. relief B. wish  
C. fear D. goal  
C 与上文的 "gave up" 相呼应,此处指作者由于害怕演奏独奏曲而差点退出乐队。fear 意为 "害怕,恐惧",符合语境。  
24. A. educated B. suggested  
C. persuaded D. told  
D 根据下文的 "... that he wanted me to be the featured soloist in a piece of music." 可知,这里是指指挥告诉(told)作者进行独奏。  
25. A. frightened B. excited  
C. puzzled D. surprised  
A 根据上文的 "... he wanted me to be the featured soloist in a piece of music." 可知,作者听到自己要表演独奏曲,感到害怕(frightened)。  
26. A. take B. make  
C. bring D. break  
B 根据语境可知,这里指在表演前的四天,作者仍然无法熟练演奏独奏曲。make it through 表示 "渡过难关,熬过",符合语境。  
27. A. went through B. took off  
C. woke up D. calmed down  
C 根据下文的 "every morning thinking" 可知,这里指作者每天早上醒来(woke up)时想着。  
28. A. director B. parent  
C. friend D. partner



A 上文提到是指挥让作者演奏独奏曲,因此这里表示作者去向指挥(director)寻求帮助。

29. A. Besides B. Otherwise  
C. Instead D. Therefore  
C 根据下文的“You just have to have 30 in yourself.”可知,指挥说的话与作者的预期相反,故选 Instead。
30. A. interest B. confidence  
C. responsibility D. hope  
B 根据语境可知,此处表示指挥并没有像作者想象的那样说,而是让作者对自己有信心(confidence)。下文中的“with confidence”是提示。
31. A. dream of B. rely on  
C. think about D. work on  
C 与上文的“I thought what he said was cliché (老生常谈)...”相呼应,此处指作者认为指挥说的都是老生常谈,所以没有考虑(think about)。
32. A. hurt B. deserve  
C. succeed D. perform  
A 根据语境可知,此处表示作者认为试一试指挥的建议也不会有什么损害(hurt)。
33. A. usually B. newly  
C. informally D. differently  
D 根据下文的叙述可知,这里指作者以不同的方式开启第二天早晨。
34. A. enjoyed B. imagined  
C. devoted D. appreciated  
B 根据语境和上文的“wondering how I could mess up”可知,空处应和 wondering 同义,指作者想象(imagined)自己带着自信来进行独奏。
35. A. terrible B. regular  
C. strange D. familiar  
C 根据下文的“... it worked!”可知,作者想象自己能够自信地演奏,这个方法竟然发挥了作用,所以这是奇怪的(strange)事情。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Many people don't know that Nuo opera (傩戏) is considered as one of the most popular folk operas in **36. southern** (south) China. Jiangxi Nuo, also called Gan Nuo (赣傩) is the most popular in the counties of Nanfeng and Shangli in Jiangxi. A local building, **37. which** was said to have been built in the Ming Dynasty, still functions well and attracts many visitors today. **38. Probably** (probable) 80 Nuo opera programmes from the past still exist

today. The number of Nuo opera masks in Jiangxi is over 2,000, and there are about 2,000 professional **39. performing** (perform) folk artists of Nuo opera.

Nuo dancing, one of the most ancient arts and **40. a** necessary ingredient in Nuo opera, **41. has stayed** (stay) alive in Nanfeng, Jiangxi over the past 2,000 years. The **42. movements** (move) of Nanfeng Nuo dancing are simple but powerful, keeping **43. their** (they) ancient characteristics. Nanfeng Nuo dancing was even seen **44. as** “The Active Fossil of Chinese Dancing Art”. In 1996, Nanfeng county **45. was called** (call) “The Village of Chinese Folk Art—Nuo Art” by the government of China.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假如你是李华,是校英语报的编辑。请以“How to Release Pressure Properly”为题写一篇英语稿件。内容包括:

1. 面临挑战时往往感到紧张;
2. 提出一些合理化建议;
3. 希望大家学习顺利。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

How to Release Pressure Properly

Faced with the challenges, some of our students feel stressed out. What shall we do to release pressure properly?

First of all, we should develop a positive attitude towards exams, believing that we can do well if we try hard. Second, we should consider pressure as a natural part of the learning process, which motivates us to do better. Third, we can talk to our parents about our feelings and take some physical exercise, which is a great way to release pressure.

If you follow my advice, I am sure you will feel more relaxed.

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

After my son, Scott, graduated from high school, he took a job in North Carolina. Two thousand miles suddenly separated me from the

person who'd been the focus of my life for 18 years. As the days went by, I missed Scott more and more. I'd always been able to take care of myself, but now I seemed to need Scott's help constantly, like getting a tool from the top shelf, or moving something heavy. Most of all, I just missed having him to talk to. I was lonely. I knew this day would come. But why does it have to be so hard?

However, a mother spider taught me a lesson.

On my way out from my storeroom, I noticed a spider building her web across the top corner of the doorway. I reached for a hoe (锄头), tore down the web, and watched the giant spider run away in the grass. She was back the very next morning, in the exact same spot, busily rebuilding. I stared for a moment, and then reached for the hoe again. Then I twisted the hoe round and round, catching the spider in her own web. I carried her far into my backyard, shook the hoe and watched her fall to the ground and disappear in the bush. The third morning, I stopped short as I entered the storeroom. The spider was back in the same corner, her web almost completed again. I reached for the hoe, but stopped. I thought her persistence (坚持) in building her web should pay off. I stepped back and watched her long legs busily knitting the web.

For the next few weeks, the spider and I were close neighbours. One particularly boring day, I was feeling so down that I didn't even glance up at my spider as I entered. Suddenly I found a hundred tiny angels on the floor. I realised that these were baby

spiders and the web the mother had built was to protect her young.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

As the mother watched from the corner of the web, her young were making their way to the ground safely.

I decided that I would leave this web as a reminder.

### 【参考范文】

As the mother watched from the corner of the web, her young were making their way to the ground safely. It only took moments before all the angels were gone. My spider stayed alone again in the web she'd built. But crazy as it may sound, when I looked at that spider, I'd swear she seemed proud. The very next morning, when I went into the storeroom, she was gone. I knew that the spider had gone on to build different webs, just like this one, elsewhere. She had fulfilled this role, part of which was to let go with grace and self-respect.

I decided that I would leave this web as a reminder. Like my spider, part of my job as a parent, maybe the hardest part, was to let my son walk away. But I knew that I had built him a strong web to grow in, and that if I had the strength and the courage to watch him fall, his feet would land safely on the ground. So it's time for me to learn to let him go and adapt bravely to the new life.

## 阶段测试卷

(考查范围:Unit 1—Unit 3 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

### I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

#### A

#### Opening Notice for the National Museum of China (NMC)

##### Admission

NMC is open from Tuesday to Sunday, 9:00 to 17:30 (no entry after 16:30), and is closed on Mondays (except for public holidays). All visitors are required to book online 1 to 7 days in advance via the NMC official website.

##### Audio Guide Rental

Audio guide devices are available at the West

Hall Service Desk for RMB 40, with a RMB 100 deposit (押金). A valid (有效的) ID is necessary. Damage to an audio guide causes a fee based on the level of damage. Lost devices are subject to payment of the full purchase cost.

##### Facilities

Wheelchairs and strollers (婴儿推车) are available for free use on the day of visit at the Service Desk. A valid ID card and a deposit of RMB 300 are required.

**Photo Policy**

Photography is allowed in the NMC collection exhibitions without using flash, selfie sticks, or tripods. Temporary exhibits may have specific photo policies, indicated by clear signs put up at both the entrance and the corresponding exhibit halls.

**Transportation****Bus Route:**

You can take the No. 1, No. 2, No. 32, No. 82, No. 120 buses, or Sightseeing Line 2, Tourist Bus Line 1 and Line 2 and get off at Tian'anmen East Station.

**Metro:**

You can take Metro Line 1, get off at Tian'anmen East Station, and exit the station through Exit C.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了中国国家博物馆开馆公告的具体内容。

1. What happens if a rented audio guide device is damaged?

- A. An additional fee of RMB 40 is charged.
- B. The visitor is excused from any charges.
- C. Its full price is charged regardless of the damage.
- D. Fee for damage is based on the extent of the damage.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Audio Guide Rental** 部分中的“Damage to an audio guide causes a fee based on the level of damage.”可知,如果租用的语音讲解器被损坏,要根据损坏程度进行赔偿。故选 D。

2. What can you do during your visit to NMC?

- A. Borrow a wheelchair with a deposit of 300 dollars.
- B. Use a stroller provided by the museum for free.
- C. Take photos with a flashlight, selfie stick or tripod.
- D. Take pictures of the collections on all exhibitions.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Facilities** 部分中的

“Wheelchairs and strollers (婴儿推车) are available for free use on the day of visit at the Service Desk.”可知,博物馆免费提供婴儿推车。故选 B。

3. Which of the following can take you to NMC?

- A. The No.82 Bus.
- B. Tourist Bus Line 32.
- C. Sightseeing Line 1.
- D. Metro Line 2.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Transportation** 部分中的“You can take the No. 1, No. 2, No. 32, No. 82, No. 120 buses, or Sightseeing Line 2, Tourist Bus Line 1 and Line 2 and get off at Tian'anmen East Station.”可知,82 路公共汽车可到达中国国家博物馆。故选 A。

**B**

Every morning, crowds of London commuters (通勤者) walk heavily through the underground and cyclists race beside the noisy traffic. Meanwhile I've been peacefully paddling (用桨划) up the Thames to work in Kevin, my inflatable kayak (充气皮划艇). Even if the weather is terrible, it's still hugely enjoyable to disconnect from the London bustle (喧嚣).

I usually blow Kevin up the night before so that in the morning I can jump straight in and paddle to the city from my home in Putney. I row along the south bank. It's a busy river, and fairly fast flowing. I've had several near misses with bridges. There's no GPS needed. I just carry a marine radio, my mobile phone, wallet and suit. I row to the Houses of Parliament and then reach the shore at the steps near Cannon Street and, balancing Kevin on my head, walk through the city.

The idea of kayaking to work came from a fundraising event that I did last year on the Thames. Twelve mates and I got into blow-up kayaks and paddled along, stopping at various places to raise money. I then realised I could use the inflatable kayak to get to work: what a way to turn a fairly tiring journey into the best part of the day! I started

loving my commute!

My mornings with Kevin are drawing to a close, though, as I'm escaping for an adventure in June. With my fellow adventurer, I am kayaking from Greenland to Iceland.

I think a spell in the great outdoors is very humbling. In London everything is so easy. It rains and you put up an umbrella; you're hungry and you buy something from a shop. Only when you're out in the wild can you realise how little control over your life you really have.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要介绍了作者通过皮划艇通勤的经历和对自然的敬畏。

4. What does the author think about commuting by inflatable kayak?

- A. It is time-consuming.
- B. It is risky in bad weather.
- C. It helps him save money.
- D. It gives him pleasure.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Meanwhile I've been peacefully paddling (用桨划) up the Thames to work in Kevin, my inflatable kayak (充气皮划艇). Even if the weather is terrible, it's still hugely enjoyable to disconnect from the London bustle (喧嚣).”可知,作者对用充气皮划艇通勤感到愉快。故选 D。

5. What is Paragraph 2 mainly about?

- A. How the author commutes in his kayak.
- B. An introduction to kayaking in London.
- C. A description of the author's outdoor experience.
- D. What difficulties the author encounters on his way to work.

A 段落大意题。根据第二段的内容可知,第二段讲述了作者如何使用充气皮划艇通勤的细节。故选 A。

6. What made the author come up with the idea of commuting in a kayak?

- A. A fundraising experience.
- B. A tiring commuting journey.
- C. A piece of advice from his fellow adventurer.

D. A kayaking trip from Greenland to Iceland.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“The idea of kayaking to work came from a fundraising event that I did last year on the Thames.”可知,作者是通过一次筹款活动想出了用皮划艇通勤的主意。故选 A。

7. What does the author want to express in the last paragraph?

- A. Staying outdoors improves people's overall health.
- B. People in cities have little chance to interact with nature.
- C. Everyone should know the essential skills to survive in the wild.
- D. Spending time in nature inspires people to be respectful of nature.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可推知,作者通过对比城市生活和户外活动,表达了在自然中度过时光能让人对自然心存敬畏的想法。故选 D。

### C

Some girls tend to feel frustrated if they have a pear-shaped body, with hips that are wider than the bust (胸部) and shoulders. While pear-shaped people's waists are typically smaller, they may have more fat on their hips and legs. As a result, many pear-shaped girls try to hide their hips and legs under large dresses and pants.

However, a recent study suggested that pear-shaped people are the ones who won the genetic lottery!

A study published in September by the US National Library of Medicine found that the waist-to-hip ratio (WHR) shows the strongest and most consistent association with mortality. Traditionally, the body mass index (BMI) has been considered the best indicator of health. However, this study challenges this belief. It surveyed nearly 40,000 people and found that, regardless of BMI, WHR is positively correlated with all-cause mortality (all of the deaths that occur in a population no matter the

cause). The larger the WHR, the higher the all-cause mortality rate will be. Instead of focusing on how much fat a person has, scientists involved in this study suggest people should focus more on how fat is distributed in a person's body.

WHR, as its name suggests, compares your waist measurement to your hip measurement. A larger waistline means more central fat, which could indicate more visceral fat (内脏脂肪), also known as toxic fat. Harvard Medical School states that more visceral fat increases the risk of illnesses including diabetes, heart diseases and asthma. That's why people with a pear-shaped body tend to be healthier than others. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), a healthy WHR is less than 0.85 for women and less than 0.9 for men.

It is impossible to specifically target waist fat when people try to lose weight. But losing overall fat will make the waist smaller. Researchers from Johns Hopkins University suggested we eat less carbohydrates and more food higher in fiber and protein. Moreover, doing strength training helps build more muscle, which makes you burn more calories even when you're resting.

**【语篇解读】**一项研究发现,梨形身材的人往往比其他更健康。

8. Why do pear-shaped girls prefer baggy trousers?

- A. To show off their long legs.
- B. To hide their broad shoulders.
- C. To showcase their slim waists.
- D. To cover their wide hips and thick legs.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“As a result, many pear-shaped girls try to hide their hips and legs under large dresses and pants.”可知,梨形身材的女孩更喜欢宽松的裤子是为了遮住她们宽大的臀部和粗腿。故选D。

9. What does the recent study find that goes against the conventional belief?

- A. Pear-shaped people are much healthier.
- B. WHR consistently correlates with death rate.
- C. Pear-shaped people are lucky to win lotteries.

D. A smaller BMI indicates healthier physical condition.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“A study published in September by the US National Library of Medicine found that the waist-to-hip ratio (WHR) shows the strongest and most consistent association with mortality. Traditionally, the body mass index (BMI) has been considered the best indicator of health. However, this study challenges this belief.”可知,最近的研究发现WHR与死亡率相关,这项研究对传统观念提出了挑战。故选B。

10. What does the author primarily intend to do in Paragraph 4?

- A. To announce the standard WHR set by World Health Organization.
- B. To explain why pear-shaped people are likely to be healthier than others.
- C. To introduce what WHR refers to and how to measure our waistlines.
- D. To reveal the huge risks of various illnesses visceral fat can bring about.

B 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,作者在第四段主要解释了为什么梨形身材的人可能比其他人更健康。故选B。

11. What's the text mainly about?

- A. A practical tip for losing waist fat.
- B. A healthy WHR recommended by WHO.
- C. A surprise bonus won by pear-shaped bodies.
- D. A typical bodyshape bringing good to health.

C 主旨大意题。通读全文,尤其是第二段的内容可知,文章主要说明了一项研究发现,梨形身材的人往往比其他更健康,即梨形身材赢得的额外好处。故选C。

## D

At a time when Americans consume more than half of their daily calories from ultra-processed (超加工的) foods, there is increasing evidence showing that eating too much of these foods can make us sick. A recent study finds people who consume high amounts of these foods have an increased risk of

anxiety, depression, and certain cancers. The data come from more than 9 million people who participated in dozens of studies.

Ultra-processed foods are ubiquitous in our food supply. Among the most common are highly refined breads, fast food, sugary drinks, cookies, and other packaged snacks. They are often high in salt, sugar, fat and calories and low in fiber and micro-nutrients such as vitamins.

Although no evidence proves that consumption of ultra-processed foods can directly cause anxiety, cancer or other health conditions, a growing body of evidence shows that ultra-processed foods contribute to the development of these conditions.

A study published last year found people in the habit of consuming high levels of ultra-processed foods were about three times more likely to develop cancer, compared to those who consumed the least. When it comes to mood and mental health conditions, a French study showed that adults who maintained an unhealthy diet had more depressive symptoms. “We saw a roughly 20% to 30% increased risk of depressive symptoms in people who had diets that were high in ultra-processed foods,” says Wolfgang Marx, a researcher.

A panel of advisors is currently evaluating all the latest diet and nutrition studies as part of a process to update the country's Dietary Guidelines. It is possible that they could recommend limits on ultra-processed foods. On the regulatory side, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) is moving ahead to finalise a new definition of the term “healthy”. The FDA says a “healthy” claim on food labels could help consumers identify healthier choices with a quick look and may encourage food companies to improve their products.

**【语篇解读】**一项研究发现，大量食用超加工食品的人患焦虑、抑郁和某些癌症的风险更高，因此，作者建议人们不要吃太多超加工食品。

12. What does the underlined word “ubiquitous” in

Paragraph 2 probably mean?

- A. Nutritious.
- B. Widespread.
- C. Cheap.
- D. Profitable.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线词后的“Among the most common are highly refined breads, fast food, sugary drinks, cookies, and other packaged snacks. They are often high in salt, sugar, fat and calories and low in fiber and micro-nutrients such as vitamins.”可知，超加工食品在我们的食品供应中无处不在。句中的“common”表明超加工食品广泛存在于我们生活中，因此画线词与 widespread 意思相近。故选 B。

13. What are the studies in Paragraph 4 mainly intended to show about ultra-processed foods?

- A. They are linked to some health problems.
- B. They become more popular among adults.
- C. They directly lead to depressive symptoms.
- D. They should be consumed in a proper way.

A 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知，第四段中关于超加工食品的研究主要是为了说明它们与一些健康问题有关。故选 A。

14. What is the last paragraph mainly about?

- A. Food companies' future plans.
- B. New guidelines for food sales.
- C. Limits on ultra-processed foods.
- D. Responses to ultra-processed foods.

D 段落大意题。根据最后一段的内容可知，最后一段主要讲述了对超加工食品的反应。故选 D。

15. Where does the text most probably appear?

- A. In a health magazine.
- B. In a biology textbook.
- C. In a medical guideline.
- D. In a food advertisement.

A 文章出处题。根据第一段的内容可知，本文主要介绍了一项研究，大量食用超加工食品的人患焦虑、抑郁和某些癌症的风险更高。因此，本

文最有可能选自健康杂志。故选 A。

## II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Curiosity is defined as the “desire to know”, but many people don’t realise it ranges from shallow to deep. 16 It’s the kind of questioning that helps us to collect data and information. We use it to learn facts.

17 It’s not just about facts, but about unknown stories. When we use it to learn about other people, we get a rich insight into their core values and life experiences. Instead of a simple question like “What do you do for work?” we ask, “What kind of work makes you come alive, and why?”

One type of curiosity is not necessarily better than the other. They’re just different with benefits and learning from both. 18 You wouldn’t ask a new classmate suddenly and unexpectedly, “What’s your biggest childhood trauma (创伤)?” While some of us might be willing to share so openly, others may not find the question appropriate, especially before trust and closeness have been built.

19 People with higher levels of curiosity tend to be happier. It also strengthens our relationships—whether with our classmates, friends, or strangers. A study found that when people show genuine curiosity towards another person, they’re rated as warmer and more attractive. It creates that “give-and-take spiral”; when we ask questions, others are more likely to return the favour. While curiosity is usually regarded as a way to learn about what’s outside of ourselves, such as better understanding someone, it can actually be channeled in other ways, too. It helps us understand ourselves, and reflect on our beliefs, desires, or needs. 20

- A. Curiosity offers a variety of benefits.
- B. It’s time to employ curiosity’s power.
- C. Thus shallow curiosity is a gateway to a deeper world.
- D. However, which you use might depend on the

situation.

- E. What you may be more familiar with is shallow curiosity.
- F. Deep curiosity, in contrast, invites us to go beneath the surface.
- G. It can even be directed to explore what’s beyond the physical world.

答案:16~20 EFDAG

## III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

This year, hundreds of people around the world are applying for a desired job to run Port Lockroy, the world’s most remote post office. The 21 is in Antarctica, and one of the key 22 is the ability to count penguins (企鹅).

Each year, the UK Antarctic Heritage Trust 23 four postmen to live on the island from November to March. Apart from being a nearly 80-year-old British-owned post office, it 24 as a museum. Although employees each have unique 25, they are cooperatively responsible for preserving the 26 place and caring for the thousands of tourists. The staff is also 27 environmental data collection and wildlife monitoring.

Applicants are warned there’s not much time for relaxation and rest. Still, the job is highly 28. The UK Antarctic Heritage Trust gets hundreds of 29 annually for the position. They are mainly 30 to Port Lockroy, both for its history and its scientific significance. Lucy Dorman succeeded in applying for the 2019 to 2020 season. It was a real 31 for her. “Even though the job can be hard at times, there’s a real sense of community. You’ve got to 32, because you can’t get away from each other very easily. I really love that sort of 33,” she said. “And what you can achieve here is 34. The total experience offers both a different 35 towards the world and a new viewpoint on your function on the planet.”

**【语篇解读】**位于南极洲的洛克雷港邮局的招聘吸引了很多人。在那里员工不仅要收集环境数据和监测野生动物,还要负责数企鹅。



21. A. centre B. position  
C. aim D. unit  
B 根据前文“This year, hundreds of people around the world are applying for a desired job to run Port Lockroy, the world’s most remote post office.”可知, 此处表示该职位在南极洲。故选 B。
22. A. requirements B. characteristics  
C. virtues D. activities  
A 根据前文“a desired job”及后文“... is the ability to count penguins (企鹅).”可知, 此处表示该工作的一个关键的要求是能够数企鹅。故选 A。
23. A. persuades B. instructs  
C. encourages D. hires  
D 根据前文“applying for a desired job”和后文“employees”可知, 此处表示聘用四名邮递员。故选 D。
24. A. considers B. transforms  
C. doubles D. changes  
C 根据前文“post office”及后文“as a museum”可知, 此处表示该邮局兼作博物馆, double as 表示“兼作”。故选 C。
25. A. tastes B. talents  
C. roles D. backgrounds  
C 根据后文“they are cooperatively responsible for preserving the 26 place and caring for the thousands of tourist.”可知, 此处表示员工各司其职。故选 C。
26. A. temporary B. historic  
C. grand D. magical  
B 根据前文“a nearly 80-year-old British-owned post office”和“preserving”可知, 空处表示有历史意义的地方。故选 B。
27. A. in favor of  
B. in memory of  
C. in possession of  
D. in charge of  
D 根据前文“also”及后文“environmental data

collection and wildlife monitoring”可知, 工作人员还需要负责收集环境数据和监测野生动物。故选 D。

28. A. well-paid B. sought-after  
C. hard-won D. broken-down  
B 根据前文“This year, hundreds of people around the world are applying for a desired job to run Port Lockroy, the world’s most remote post office.”可知, 这份工作很抢手。故选 B。
29. A. applications B. institutions  
C. contributions D. innovations  
A 根据前文“This year, hundreds of people around the world are applying for a desired job to run Port Lockroy, the world’s most remote post office.”和“Each year, the UK Antarctic Heritage Trust 23 four postmen to live on the island from November to March.”可知, 此处表示英国南极遗产信托基金每年都会收到大量申请该职位的信。故选 A。
30. A. invited B. devoted  
C. linked D. drawn  
D 根据后文“both for its history and its scientific significance.”可知, 求职者们是被它的历史和科学意义吸引。故选 D。
31. A. joy B. lesson  
C. effort D. shock  
A 根据上文“Lucy Dorman succeeded in applying...”及下文“I really love...”可知, 获得这个职位让她很快乐。故选 A。
32. A. get along B. show off  
C. break through D. give in  
A 根据前文“... there’s a real sense of community.”和后文“... you can’t get away from each other very easily.”可知, 在这里你要有社区意识, 因为你们不能轻易地离开对方, 所以你得与人和睦相处。故选 A。
33. A. loneliness B. eagerness  
C. looseness D. togetherness  
D 根据前文“... there’s a real sense of

community.”和“... you can't get away from each other very easily.”可知,此处表示 Lucy Dorman 喜欢那种和睦相处的氛围。故选 D。

34. A. consistent                      B. rewarding  
C. invisible                          D. controversial

B 根据前文“what you can achieve here”和后文“The total experience offers both a different \_\_ 35 \_\_ towards the world and a new viewpoint on your function on the planet.”可知,在这里获得的东西很有益。故选 B。

35. A. entrance                      B. answer  
C. attitude                          D. introduction

C 根据前文“offers both a different”及后文“towards the world”及“a new viewpoint”可知,在这里的工作体验能让人产生对世界的不同看法。故选 C。

#### IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

The latest technological advancement centring on the conversation at work, at school, and sometimes even at home, largely due **36. to** the emergence of chat-bots, **37. is** (be) Artificial Intelligence. These new conversational platforms use Artificial Intelligence (AI) to help users find instant answers, get **38. creations** (create), and learn new things. They can chat with you and provide responses that can help you do things.

While most of the Internet agrees it's not as good as a human at performing many tasks, the debate continues as to **39. whether** AI has the power to replace certain jobs, or even spell the end of humankind. Of course, it brings undoubted benefits, **40. depending** (depend) on how you use it.

**41. Given** (give) it's often described in science fiction films and novels as a world-ending technology that results in killer robots, the current **42. reality** (real) is less dramatic. AI is defined as a type of computer technology that is concerned with making machines work in an intelligent manner, similar to how the human mind works.

**43. Actually** (actual) it means we can “train” computers to learn, respond and make decisions, but it still requires the ability **44. to learn** (learn) from humans to get anywhere near good enough. While AI is a hot topic right now, the idea has existed for decades. The latest chat-bots are a form of Artificial Intelligence **45. that/which** can analyse huge amounts of data and generate responses, though they need a little reminder.

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华。上周六,你参加了学校在人民公园开展的野生动物保护宣传活动。请你用英语给英国笔友克里斯(Chris)写一封电子邮件,分享这次经历,内容包括:

1. 活动介绍;
2. 你的感想。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Chris,

I am writing to share with you an unforgettable experience I had last Saturday. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Best wishes,

Li Hua

##### 【参考范文】

Dear Chris,

I am writing to share with you an unforgettable experience I had last Saturday. Our school organised a wildlife protection awareness campaign at the People's Park. Various activities were arranged, including informative lectures, interactive displays, and a group hike to observe local wildlife. Participants were encouraged to sign a pledge committing themselves to protecting wildlife.

The event left me deeply impressed. It

highlighted the urgency of conserving our natural heritage and inspired me to take practical steps in my daily life to support this cause. I believe education and community efforts are crucial in safeguarding wildlife for future generations.

Best wishes,

Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

On a calm weekend, I went to the countryside to visit my grandmother. Her house, located in the heart of a village, was a harbour of quietness away from the noise of city life. As I approached her home, the familiar sight of her welcoming smile warmed my heart.

My grandmother, a woman of great wisdom and strength, had always been the backbone of our family. Her hands, though weathered with time, were skilled at the art of growing food from the soil. Her garden was her pride and her love for the land.

Upon my arrival, I noticed the wide area of her garden, awaiting the plants that would bring forth a harvest. I eagerly offered to help her with the planting, but she looked at me with concern. Her eyes reflected a mix of affection and apprehension. "Are you sure, my dear?" she asked with doubt. "It's hard work, and I don't want you to tire yourself."

Determined to assist her, I insisted on learning the skills of gardening. She saw the determination in my eyes and, with a gentle nod, agreed to teach me. Under her careful teaching, I began my learning, eager to absorb every piece of knowledge she had to offer.

The process of planting required patience. My grandmother showed me how to prepare the soil, the proper depth to dig, and the correct spacing between the seedlings (幼苗). She explained the importance of each step. She taught me every single

detail.

At first, my movements were clumsy (笨拙的), and I feared I might be more of a trouble than a help. But my grandmother's encouragement was firm. She guided my hands, correcting my technique with a gentle touch and kind words. Slowly, I began to find my rhythm (节奏), and my action became more fluent.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Finally, my grandmother agreed to let me do the planting alone.

When I left that evening, I looked back at the garden.

## 【参考范文】

Finally, my grandmother agreed to let me do the planting alone. I became more careful. I recalled the skills my grandmother had taught me, including the methods of digging, planting vegetable seedlings and watering them. Happily, I made it and my grandmother praised me. Each seedling I planted was a promise of growth, and a symbol of hope for the future. The sun bore down on us, and sweat dropped from my forehead, but the satisfaction of our labor was a reward beyond measure.

When I left that evening, I looked back at the garden. I was so proud to see the seedlings I had grown myself. I knew the days I spent with my grandmother would remain in my heart forever. I helped my grandmother, and in the process, I received a gift far greater than I could have imagined. I had learned the art of gardening. More importantly, I had deepened my bond with my grandmother, a connection that would flourish like the seeds we had planted together. I look forward to gardening with my grandmother again in the future.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, focusing on technological development and exploring the future. In this unit we will deal with challenges to humans in AI ages, predict the future and try to create a better one.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“科技发展与探索未来”主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	理解并运用主谓一致原则。
		语篇	1. 阅读关于人工智能的两篇文章,辩证地看待技术进步给人类带来的影响; 2. 熟悉科幻小说的文体结构,并了解相应的写作要点。
		语用	1. 学会与未来生活相关的表达,并合理应用; 2. 了解科幻小说的基本写作要点。
	语言技能	听	学会提取听力材料中的关键信息,理解听力材料的主旨大意和细节内容。
		说	了解并能合理使用关于“心情激动”和“确认信息”的表达。
		读	通过阅读两篇文章,了解“科技发展”相关文章的写作特点。
		写	1. 能正确运用主谓一致原则描述与科技发展有关的现状; 2. 能写一篇清晰明了的科幻小说。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	熟练运用本单元知识,围绕“未来的一瞥”这一话题进行听、说、读、写训练,从而提升综合运用语言的能力。
文化意识	通过对“Artificial Intelligence: A REAL THREAT?”和“A Boy's Best Friend”的学习,了解关于人工智能的知识,树立用科技改变生活的意识。
思维品质	关注人工智能发展可能带来的社会影响,对将来的人工智能建立正确的认识,即人工智能可以帮助人们提升生活品质。

◦ 必备知识

必背单词	artificial, assistant, victim, potentially, capacity, analyse, illegal, immoral, client, cite, assess, cell, bound, cycle, demand, mechanical, tightly, desperate, clue, faulty, consistent
重点表达	hang out, happen to, so far, in contrast, wipe out, lie in, agree on, go through, change one's mind, be susceptible to, difference between... and...
重点知识	1. while 引导让步状语从句 2. 条件状语从句的省略 3. though 引导让步状语从句时的倒装
单元语法	主谓一致(2)
单元写作	如何续写故事

## 探 · 究 · 构 · 建

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

#### 学习任务目标

1. Watch the video, and realise the future is full of endless possibilities.
2. Read the text, get the main idea, and have a clear idea of AI.

#### ○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一)核心词汇

1. humanity *n.* 人类
2. assistant *n.* 助手, 助理
3. potentially *adv.* 潜在地
4. analyse *v.* 分析
5. illegal *adj.* 非法的, 违法的
6. immoral *adj.* 不道德的, 道德败坏的
7. artificial *adj.* 人造的, 人工的
8. victim *n.* 受害者
9. capacity *n.* 能力, 才能
10. happen to 发生在……身上
11. so far 迄今为止
12. in contrast 与此相反; 相比之下
13. speaking of 说到; 谈到; 至于……
14. on the whole 总体而言
15. lie in 在于
16. be concerned about 担心

17. be capable of 能够
18. after all 毕竟; 到底; 终究
19. in the same way 以同样的方式
20. in the way of 妨碍; 阻碍
21. agree on 同意
22. go wrong 出错; 发生故障
23. at risk 处于危险中

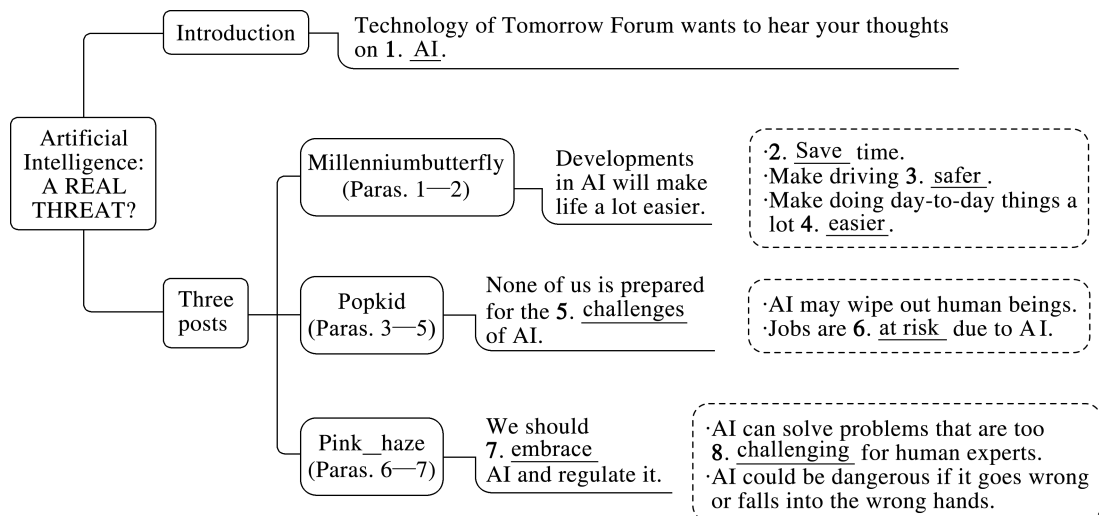
#### (二)阅读词汇

1. automation *n.* 自动化
2. regulate *v.* 控制, 管理
3. susceptible *adj.* 易受影响的
4. leap *n.* 剧变
5. hang out 闲逛
6. in the long run 从长远来看
7. wipe out 扫清; 消灭; 彻底摧毁
8. artificial intelligence 人工智能
9. be susceptible to 易受……影响

## 任务型课堂

### 文本整体理解

#### Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### 文本细节领悟

#### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What can we conclude from the first two paragraphs?
  - Millenniumbutterfly is a boss or a manager.
  - Millenniumbutterfly cannot drive cars now.
  - Millenniumbutterfly is skeptical of AI.
  - Millenniumbutterfly isn't waiting for the appearance of self-driving cars.
- What can be inferred according to Popkid?
  - AI cannot think independently without programming.
  - AI can help us solve all the problems.
  - Humans can't be regarded as enemies by AI.
  - AI will bring about more jobs to people.
- What does "it" refer to in the sentence "If not, it might wipe us all out!" in Paragraph 3?
  - A less advanced form of AI.
  - Humans' thoughts.
  - AI.
  - The use of AI.
- What can we conclude according to Paragraph 4?
  - AI can't bring threat to us in the short run.
  - Journalists can't be replaced by AI.
  - The other parts of the world can't be influenced by AI except the US.
  - AI will cause people to be out of work.

答案: 1~4 BACD

### 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Every recommendation she gives me is great since she can predict if I will like a particular restaurant.  
[句子分析]句中 she gives me 为省略关系代词 that 或 which 的定语从句, 修饰先行词 recommendation; since she can predict if I will like a particular restaurant 为 since 引导的原因状语从句, 其中 if 引导宾语从句。  
[尝试翻译]因为她能预测我是否会喜欢某家餐馆, 所以她给我的每一个建议都很棒。
- Millenniumbutterfly, you say how great it would be to have self-driving cars, but what about all the taxi drivers who would lose their jobs?  
[句子分析]句中 but 连接表示转折关系的并列句。第一个分句中 how great it would be to have self-driving cars 为 how 引导的宾语从句; 第二个分句中 who would lose their jobs 为关系代词 who 引导的定语从句, 修饰先行词 drivers。  
[尝试翻译]千禧蝶, 你说拥有自动驾驶汽车会很好, 但是所有将失去工作的出租车司机怎么办?

### 思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- How should we deal with super-intelligent AI?  
Embrace and regulate it.
- Do you use AI in your daily life? What other roles can AI play in people's lives?

略



## Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十三)

## Section I Starting out &amp; Understanding ideas—Comprehending

## I. 阅读理解

A new wave of startups are using deep learning to build synthetic (合成的) voice actors for digital assistants, video-game characters, and corporate videos. Each one is based on a real voice actor, whose likeness has been preserved using AI. Companies can now license these voices to say whatever they need. They simply feed some text into the voice engine, and out will generate an audio clip of a natural-sounding performance.

Not too long ago, such deepfake voices had something of a bad reputation for their use in Internet trickery. But their improving quality has since aroused the interest of a growing number of companies. Recent breakthroughs in deep learning have made it possible to replicate (仿制) many of the subtleties (细微差别) of human speech. These voices pause and breathe in all the right places. They can change their style or emotion. AI voices are also cheap and easy to work with. Unlike a recording of a human voice actor, synthetic voices can update their script (剧本) in real time. Some AI firms can now handle the voices for adapting ads depending on who is listening, changing not just the accent of the voice but also the words being spoken.

But there are limitations to how far AI can go. It's still difficult to maintain the realism of a voice over long stretches of time that might be required for an audio book. And there's little ability to control an AI voice's performance in the same way a director can guide a human performer. Expressive, creative and long-form projects are still best done by humans.

According to Rupal Patel, a professor at Northeastern University, the point of AI voices is ultimately not to replace existing audio work. The promise of AI voices is that they could open up entirely new possibilities.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了人工智能语音技术取得的进步,但同时指出其不足。

1. What plays a key role in the improvement of synthetic voices?

A. Licensing real voices.

B. Breakthroughs in deep learning.

C. Feeding texts into the voice engine.

D. Preserving the likeness of a real voice.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Recent breakthroughs in deep learning have made it possible... Unlike a recording of a human voice actor, synthetic voices can update their script (剧本) in real time.”可知,深度学习的突破在改善合成声音中起着关键作用。故选 B。

2. Which can best describe AI voices?

A. Cheap and limitless.

B. Creative and irreplaceable.

C. Portable and ready to update.

D. Adaptable and easy to operate.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“‘They can change their style or emotion... but also the words being spoken.’”可推知,人工智能语音易修改,便于处理。故选 D。

3. In which of the following do AI voices perform best?

A. A TV talk show.

B. Audio navigation.

C. Science fiction audio books.

D. A live football match broadcast.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“‘It's still difficult to maintain the realism of a voice over long stretches of time that might be required for an audio book.’”和“‘Expressive, creative and long-form projects are still best done by humans.’”可推知,电视谈话节目、科幻小说有声书和足球比赛实况转播之类富有表现力、创造性和长篇的项目仍不适合人工智能语音,人工智能语音只在语音导航方面表现最好。故选 B。

4. What is the best title for the text?

A. AI Voices Sound More Human than Ever

B. AI Voices Will Soon Replace Human Voices

C. There Is Still a Long Way to Go for AI Voices

D. Advances in AI Voices Will Prevent Internet Trickery

C 标题归纳题。通读全文,结合第二段中的“Recent breakthroughs in deep learning have made it possible to replicate (仿制) many of the subtleties (细微差别) of human speech.”,第三段

中的“*But there are limitations to how far AI can go.*”和最后一段的内容可知,文章介绍了人工智能语音技术取得的进步,但同时指出其不足,表明人工智能语音还不能代替人类的音频工作。由此推知,“*There Is Still a Long Way to Go for AI Voices*”是最佳标题。故选 C。

## II. 七选五

### How to Think like a Wise Person

Wisdom is the ability to make sound judgments and choices. 1 So, what does it take to distinguish wise people from the rest of the pack? Here are several insights. 2

The people with the highest wisdom scores are just as likely to be 30 as 60. It indicates that the number of life experiences has little to do with the quality of those experiences. Wisdom emerges not from experience itself, but rather from reflecting thoughtfully on the lessons gained from experience. Developing wisdom is a deliberate choice that people can make regardless of age.

### Balance self-interest and the common good.

One quality of wisdom is the ability to look beyond personal desires. This doesn't mean wise people are self-sacrificing. In fact, well-being and success both suffer if we're too focused on others or on ourselves. Wise people reject the assumption that the world is a win-lose, zero-sum place. 3

### Aim to understand, rather than judge.

More often than not, many of us judge others' actions so that we can sort them into categories of good and bad. 4 Over time, this emphasis on understanding rather than evaluating brings an advantage in predicting others' actions, enabling wise people to make better decisions.

### Focus on purpose over pleasure.

It turns out that wise people don't experience more positive emotions, perhaps because wisdom requires critical self-reflection and a long-term view.

5 From time to time, what makes us happy will weigh less than our quest for meaning and significance.

- A. Choose your wisdom deliberately.
- B. It's a virtue desired by nearly everyone.
- C. Start developing your wisdom right now.
- D. It seems like an extremely tough problem.
- E. They find ways to benefit others that also advance their own objectives.
- F. However, there's a clear psychological benefit: a stronger sense of purpose in life.
- G. Wise people resist this, operating more like detectives to explain others' behaviours.

答案: 1~5 BCEGF

## Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

### 学习任务目标

1. Learn important expressions about the topic and use them properly.
2. Practise using the expressions to complete relevant exercises.

### ○ 自主式预习 ○

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The rich man felt sympathy for the **victims** in the earthquake and gave away a lot of money to them.  
受害者
2. Every coin has two sides, and **artificial** intelligence is no exception.  
人工的
3. Young people are the most **susceptible** to advertisements.  
易受影响的
4. The result has been a giant **leap** in productivity.  
剧变

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>assistant</u> <i>n.</i> 助手, 助理	<u>assistance</u> <i>n.</i> 帮助, 协助, 援助
	<u>assist</u> <i>v.</i> 帮助, 协助
<u>automation</u> <i>n.</i> 自动化	<u>automatic</u> <i>adj.</i> 自动的
	<u>automatically</u> <i>adv.</i> 自动地; 无意识地
	<u>automate</u> <i>v.</i> 使自动化

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>analyse</u> <i>v.</i> 分析	<u>analysis</u> <i>n.</i> 分析
<u>regulate</u> <i>v.</i> 控制, 管理	<u>regulation</u> <i>n.</i> 规则
	<u>regulator</u> <i>n.</i> 调节器
<u>illegal</u> <i>adj.</i> 非法的, 违法的	<u>legal</u> <i>adj.</i> 合法的
<u>immoral</u> <i>adj.</i> 不道德的, 道德败坏的	<u>moral</u> <i>adj.</i> 道德的
<u>capacity</u> <i>n.</i> 能力, 才能	<u>capable</u> <i>adj.</i> 有能力的; 有才干的

III. 补全短语

1. happen to 发生在……身上
2. so far 迄今为止
3. in contrast 与此相反; 相比之下
4. be susceptible to 易受……影响
5. hang out 闲逛
6. in the long run 从长远来看
7. speaking of 说到; 谈到; 至于……
8. on the whole 总体而言
9. wipe out 扫清; 消灭; 彻底摧毁
10. lie in 在于
11. go away 消失; 走开; 离开
12. be capable of 能够

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: get + 宾语 + 宾语补足语  
Thanks to AI, I've got my own super-smart personal assistant built into my phone.  
多亏了人工智能, 我才可以在我的手机中内置我自己的超级智能私人助手。
2. 句型公式: since 引导原因状语从句  
Every recommendation she gives me is great since she can predict if I will like a particular restaurant.  
因为她能预测我是否会喜欢某家餐馆, 所以她给我的每一个建议都很棒。
3. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作状语  
Self-driving cars can learn to drive in the same way that we do, and can make judgements based on information.  
自动驾驶汽车可以学习与我们相同的驾驶模式, 并且可以根据信息做出判断。
4. 句型公式: while 引导让步状语从句  
But while super-intelligent AI could be the biggest leap forward in human history, if it goes wrong or falls into the wrong hands, it could also be the most dangerous.  
但是, 尽管超智能 AI 可能是人类历史上最大的飞跃, 但如果它出错或者落入坏人手中, 也可能是最危险的。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. assistant *n.* 助手, 助理
- [教材原文] Thanks to AI, I've got my own super-smart personal assistant built into my phone.  
多亏了人工智能, 我才可以在我的手机中内置我自己的超级智能私人助手。
- [归纳拓展]
- (1) an assistant to... ……的助手
- (2) assist *v.* 帮助, 协助  
assist sb. with sth. 在某方面帮助某人  
assist sb. in doing... 帮助某人做……
- (3) assistance *n.* 帮助, 协助, 援助  
with the assistance of... 在……的帮助下  
come/go to one's assistance 来/去帮助某人
- [即学即练]
- (1) 单句语法填空
- ① Mr Smith had begun his political career as an assistant to Mr White.

- ② The doctor shares his phone number with the patients in case they need medical assistance (assist).
- ③ One of her fellow passengers came to her assistance.
- (2) 写作微练  
(读后续写之动作描写) 我慢慢平静下来, 拥抱了他, 告诉他我会帮助他克服困难。  
I slowly calmed down and hugged him, telling him that I would be willing to assist him in overcoming his difficulty.
2. capacity *n.* 能力, 才能
- [教材原文] I believe most of the value of AI lies in its capacity to analyse and interpret vast amounts of data...
- 我认为人工智能的大部分价值在于它分析和解析大量数据的能力……

## [归纳拓展]

(1) have the capacity to do/for doing sth. 有做某事的能力

(2) capable *adj.* 有能力的, 有才干的

be capable of doing... 能做……

## [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① We love Mr Lin, our English teacher, very much because he is capable of making (make) the class interesting.

② He has the capacity to do/for doing (do) the job well.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之动作描写) 我父亲用一块石头把后门的窗户砸开了, 我能伸手进去打开门。

My father smashed the window of the back door open with a rock and I was capable of reaching in and unlock the door.

## 3. while 引导让步状语从句

[教材原文] But **while super-intelligent AI could be the biggest leap forward in human history**, if it goes wrong or falls into the wrong hands, it could also be the most dangerous.

但是, 尽管超智能 AI 可能是人类历史上最大的飞跃, 但如果它出错或者落入坏人手中, 也可能是最危险的。

[句式分析] 句中 while 是从属连词, 引导让步状语从句, 主句中含有 if 引导的条件状语从句。

## [归纳拓展]

while 引导让步状语从句, 多用于句首, 意为“尽管, 虽然”。while 还有下列功能:

(1) 引导时间状语从句, 意为“当……的时候”。

(2) 用作并列连词, 意为“而, 却”。

## [即学即练]

(1) 写出下列句中 while 的含义

① **While** she was in prison, she wrote her first novel. 当……的时候

② **While** I understand what you say, I can't agree with you. 虽然, 尽管

③ I went swimming **while** the others played tennis. 而, 却

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之动作描写) 二十年后, 当坐在餐厅里时, 我听到身后传来最美妙的钢琴曲。

Twenty years later while sitting in a restaurant, I heard the most beautiful piano music behind me.

② (应用文写作之活动报道) 一些人用空罐子做铅笔架, 而另一些人用纸板箱做相框。

Some made pencil holders from empty cans, while others made photo frames from cardboard boxes.

## 4. 条件状语从句的省略

[教材原文] **If not**, it might wipe us all out!

如果不这样的话, 它可能会把我们都消灭!

[句式分析] 句中 If not 是 If we're not lucky 的省略形式, 表示否定意义。

## [归纳拓展]

(1) 在时间状语从句和条件状语从句中, 如果从句主语与主句主语一致或从句主语为 it, 且谓语动词为 be 动词时, 可以省去其主语和 be 动词。

(2) if 构成的省略形式:

if not 如果不这样的话, 不然 (表示否定意义)

if so 如果这样的话 (表示肯定意义)

if any 如果有的话

if ever 如果有过或发生过的话

if necessary/possible 如果有必要/可能

## [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

Are you ready? If so, let's set off at once.

(2) 句型转换

① Wash it in water and pick out the small particles, if there are any.

→ Wash it in water and pick out the small particles, if any.

② I'll go if you are going. If you aren't going, I'd rather stay at home.

→ I'll go if you are going. If not, I'd rather stay at home.

(3) 写作微练

(应用文写作之活动安排) 如果可能的话, 将定期安排一些专门的文学沙龙。

If possible, some particular literature salons will be arranged on a regular basis.

## 多义词汇 专练

## 1. leap

A. *v.* 跳

B. *v.* 突然做 (某事)

C. *n.* 剧增

① They **leapt** into action immediately. B

② A shark emerged when a dolphin **leapt** out of the water. A

③ This year saw a **leap** in profits. C

## 2. capacity

- A. *n.* 能力, 才能  
B. *n.* 容量, 容积  
C. *n.* 职位, 职责

- ① Their reasoning **capacity** must be developed. A  
② She worked here in the **capacity** as nurse. C  
③ The **capacity** of the freezer is 1.1 cubic feet. B

## Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十四)

### Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

#### I. 单词拼写

- Kalan called his assistant (助理), Hashim, to take over while he went out.
- She was one of the victims (受害者) of the car accident.
- He did not want his life to be much longer by artificial (人工的) means.
- The situation is unstable and potentially (潜在地) dangerous.
- Limited resources are restricting our capacity (能力) for developing new products.
- In analysing (分析) a situation, it's essential to distinguish the main aspect from the minor ones.
- Despite his illegal (非法的) act, few people think badly of him.
- She was questioned about his immoral (不道德的) conduct towards her.
- There are some strict rules regulating (控制) the use of chemicals in food.

#### II. 短语填空

be based on; be capable of; in the long run; on the whole; happen to; hang out; lie in; in contrast

- The household robot is more expensive but you will benefit in the long run.
- I neither knew nor cared what had happened to him.
- Just as the saying goes, "One tree doesn't make a forest." Our success is based on cooperating with others.
- On the whole, travelling is the best choice to enrich our lives and get ready for the new challenges.
- The monitor is capable of organising various activities, for which we admire him.
- Such illegal actions usually lie in our daily life.
- We use AI potentially, but in contrast they think it is illegal to use AI.
- He'd be a great assistant to hang out with over a couple of beers.

#### III. 完成句子

- What about going hiking this weekend?  
这周末去徒步旅行怎么样?
- More and more people get their life controlled by phones, which is worrying.  
越来越多的人让手机控制了他们的生活, 这令人担忧。
- While he was unwilling, he had no choice but to walk home.  
尽管他很不情愿, 但他别无选择, 只能走回家了。
- Since you haven't found a solution to the problem so far, perhaps we should turn to someone else for help.  
既然到目前为止你还没有找到这个问题的解决方案, 那也许我们该向其他人求助了。
- Once you agree on when to come to Beijing, do let us know ahead of time.  
一旦你们就来北京的时间达成一致, 一定要让我们提前知道。

#### IV. 完形填空

Mum-of-three Alli Smith 1 her heaviest weight of 125 kg after three difficult pregnancies caused her to rise to a size 20. She wasn't 2 with herself, and she wasn't living life to the fullest. She didn't want to go to events because she didn't have any clothes that would suit her.

Most of the time she was 3 herself with diets. However, snacking on nearly two blocks of 4 a night, the 27-year-old factory worker chewed doughnuts (甜甜圈), chips and biscuits throughout the day. Apart from that, she was 5 chocolate and was into it mainly for the taste.

She tried every diet under the sun and was spending all this money on all these 6 to just fail every time.

7 to change her ways, Alli saw her doctor, who recommended she conduct gastric (胃部的) sleeve surgery to prevent health complications (并发症) in the future 8 her size.

She soon 9 her nightly chocolate habit and has since dropped 35 kg in just seven months and 10 her sugar heavy diet for fresh fruits and salads.

Now, Alli also has more 11 to play with her children with Henry, four, Kate, two, and George, one. "I'm more energetic. I run around with my 12 and they're enjoying it," says Alli. She feels more 13 than ever in her new 90 kg frame, recently wearing shorts outside the house for the first time in six years. She delightedly says, "My son said to me, 'Mum, you look so pretty.' And now I wear what I want, not just what 14. I've finally 15 in losing weight and am on the road to where I want to be."

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述的是 Alli Smith 尝试了各种节食方法失败后,通过手术和改变自己的生活习惯,瘦了 35 千克。

1. A. remained                      B. reached  
C. impressed                      D. enjoyed  
B 根据下文的“after three difficult pregnancies”可知,Alli 怀孕三次发胖,导致体重最高达到了 125 千克。故选 B。
2. A. satisfied                      B. connected  
C. careful                          D. angry  
A 根据下文的“... and she wasn't living life to the fullest.”可知,变胖的她对自己不满意。故选 A。
3. A. begging                      B. restricting  
C. tolerating                      D. ignoring  
B 根据上文的“her heaviest weight of 125 kg”和“She didn't want to go to events because she didn't have any clothes that would suit her.”可知,发胖影响自己的生活,所以她限制自己的饮食。故选 B。
4. A. cake                          B. chip  
C. biscuit                          D. chocolate  
D 根据上文的“snacking on nearly two blocks of”以及下文原词“chocolate”可知,此处指两块巧克力。故选 D。
5. A. addicted to                      B. tired of  
C. worried about                      D. devoted to  
A 根据下文的“... and was into it mainly for the taste.”可知,她吃巧克力主要是为了它的味道,这是对巧克力上瘾。故选 A。
6. A. problems                      B. theories  
C. programmes                      D. circumstances  
C 根据上文的“She tried every diet under the sun and was spending all this money on all these...”可

知,为了减肥,她花了很多钱在节食的项目上。故选 C。

7. A. Cruel                          B. Incredible  
C. Desperate                      D. Unwilling  
C 根据下文的“Alli saw her doctor...”可知,她求助医生是因为渴望改变自己。故选 C。
8. A. contrary to                      B. regardless of  
C. instead of                      D. due to  
D 根据上文的“her heaviest weight of 125 kg”和常识可知,因为超重会出现并发症,所以医生建议她进行缩胃手术。故选 D。
9. A. relied on                      B. gave up  
C. responded to                      D. made up  
B 根据下文的“and has since dropped 35 kg in just seven months”可知,她放弃吃巧克力,体重下降。故选 B。
10. A. exchanged                      B. stuck  
C. occupied                          D. ruined  
A 根据下文的“... her sugar heavy diet for fresh fruits and salads.”可知,她用新鲜水果和沙拉代替高糖饮食。故选 A。
11. A. life                              B. time  
C. energy                              D. money  
C 根据下文的“... to play with her children with Henry, four, Kate, two, and George, one. 'I'm more energetic.'”可知,她减肥后有精力和孩子们玩。故选 C。
12. A. friends                          B. parents  
C. sisters                              D. kids  
D 根据上文的“... play with her children with Henry, four, Kate, two, and George, one.”可知,这是她和孩子们玩。故选 D。
13. A. confident                      B. painful  
C. lonely                              D. shameful  
A 根据下文的“... than ever in her new 90 kg frame, recently wearing shorts outside the house for the first time in six years.”可知,减重的 Alli 对自己感到更自信了。故选 A。
14. A. rises                              B. matters  
C. fits                                  D. exists  
C 根据上文的“And now I wear what I want...”可知,减重后的 Alli 不用只穿合身的衣服了,可以想穿什么就穿什么。故选 C。
15. A. involved                          B. resulted  
C. insisted                              D. succeeded  
D 根据上文的“She feels more 13 than ever in her new 90 kg frame...”可知,Alli 减肥成功变得自信。故选 D。



## Section III Using language

### 学习任务目标

1. Study the sentences, and use the subject-verb agreement principle properly.
2. Communicate with others in real-life English context.

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The affair was settled to the complete satisfaction of the **client**. 客户
2. Our manager **reckons** the odds are against the plan going ahead. 认为, 以为
3. Red blood **cells** are blood components that transport oxygen throughout the body. 细胞
4. You've done so much work—you are **bound** to pass the exam. 可能的

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>assess</u> <i>v.</i> 评价, 评定	<u>assessment</u> <i>n.</i> 评价
<u>demand</u> <i>n.</i> 需要, 需求	<u>demanding</u> <i>adj.</i> 要求高的; 苛刻的
<u>cite</u> <i>v.</i> 引用, 引述	<u>citation</u> <i>n.</i> 引文, 引句, 引语
<u>cycle</u> <i>n.</i> 自行车	<u>cyclist</u> <i>n.</i> 骑自行车的人

#### III. 补全短语

1. on the horizon 将要发生
2. around the corner 即将来临

3. at the speed of 以……的速度
4. be bound to 很有可能, 肯定会
5. result in 引起, 导致
6. ahead of 在……前面; 先于
7. bank on 依靠, 指望

#### IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: when it comes to (doing) sth.

I think it's also fair to say that we can get our hopes up when it comes to finding cures for serious diseases, such as cancer.

我认为, 公平地说, 当谈到寻找癌症等严重疾病的治疗方法时, 我们可以燃起自己的希望。

2. 句型公式: 主谓一致

A large number of clients have been attracted to it.

它吸引了大量的客户。

3. 句型公式: 主谓一致

Each of the children is given a report showing their possible talents.

每个孩子都收到一份展示他们潜在才能的报告。

### 任务型课堂

1. **bound** *adj.* 可能的; 有义务的; 受约束的; 准备前往(某地)

[教材原文] Some of these ideas may sound far ahead of their time, but I'm sure they're **bound** to happen sooner or later!

其中一些想法可能听起来很超前, 但我相信它们迟早会发生!

[归纳拓展]

be bound to 很有可能, 肯定会

be bound to do sth. 有义务做某事

be bound from... to... 从……开往……

be bound for 准备前往……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① That ship is bound for South America.

② The train is bound from Shanghai to Nanjing.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信) 此外, 作为一个历史爱好者, 我对当地历史和文化的了解一定会让您的访问愉快而难忘。

Additionally, as a history lover, my insight into the local history and culture is bound to make your visit enjoyable and unforgettable.



## 2. demand n. 需要,需求 v. 需要,要求

[教材原文]... with companies intending to provide on-demand services.

……公司打算提供按需服务。

[归纳拓展]

(1)demand to do sth. 要求做某事

demand that... 要求……(从句中的谓语动词用“should+动词原形”,should可省略)

(2)meet/satisfy one's demands 满足某人的要求  
on demand 一经要求

in demand (某物)很受欢迎

(3)demanding adj. 要求高的;苛刻的

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① The strikers demanded to see (see) the manager.

② My demand is that the information referred to

in my report (should) be emailed (email) to Mr Brown without delay.

③ He found he could no longer cope with his demanding (demand) job.

④ It is impossible to satisfy all your demands (demand).

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写)她接电话时,我要求知道她为什么忘了我的生日庆祝活动。

When she answered, I demanded to know why she had forgotten my birthday celebration.

## 多义词汇 专练

She wants to travel to broaden her **horizons**.

A

A. n. 眼界

B. n. 地平线

## 语法研习课

## 主谓一致(2)

## 语法感知

①... almost 50 per cent of US jobs **are** at risk from automation in the next 20 years.

②... 50 per cent of my time **was** spent researching new restaurants.

③... none of us **is** prepared for the challenges of AI.

④ The secretary and manager **was** present at the meeting.

⑤ The teacher as well as the students **likes** this painting.

⑥ Either the principal or his assistants **are** to attend the meeting.

⑦ To work hard **is** necessary.

⑧ Many a student **fails** to pass the examination.

⑨ There **is** a sausage, an orange and a piece of cheese on the table.

⑩ Every recommendation she gives me **is** great since she can predict if I will like a particular restaurant.

1. 句①和②中“数词+of+名词”作主语时,谓语动词的单复数形式与 of 后的名词的数保持一致。

2. 由句③可知,“none of+复数名词或代词”作主语时,谓语动词用单数或复数均可,但在正式文体中则应用单数形式。

3. 由句④可知, and 连接两个名词作主语,且名词只有一个冠词时,谓语动词用单数形式。

4. 由句⑤可知,单数名词作主语,后面跟 as well as, rather than, but, except, along with, including 等时,谓语动词用单数形式。

5. 由句⑥可知, either... or... 连接两个词作主语时,谓语动词的单复数形式采取就近原则。

6. 由句⑦可知,不定式作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。

7. 由句⑧可知,“many a+单数名词”作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。

8. 由句⑨可知, there be 句型中 be 的单复数形式采取就近原则。

9. 由句⑩可知,“every+可数名词单数”作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。

## 语法精讲

1. 由 and 连接的并列单数主语前如果分别有 no, each, every, more than a(n), many a(n) 修饰时,其谓语动词要用单数形式。

Every man, woman, and child **needs** love.

每个男人、女人和孩子都需要爱。

No teacher and no student **is** admitted.

师生一律不得入内。

2. 有些由 and 连接起来的单数名词,由于关系密切,已被看成一个整体,因而作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。

Fish and chips **is** a popular fast food in England.  
炸鱼薯条在英国是很受欢迎的快餐。

3. 主语后面跟有 with, together with, except, but, like, as well as, rather than, more than, no less than, besides, including 等引起的短语时,谓语动词的单复数形式与最前面的主语保持一致。

The factory with all its equipment **has been burnt**.  
这家工厂及其所有设备都被烧毁了。

The teacher, as well as the parents, **is** to blame for the accident.

老师和家长都应该为这次事故负责。

4. 由 any, some, no, every 与 body, one, thing 构成的不定代词作主语或主语的一部分时,谓语动词用单数形式。

Let's establish the ground rules so that everybody **knows** what to expect.

我们得定一下基本规则,以便让每个人都知道要求如何。

5. what, who, which, any, more, all 等代词可以是单数,也可以是复数,主要由句子的意思来决定。

Which **is** your favourite subject?

你最喜欢的科目是什么?

Which **are** your favourite subjects?

你最喜欢哪些科目?

6. “定冠词 the+形容词或分词”表示某一类人时,谓语动词用复数形式。

Even the poor **have** their pride.

即使穷人也有他们的自尊。

7. 当两个主语由 or, either... or, neither... nor, whether... or, not only... but also... 连接时,谓语动词的单复数形式和邻近的主语保持一致。

Either John or his friends **are** to blame for the bad results.

要么由约翰要么由他的朋友们为这次不好的结果负责。

8. there be 句型中,be 动词的单复数形式取决于其后的主语,应与靠近的那个主语保持一致。(here 引导的句子用法相同)

There **is** a pen, a knife and several books on the desk.

书桌上有一支钢笔、一把刀和几本书。

There **are** twenty girls and only one boy in our class.

我们班有二十个女孩,只有一个男孩。

9. “分数/百分数+of+名词”作主语时,谓语动词的单复数形式与 of 后的名词的数保持一致。

Two fifths of the land **is covered with** trees.

五分之二的地面上都栽上了树。

20 per cent of the workers in the factory **are** women.

这家工厂 20% 的工人是女性。

10. 动词不定式短语、动名词短语、从句或其他短语作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。

To play basketball **is** good.

打篮球很好。

Whether she comes or not **is** of no matter.

她来不来都没有关系。

## 语法冲关

### I. 用括号内所给动词的正确形式填空

- No one except Jack and Tom knows (know) the answer.
- Three-fifths of the money has been used (use) up so far.
- The number of the people who own cars is increasing (increase) now.
- More than one answer was given (give) to the question at the meeting.
- Seventy per cent of the students in our school are (be) from the countryside.
- The young are (be) mostly ambitious.
- Tom as well as two of his friends was invited (invite) to the concert last night.
- A poet and artist is coming (come) to speak to us about Chinese literature and paintings tomorrow afternoon.

### II. 完成句子

- Two thirds of the students are satisfied with the class.  
三分之二的学生对这个班满意。
- The number of people present was much greater than we expected.  
出场的人数之多大大出乎我们的意料。
- An expert, together with some assistants, was sent to help in this work.  
一位专家和几位助手被派去协助这项工作。

## Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十五)

## Section III Using language

## I. 选词填空

assess; on the horizon; demand; ahead of; be bound to; result in; when it comes to; client; cite; cell

- Who said that making a robot so much like a man was bound to cause trouble?
- In America the demand for oil has grown by 22 percent since 1990.
- That means you must be able to assess when people are not telling the whole truth and then try to discover it.
- His efforts have resulted in 1,360 acres of naturally-grown land that has become home to many plants and animals.
- There are new problems on the horizon, so we must take action as quickly as possible.
- As is known to all, living things are composed of cells.
- We offer only the best food to our clients.
- His works are more cited as an economist than any other economist in the world.
- His ideas were so well ahead of his time that few people could understand it.
- When it comes to what makes a good student, everyone may have an opinion.

## II. 单句语法填空

- None of the students is allowed (allow) to use phones in class.
- Each of the participants needs (need) a pen and a notebook to attend the meeting.
- Sooner or later those dishonest people will pay a price for their acts.
- Occasionally there are direct buses from Taiyuan to Qikou, but do not bank on it.
- The workers demanded that their working conditions be improved (improve).
- Not only Tom but also his classmates are (be) working hard for the coming exam now.
- E-mail, as well as telephones, is (be) playing an important part in daily communication.

## III. 阅读理解

In 2020, Americans spent 8.3 billion hours

trapped in traffic. During traffic jams, the average car used an extra 19 gallons of gas. This amounts to 190 billion dollars in lost time and fuel each year. Fortunately, researchers are working to reduce the traffic jams, whether by the development of driverless cars or the use of artificial intelligence (AI) in traffic lights.

Lack of traffic signal timing is a main cause of traffic jams. A new system uses software to decide when the traffic signal timing is not doing well or when it is making progress. The method was better than all other former approaches in testing.

The researchers built an advanced traffic simulator (模拟器) to train their program, teaching it to deal with different traffic and weather conditions. When the system was tested on a real crossroad, it adapted to real traffic crossings. It could be effective in many real-world environments in the future. The researchers hope to begin testing their system on real roads this year.

Dr George Vogiatzis, a professor of Aston University, said, "This program can understand the situations it hasn't experienced before. We have tested this with a physical obstacle that causes traffic jams instead of the traffic light waiting time, and the system still works well. As long as there is a cause of traffic jam, the computer will finally find out what the cause is."

**【语篇解读】**文章主要介绍了研究人员通过开发无人驾驶汽车和在交通信号灯中使用人工智能来减少交通堵塞。

- How do researchers work to reduce traffic jams?
  - By spending 8.3 billion hours trapped in traffic.
  - By developing driverless cars or using AI in traffic lights.
  - By using an extra 19 gallons of gas.
  - By losing an amount of 190 billion dollars fuel each year.

**B 细节理解题。**根据第一段中的“Fortunately, researchers are working to reduce the traffic jams, whether by the development of driverless cars or the use of artificial intelligence (AI) in

traffic lights.”可知，研究人员通过开发无人驾驶汽车和在交通信号灯中使用人工智能来减少交通堵塞。故选 B。

2. What is the main cause of traffic jams?  
A. Lack of traffic signal timing.  
B. The light from the traffic signals.  
C. The location of traffic signals.  
D. The number of vehicles on the road.  
A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Lack of traffic signal timing is a main cause of traffic jams.”可知，交通信号配时不足是交通堵塞的主要原因。故选 A。
3. When do the researchers hope to begin testing their system on real roads?  
A. This year.  
B. In the future.  
C. It's hard to know.  
D. It depends on the weather.  
A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“The researchers hope to begin testing their system on real roads this year.”可知，研究人员希望今年开

- 始在真实的道路上测试他们的系统。故选 A。
4. What do George Vogiatzis' words imply in the last paragraph?  
A. The system can solve all the causes of traffic jams.  
B. The program is expected to be available this year.  
C. The program can tell different types of causes of traffic jams.  
D. The program can only deal with the situations it has experienced before.  
C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“This program can understand the situations it hasn't experienced before. We have tested this with a physical obstacle that causes traffic jams instead of the traffic light waiting time, and the system still works well. As long as there is a cause of traffic jam, the computer will finally find out what the cause is.”可推断出，该程序可以分辨不同类型的交通堵塞原因。故选 C。

Section IV      Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Learn the main expressions and structures.  
2. Read the text, understand the main idea of the text, and learn to appreciate literature works.

○ 自主式预习 ○

- I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思
1. Her eyes searched her assistant's face as though looking for some **clues**.                      线索
2. The depth of the **crater** is expected to be about 30 feet.    坑
3. She was quick-witted (机智的) and had an extraordinarily **agile** mind.                      灵活的
4. The pursuer cleared the fence in one **hop**.                      跳跃
5. While playing badminton, I hurt my **tendon**.                      腱
6. Sunlight consists of different **wavelengths** of radiation.                                      波长
7. If others smile at us, we cannot **frown** back.                      皱眉

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>mechanical</u> <i>adj.</i> 机械的	<i>mechanic</i> <i>n.</i> 技工; 机修工

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>imitation</u> <i>n.</i> 仿制品	<i>imitate</i> <i>v.</i> 仿效
<u>tightly</u> <i>adv.</i> 紧紧地	<i>tight</i> <i>adj.</i> 紧的
	<i>tighten</i> <i>v.</i> 加强, 拧紧
<u>faulty</u> <i>adj.</i> 有故障的, 有缺陷的	<i>fault</i> <i>n.</i> 责任, 过错; 故障, 毛病; 缺点

- III. 补全短语
1. change one's mind 改变主意
2. in shock 震惊
3. go through 经受; 通过
4. as though/if 好像
5. make comments on 对……做出评论
6. keep... from 隐瞒; 阻止; 抑制

7. race up 向上跑,急剧上升

8. hold out 伸出

9. cry out 大喊

10. rush out of 冲出……

#### IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:with 复合结构

He looked thicker and stubbier with his spacesuit on ...

穿着宇航服的他虽然看起来臃肿矮胖了一些……

2. 句型公式:though 引导让步状语从句时的倒装

Jimmy, expert though he was, couldn't outrace Robutt, who didn't need a spacesuit...

吉米虽然很熟练,但他比不过罗布,罗布不需要宇航服……

3. 句型公式:as though 引导方式状语从句

Robutt is just adjusted to act as though it loves you.

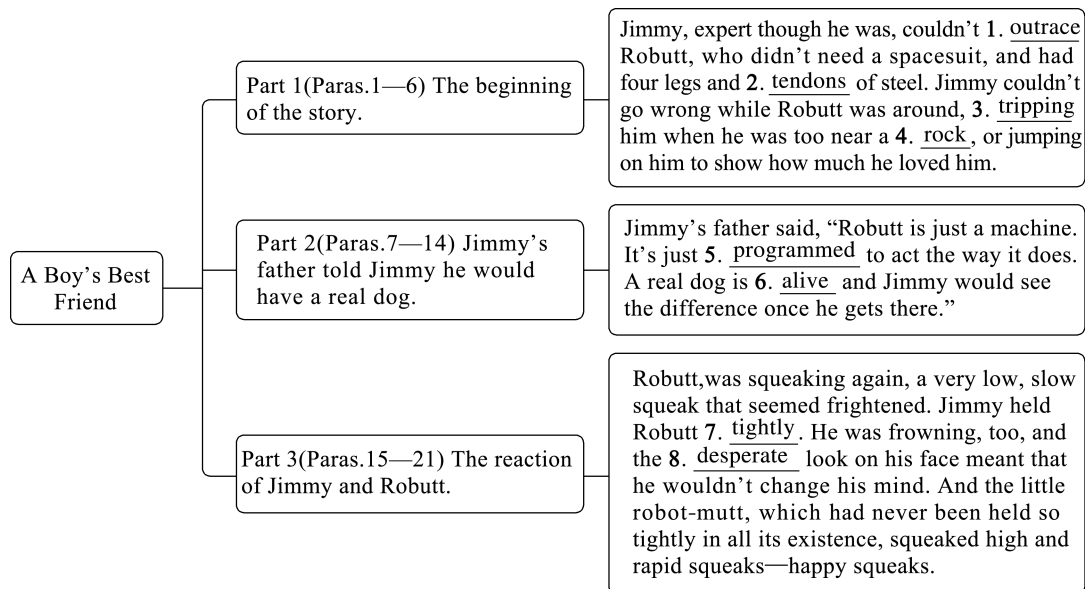
罗布只是被设定好,假装很爱你。

### 任务型课堂

#### Part 1 课文理解

##### 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



##### 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. Who wanted to know where Jimmy was?

- A. Mr Anderson.
- B. Mrs Anderson.
- C. Robutt.
- D. A Moon-born man.

2. What can we see from the whole text?

- A. Robutt is a whole dog.
- B. Robutt is a toy which is a mechanical imitation.
- C. Jimmy doesn't like Robutt at all.
- D. Every child on the Moon has a Robutt.

3. Why did Robutt run faster than Jimmy?

- A. Because it could roll around.
- B. Because it knew well about the race.

C. Because it didn't need a spacesuit.

D. Because it was born on the Moon.

4. What was Robutt actually according to the text?

- A. A dog from Earth.
- B. A man from Earth.
- C. A robot like a human being.
- D. A little robot dog.

答案:1~4 ABCD

##### 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Jimmy, expert though he was, couldn't outrace Robutt, who didn't need a spacesuit, and had four legs and tendons of steel.

[句子分析]本句是一个复合句。though 引导让步状语从句,句子使用了部分倒装;who 引导非限制性定语从句,对 Robutt 进行补充说明。



[尝试翻译]吉米虽然很熟练,但他比不过罗布,罗布不需要宇航服,而且有四条腿和钢腱。

2. Jimmy couldn't go wrong while Robutt was around, tripping him when he was too near a rock, or jumping on him to show how much he loved him, or circling around and squeaking low and scared when Jimmy hid behind a rock, when all the time Robutt knew well enough where he was.

[句子分析]while 引导时间状语从句,而从句中又含有三个 when 引导的时间状语从句,以及 how much 引导的宾语从句;or 连接三个并列的现在分词短语作伴随状语。

[尝试翻译]当罗布在身边时,吉米就没有危险。当吉米太靠近一块石头时,它会扑倒他或者扑向他,以表示它有多爱他;或者当吉米躲在石头后面

时,它会原地打转、低吼、战战兢兢。不论什么时候,罗布都对吉米的位置了如指掌。

### 思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What are the similarities and differences between Robutt and a real dog?

①Similarities: Both are able to respond to orders given by human beings and both can outrace, guide and protect human beings.

②Differences: They have different appearances. A real dog loves human beings as a result of its nature, while Robutt is just adjusted to act as though it loves human beings.

2. What other sci-fi novels about robots can you think of?

略

## Part 2 语言梳理

### 1. desperate *adj.* 拼命的,绝望的

[教材原文] He was frowning, too, and the desperate look on his face meant that he wouldn't change his mind.

他也皱着眉头,脸上绝望的表情意味着他不会改变主意。

[归纳拓展]

(1)be desperate for sth. 极想要某物,渴望得到某物

be desperate to do sth. 极想做某事

(2)desperation *n.* 绝望,拼命,不顾一切  
in desperation 绝望地

(3)desperately *adv.* 绝望地,拼命地

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①In desperation (desperate), he called Louise and asked for her help.

②The man lost in the desert was desperate for water.

③He is desperate to pass (pass) the entrance exam.

④The man looked around desperately (desperate) for someone to help him.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写)我绝望地环顾四周,希望能引起某个人、任何一个人的注意,他们能把我带出去:拯救我。

I looked around in desperation, waiting to catch the eye of someone, anyone, who could get me

out and save me.

### 2. faulty *adj.* 有故障的,有缺陷的

[教材原文] Another prison breakout: faulty robotics blamed.

另一个越狱事件:被指责为机器人技术有缺陷。

[归纳拓展]

fault *n.* 责任,过错;故障,毛病;缺点

at fault 有过错;应当负责

find fault with 挑毛病,挑剔

to a fault (良好品质)过分,过度

#### 名师点拨

fault 表示具体的“缺点;缺陷;故障”时,可用作可数名词;泛指抽象的“过失,过错,责任”时,作不可数名词。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①The driver who didn't stop at the red light was at fault in the accident.

②He is constantly finding fault with my work.

③James is cautious to a fault.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写)当她的同伴们玩乐时,苏珊真希望她是在家里承认自己的错误。

When her companions enjoyed themselves, Susan wished she were at home admitting her fault.

### 3. consistent *adj.* 一贯的,一致的

[教材原文] Now make comments on your

partner's story and see whether the language style is **consistent**.

现在对你搭档的故事发表评论,看看语言风格是否一致。

#### [归纳拓展]

- (1) be consistent with... 与……一致  
 (2) consistency *n.* 连贯性,一致性  
 (3) consistently *adv.* 一致地,始终如一地  
 (4) consist of... 由……组成  
 consist in (=lie in) 在于  
 consist with... 与……一致

#### [即学即练]

##### (1) 单句语法填空

- ① The true wealth does not consist in what we have, but in what we are.  
 ② What he has said doesn't consist with what he has done.  
 ③ The atmosphere consists of more than 70% of nitrogen (氮).  
 ④ The result is entirely consistent (consist) with our earlier research on the project. Therefore, our method proves to be correct.  
 ⑤ Coal consisting (consist) mostly of carbon is the main energy today.

##### (2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之通知) 此外,参赛作品应**包括一篇原创文章**,重点关注食物浪费的主题,并展示我们如何为减少食物浪费做出贡献。

Besides, entries should consist of an original piece of writing, focusing on the theme of food waste and showing how we can contribute to its reduction.

② (应用文写作之总结升华) 这句话提醒我,**成功来自持续的努力和决心**,以及我们永不言弃。

The quotation reminds me that success comes from consistent effort and determination, and that we should never give up.

#### 4. though 引导让步状语从句时的倒装

[教材原文] Jimmy, **expert though he was**, couldn't outrace Robutt, who didn't need a spacesuit...

吉米虽然很熟练,但他比不过罗布,罗布不需要宇航服……

#### [归纳拓展]

though 表示“尽管,虽然”时,其引导的让步状语从句可以用陈述语序,也可以用倒装语序,即把让步状语从句中作表语的名词(提前名词前不带冠词)或形容词、作状语的副词、作谓语的实义动词提前。

#### [即学即练]

##### (1) 用倒装语序完成句子

① Hot though the night air was, we slept deeply because we were so tired after the long journey.

尽管夜间的空气很热,但我们睡得很沉,因为长途旅行之后,我们太累了。

② Try though she might, Sue couldn't get the door open.

尽管她尝试了,苏还是打不开门。

##### (2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之人物介绍) 保罗有很多方法使班级活跃起来。**虽然他是一位年轻的老师**,但他在学生中很受欢迎。

Paul has many ways to make a class active. Young teacher though he is, he is popular with his students.

#### 多义词汇 专练

The only **clue** he has is a fossil, “the snake stone” which she left behind along with a note on which she had written, “Take good care of Sammie.” A

A. *n.* 线索

B. *n.* (帮助警方破案的) 迹象

C. *n.* 解答提示

## Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十六)

### Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### I. 单词拼写

- The boy lost in the desert felt desperate (绝望的) as he couldn't tell the right direction.
- A reward of 2,000 dollars has been offered to whoever can find the clue(s) (线索) to the identity of the killer.
- Everybody bought some clothes just because they were cheap, but they turned out to be faulty (有

缺陷的).

- The result of the second experiment was exactly consistent (一致的) with that of the first one.
- The patient's husband was so thankful to the doctors that he held their hands tightly (紧紧地), tears in his eyes.
- The doctor advised them to buy a mechanical (机械的) wheelchair for the old man.



## II. 单句语法填空

1. She spoke mechanically (mechanical), as if thinking of something else.
2. I'll show it to Benjamin. He's bound to know (know).
3. It would be unwise to comment on the situation without knowing all the facts.
4. They admit they are now desperate for a lucky break.
5. Be sure that your reply is consistent with your original argument.
6. To our disappointment, they do not understand or appreciate what we go through.
7. Come on, George, we'd better get back now.

## III. 短语填空

make an effort to; in shock; as though; go wrong;  
set out; at the beginning of; change one's mind;  
make comments on; start up; break down

1. I'm still in shock after hearing that bad news.
2. The couple resolved their differences and made an effort to get along.
3. In his yesterday's report, he clearly set out his ideas on how to introduce artificial intelligence into our daily life.
4. There is no chance that he will change his mind.
5. At one stage it looked as though they would win.
6. I went over to start up a conversation, asking her who she knew at the party.
7. This paper is intended to make comments on the advantages of accounting sample teaching.
8. We'll reach the sales targets in a month which we set at the beginning of the year.
9. Old-fashioned phones matter when wireless networks break down in disasters.
10. Why do I always get the blame for everything that goes wrong?

## IV. 完成句子

1. John lost his new cycle. That's why his parents were in shock.  
约翰弄丢了她的新自行车。那就是他的父母感到震惊的原因。
2. Assistant though/as he is, he has mastered more clues than the captain.  
尽管他是一名助手,但他掌握的线索比队长多。
3. It is not until humanity is susceptible to AI that we

realise the importance of science.

直到人类容易受到人工智能的影响时,我们才意识到科学的重要性。

## V. 语法填空

In the office of remote sensing scientist Liu Shaochuang, there is **1. a** huge photograph of a camel he took a decade ago. Wearing camouflage (迷彩服), he lay for hours by a pool of water in the Gobi Desert **2. to obtain** (obtain) the image. Living in the harsh deserts in northwestern China and southwestern Mongolia, the even-toed camel is listed as **3. critically** (critical) endangered by the International Union for Conservation of Nature. Experts evaluate that the population of this species is currently less than 1,000, of **4. which** around 650 are in China.

Since 2012, Liu **5. has led/has been leading** (lead) a team in tracking and studying wild camels **6. using** (use) satellite remote sensing technology. **7. Unlike** zoologists who focus on species, Liu has instead studied the interrelationship between endangered animals and their environment, which he believes will help develop a few better protection **8. strategies** (strategy) in the face of climate change. In the run-up to World Wildlife Day on March 3, Liu's research was held up as a successful example of **9. how** advanced space technology can benefit animal protection efforts on Earth.

Liu works at the Aerospace Information Research Institute of the Chinese Academy of Sciences. His studies have covered many fields, including polar region **10. scientific** (science) expeditions and mapping the headwaters of great rivers across the globe.

## VI. 写作

### 第一节 应用文写作

你校英语俱乐部组织了一场征文活动,主题是“十年后的我”。请展开想象并根据下列要点,写一篇英语短文:

1. 家庭;
2. 工作;
3. 业余生活。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;
3. 开头已给出,不计入总词数。

I often imagine what my life will be like in the future. \_\_\_\_\_

### 【参考范文】

I often imagine what my life will be like in the future. I think my life will be very different in ten years. I will have my own family, probably with a lovely child. I hope I'll work in a computer company as a program designer. I'll enjoy my work and get along well with my colleagues. In my free time, I'll continue to take regular exercise, such as swimming, running and various ball games. On my holidays, I'll travel around the world. In a word, my life will be much richer and more colourful.

### 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Megan is a bright and curious little girl, as most children at age eight. When walking she looks up, down, or sideways, never where she's going. One day, she spotted, partly covered by leaves and litter, a hundred-dollar bill. She looked to see if anyone was watching and bent down to crumple (弄皱) the bill in her tiny hand. Sliding it into her jacket pocket, she took another guilty look and then hurried off to school.

Her day was spent watching her jacket hung on the wall by the door. During lunch, she took it off and ran to the far side of the playground to pull out the crumpled bill and stare at it and see that it was real and belonged to her. When some older kids wandered by, she put it back into her pocket quickly and rushed back into the classroom.

It wasn't until she was riding home on the school bus that she started to wonder about whom the bill had belonged to before it came to be hers. "Probably somebody rich," she thought. "Why else would he be so careless with the hundred-dollar bill?"

She imagined a tall man in a fine wool jacket walking to his big car and pulling out a roll of money, not noticing one bill drifting (飘) to the ground. Putting the roll back in his pocket, he climbed into his car and drove away. Just then, a

wind blew some leaves to cover most of the lost bill.

But, then she thought, what if the bill had been a present for the little niece living with her grandma because her parents were killed in a car crash? She'd have treasured that hundred-dollar bill because it came from her generous uncle. And she'd be dreaming, even now if she hadn't realised she'd lost it, of all the toys and treats that the bill could buy. She could use it to buy a present for her grandmother. She would be heartbroken to find she'd lost that hundred-dollar bill.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Walking slowly towards her house, she debated whether to tell her mum about her newly-found treasure. \_\_\_\_\_

The next day was Sunday and Megan and her mum arrived at the local supermarket early. \_\_\_\_\_

### 【参考范文】

Walking slowly towards her house, she debated whether to tell her mum about her newly-found treasure. If she told her mum what had happened to her, then what would happen to the hundred-dollar bill? Maybe she couldn't achieve her dream—she wanted to use the money to buy some homeless children some toys; without the money, she could do nothing. But if she continued to keep the hundred-dollar bill, she would feel so guilty that she couldn't sleep well. At that moment, she regretted picking up the bill. Finally, she decided to ask her mother to buy some toys for some poor children. Without hesitation, her mother agreed.

The next day was Sunday and Megan and her mum arrived at the local supermarket early. The money was still in her jacket and it still belonged to her. Suddenly, she found some toy planes which were right presents just for those children! She stopped her mother, and offered to buy them. "I can pay for the toys myself," she told her mother what had happened. After Megan paid for the presents, her mother gave her a hundred-dollar bill and the thumbs-up. Getting a praise from her mother, she felt very happy.

## 迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

### Part 1 如何续写故事

#### ○写作指导

本单元的写作任务是续写故事。续写短文多以记叙故事类文章或夹叙夹议类文章为主,线索逻辑性强,情节曲折跌宕。续写需要大胆推断但不能偏离主题。续写步骤如下:

##### 1. 精读全文,确定线索。

精读全文时,首先要解决好五个 W 和一个 H 的问题,即理清人物 who、地点 where、时间 when、事件 what、原因 why 及怎样发展 how,然后根据关键词厘清故事发展的线索。

##### 2. 构思情节,谋篇布局。

以原文结尾为起点,按照原文中事件发生的逻辑性,总结各段的主旨大意,构思好情节发展,预测故事的结局。

##### 3. 厘清思路,优化语言。

结合文中的关键词语拟写草稿,展开丰富的联想和想象,紧紧围绕主题,按照情节的发展进行续写。写作手法上以记叙为主,描写上以动作描写为重心,情节的发展要合乎逻辑。续写的内容在主题、人物、线索及语言风格上要与原文保持一致,表现为上下文衔接自然,前后情节互相照应。

#### ○典题示例

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Mo was waiting in the corridor outside her class. She was feeling sick. She had two exams that day and physics was the first. It was her worst subject. Terry looked back at her from the front of the line, and then looked away quickly. Mo thought she looked guilty. She didn't have a problem with physics. She didn't have a problem with anything... Miss Perfect!

"Hi, Mo, it's your favourite exam today," said Nina, laughing as she joined the line. Terry was looking at Mo again. "So what's wrong with her?" asked Nina. "I thought you were friends." "Yes, so I did," said Mo. "But she hasn't spoken to me for two weeks now. She promised to help me review for

the physics exam too, but then she ignored all my calls and texts. And when I rang her house, her mum just told me she was busy. She's forgotten who her friends are!" said Mo angrily. "Are you listening to me?" Mr Reed was talking to the class and the other students were going into the exam room. Mo gave Nina a worried look and followed them.

Mo couldn't answer question number five. She looked up and saw Terry sitting two rows in front of her. Mo couldn't believe it! Terry was holding her phone on her knee under the table and reading from it. Is that how Terry always got such good grades? She felt really angry at Terry, but she didn't know what to do. She thought about telling the teacher, but what would everyone else think of her? "Stop writing and put your pens down," said Mr Reed as he started to collect the exam papers. Oh no, Mo hadn't answered two of the questions. She was going to fail again.

Mo wanted to talk to Terry at lunchtime, but she couldn't find her anywhere. The next exam was history. That was Mo's favourite subject but she wasn't feeling good. Mo went to the library to study, but she couldn't concentrate. She didn't know what to do about Terry. She thought about telling the teacher, but everyone would hate her if she did that. "It isn't fair!" she thought. "Terry was getting good grades by cheating all that time," thought Mo. Just then, Mr Reed walked past her table. "Mr Reed..."

Mo was sitting behind Terry again in the history exam that afternoon. Mo was feeling terrible. Why had she told Mr Reed? But it was too late now. And anyway, Terry didn't want to be her friend! Mr Reed wanted her to look at him and nod if she saw that Terry was cheating in the exam.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

She was working on the last question when she saw that Terry had her phone under the table. \_\_\_\_\_

Mo was walking towards the school gate, when she heard footsteps behind her. \_\_\_\_\_

### Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	一般过去时
人称	第一人称、第三人称
要点	1. Mo 在一番纠结后告诉了老师, Terry 被叫出了考场, Mo 的心里很不安 2. 放学后, Terry 找到了 Mo, 跟她解释了自己不理她的原因——自己的父亲病了。Terry 的父亲今天有一个十分重要的手术, 所以她不顾考场纪律看手机, 就是想知道父亲的情况。最终两个人和好如初

### Step 2: 要点补全

①Terry didn't notice (没注意到) Mr Reed until the teacher patted her on the back (直到老师拍她的背)。

②She felt guilty for (为……感到内疚) telling Mr Reed about it.

③It had resulted in (导致) Terry's not finishing her exam.

④Terry rushed out of the class, crying all the way (一路哭着)。

⑤Instead of feeling relaxed (并没有感到轻松自在), Mo had ants in her pants.

### Step 3: 句式升级

①用强调句型改写 Step 2 中的①句。

It wasn't until the teacher patted her on the back that Terry noticed Mr Reed.

②用定语从句连接 Step 2 中的②③两句。

She felt guilty for telling Mr Reed about it, which had resulted in Terry's not finishing her exam.

### Step 4: 连句成篇

### 【参考范文】

She was working on the last question when she saw that Terry had her phone under the table. Though feeling uneasy and restless, she looked at

Mr Reed and nodded. With her eyes glued to the phone, it wasn't until the teacher patted her on the back that Terry noticed Mr Reed. Immediately, Terry was asked to leave. Terry rushed out of the class, crying all the way. Instead of feeling relaxed, Mo had ants in her pants. She felt guilty for telling Mr Reed about it, which had resulted in Terry's not finishing her exam.

Mo was walking towards the school gate, when she heard footsteps behind her. She turned to find it was Terry who had just come out of the teachers' office. Feeling embarrassed, Mo wanted to run away. Nevertheless, Terry stopped her and said, "Mo, I'm sorry I haven't kept my promise to help you review, but my father has been badly ill for two weeks. Today he had a significant operation. I was so worried about him that I kept on reading the texts on the phone sent by my mother to get the latest news about him, so Mr Reed forgave me. Can you forgive me?" "Of course! Let's go to the hospital to see your father," Mo couldn't wait to reply.

### ○学以致用

阅读材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Chloe and Kevin enjoy going out to Italian restaurants. They love to eat pasta, share a dessert, and have espresso (浓咖啡). Chloe and Kevin's anniversary is coming up. Kevin wants to plan a night out at an Italian restaurant in town. He searches for the Italian restaurants in their town, but only to find two of them. He calls a restaurant to make a reservation but they have no tables available on that day. He calls the other restaurant, but they have no availability either.

Kevin thinks and paces around the house. He knows that Chloe loves Italian food far more than anything else. He knows that nothing makes her happier. It would be the best to celebrate their anniversary with an Italian dinner. But the only two Italian places in town are both too busy.

Kevin has an idea. What if he cooks Chloe a homemade Italian meal? Kevin pictures it: He puts down a fancy tablecloth, lights some candles and plays romantic Italian music. Chloe loves it when Kevin makes an effort.

Everything seems perfect with the plan except for one thing: Kevin isn't a good cook. In fact, Kevin is a terrible cook. When he tries to make breakfast, he burns the eggs; when he tries to make lunch, he screws up the salad; when he tries to make dinner, even the neighbours smell how bad it is. And it is nearly impossible to improve his cooking skills in such a short time.

Kevin has another idea: If he calls up one of the restaurants before Chloe gets home and orders takeout, he can serve that food instead of his bad cooking. In that way, their anniversary will be enjoyable and it saves a lot of effort.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

The day of the anniversary arrives. \_\_\_\_\_

Kevin is surprised and looks at the calendar. \_\_\_\_\_

### 【参考范文】

The day of the anniversary arrives. Chloe is still at work while Kevin orders the food from the Italian restaurant, picks it up, and brings it back home. As he lays down the table settings, lights the candles and puts the music on, Chloe walks in. "Happy Anniversary!" Kevin tells Chloe. He shows off their romantic dinner setting, smiling. Far from Kevin's expectations, Chloe looks confused. "Our anniversary is tomorrow, Kevin," she says.

Kevin is surprised and looks at the calendar. He then realises that Chloe is right. He looks back at her with an embarrassed smile. "It is always good to practise!" he says. On the next day, which is the actual date of their anniversary, Kevin is very worried because Chloe already knows his plan. But Chloe seems busy preparing to go out. Kevin asks her where she is going, and Chloe says, "I have booked a table at the Italian restaurant in advance!" Now Kevin knows why the restaurant is full.

## Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

One day, Gina received a smartphone. But she didn't know how to use it. So Gina went to her daughter's house to ask her grandson, Josh, for help.

When seeing Josh, Gina asked him for help. "Sorry, Grandma. I have to leave for baseball now," Josh answered from the sofa, his eyes locked on his own phone. Then he stood up, took his baseball bag, and left. Over the next few days, Gina went to see Josh several times. However, Josh always had something to do, giving excuses such as going to the movies.

Gina finally understood Josh actually didn't want to help her. She stopped asking him. She turned to some friends for help. Before long, she learned how to use her phone to read stories, communicate with friends, etc.

Later, on a Monday evening, Gina visited her daughter, Oona. They happily talked when Josh was making dinner. Suddenly, they heard Josh crying out. Oona rushed towards the kitchen. Gina followed and found Josh's hands burned by hot water by accident. "Mum, I think we need to go to the hospital," Oona said. "Yes, I'll drive," Gina said.

At last, the doctor said Josh would be fine after a few days, but his hands would be bandaged (用绷带包扎). Josh was also advised not to go to school for some days so he could rest and get better soon. Oona asked Josh's best friend to tell him his homework.

On Wednesday, Josh was alone at home. His grandma came to help make lunch for him, because he couldn't use his hands. While Gina was cooking, Josh wanted to check his homework. His friend had sent his homework assignment to his phone through emails and text messages. But Josh couldn't operate his phone. He realised he had to ask his grandma to help him out.

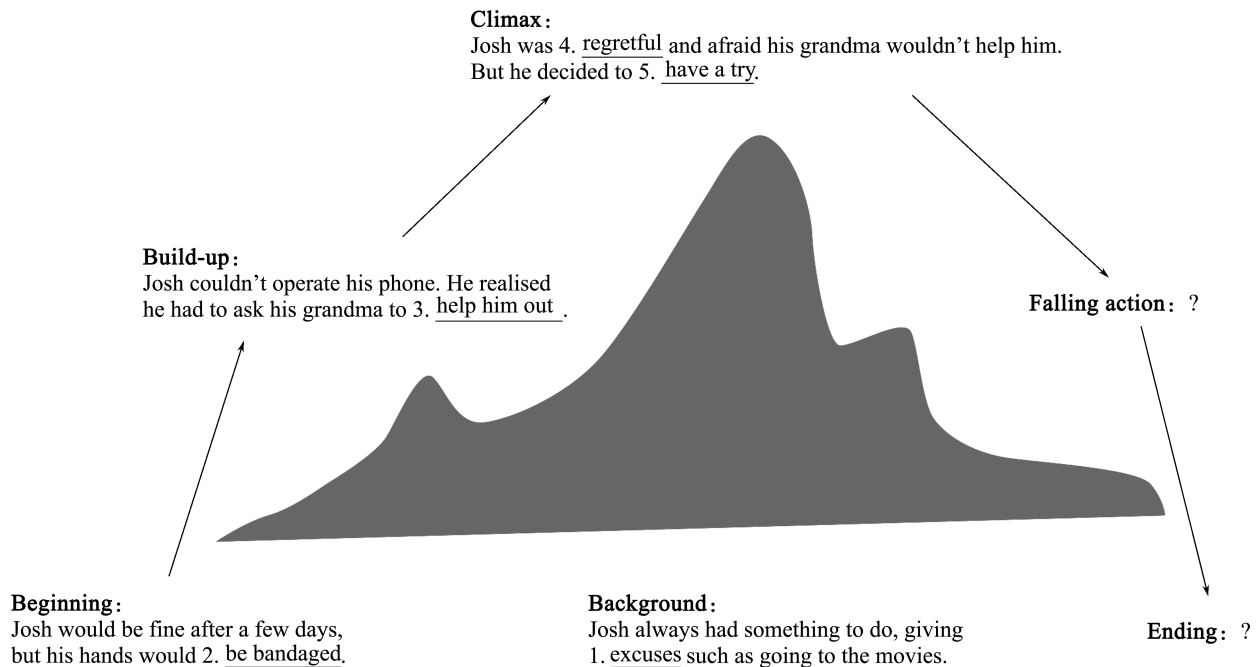
And he suddenly remembered he had refused to help his grandma when she asked for help with her phone. He was regretful and afraid she wouldn't help him. But he decided to have a try.

任务一：阅读文章，回答问题。

What does the passage mainly talk about?

It's a story of grandma Gina and her grandson Josh turning to each other for help.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下列问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思并完善故事发展的情节。

<p><b>Paragraph 1:</b></p> <p>“Grandma,” he finally said, standing before the kitchen. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. How did Josh ask Gina for help?</p> <p>Gina turned around, looking at him expectantly. “Can you check my emails?” Josh asked.</p> <p>2. How did Gina respond to Josh's request? And what did she do?</p> <p>Gina cleaned her hands and walked towards him. Gina picked up Josh's phone and started searching around. She went to his email app and downloaded everything he needed to complete his homework.</p>
<p><b>Paragraph 2:</b></p> <p>Then, Gina sent Josh's homework assignment to his computer. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What did they do after sending Josh's homework to his computer?</p> <p>They started working together to complete Josh's homework. They ate sandwiches during the process, and their afternoon passed rapidly.</p> <p>2. How did Josh feel? And how did Gina react?</p> <p>Josh looked at his grandma regretfully. He thanked her and then apologised for his previous behaviour. Gina looked at him with love, patted his head and forgave him.</p> <p>3. What did Josh learn from the experience?</p> <p>He learned to respect and love his grandma, instead of being selfish.</p>

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

“Grandma,” he finally said, standing before the kitchen. \_\_\_\_\_

Then, Gina sent Josh’s homework assignment to his computer. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 【参考范文】

“Grandma,” he finally said, standing before the kitchen. Gina turned around, looking at him expectantly. “Can you check my emails?” Josh asked. “Oh, ” Gina hesitated. Josh lowered his head, guessing she’d refuse. But Gina cleaned her hands and walked towards him, smiling, “Sure. You need to get your homework, right? Let me see.” Gina picked up Josh’s phone and started searching around. She went to his email app and downloaded everything he needed to complete his homework.

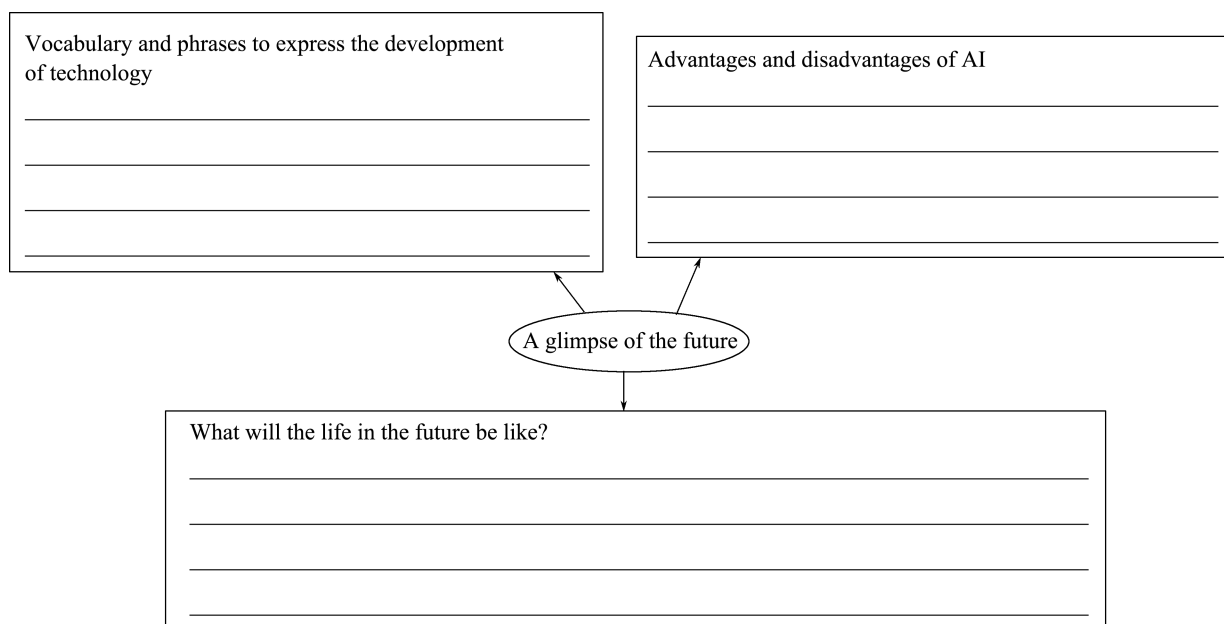
Then, Gina sent Josh’s homework assignment to his computer. Before long, they started working together to complete Josh’s homework. They ate sandwiches during the process, and their afternoon passed rapidly. When his homework was done, Josh looked at his grandma regretfully. He thanked her and then apologised for his previous behaviour. Gina looked at him with love, patted his head and forgave him. After that day, Josh never refused when she asked for help. He learned to respect and love his grandma, instead of being selfish.



## 重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

### 一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



答案:略

### 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

#### Artificial Intelligence: Friendly or Frightening?

Imagine waking up one morning with the option of staying in bed and pressing a button to send a robot to do all the work for you. How cool that would be! It may seem like building castles in the air, but given the rate at which artificial intelligence, or AI, is being developed, in the future such dreams may actually come true.

At the basic level, artificial intelligence is a branch of computer science that aims to create intelligent machines. One of the essential aims of AI is to develop computer intelligence capable of learning from experience, adjusting to new inputs and performing tasks like humans. To achieve this aim, many approaches to creating true AI have been put forward, including “deep learning”, which enables a machine to improve its own performance by learning from the results of its previous actions. Deep-learning AI has the capacity to analyse massive amounts of data through multiple layers, imitating the complex networks of the human brain.

The dream of AI has been around for centuries, and the development of computers since the 1940s has finally made it a reality. Years before the term “artificial intelligence” was coined in the mid-1950s, the theory had been explored by Alan Turing, one of the pioneers in the field of computer science. However, for a long time, AI technology developed very slowly. A major breakthrough in AI came in 1997, when Deep Blue, a chess-playing computer, beat the world chess champion Garry Kasparov. Then in 2017, a computer program named AlphaGo defeated Ke Jie, arguably the best human Go player, which demonstrated a significant advance in deep-learning AI systems.

Nowadays, AI is already being applied in many fields: finance, health care, machine translation and art, to name but a few. From autonomous vehicles to domestic robots, from recommendation systems to

computers writing novels, AI has an unlimited number of applications. Ordinary people are now using AI to get instant translations of text in foreign languages, and machines can recognize fingerprints and even faces.

In short, this technology is transforming the way we live. It is clear that we are at a turning point in history. With machines like AlphaGo now capable of thinking and learning from their mistakes, we are getting closer to the dividing line between humans and machines. The question is, where will all this lead? While AI enthusiasts promise us a bright future where intelligent robots will be working to our advantage, these undoubted benefits also bring concerns and fears. Could machines really develop human-like intelligence? And what would happen if they did? Would thinking machines work alongside humans or threaten the existence of humans? How would they be punished if they committed crimes or even murdered humans? As we become more and more dependent on computers, some scientists are urging us to think about the dangers posed by the advances in AI. Stephen Hawking, for example, warned, “The development of full artificial intelligence could spell the end of the human race.”

Apparently, such warnings demand our attention. We need to make sure that we will not fall victim to AI. We may still think it would be fantastic to relax all day and allow autonomous machines to do all the work for us—but perhaps we should not be too greedy and rather be careful about what we wish for!

1. How does the author begin the popular science article?

The author uses the imaginary scene of robots helping people do all the work.

2. What's one essential aim of AI?

To develop computer intelligence capable of learning from experience, adjusting to new inputs and performing tasks like humans.

3. What is the author's attitude to artificial intelligence?

The author thinks AI can bring us benefits and maybe some negative effects as well.

4. What do you think intelligent machines will be capable of doing in the future?

Intelligent machines will be capable of thinking and learning from their mistakes.

## 单元测试卷(四)

(考查范围: Unit 4 时间: 100 分钟 分值: 120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题; 每小题 2.5 分, 满分 37.5 分)

### A

#### Great Panda Centre

Join GoEco on a 7-day volunteer programme in China to help wildlife at a giant panda centre!

#### Your Schedule

Day 1: Arrive at Chengdu Shuangliu International Airport. The local team will be waiting to pick you up and transfer you to the hotel in Chengdu.

Day 2: Walk around Chengdu, visit Chengdu Research Base of Giant Panda Breeding and enjoy delicious hot pot dinner.

Day 3 to 6: Transfer to China Conservation and Research Centre for the Giant Panda Dujiangyan Base in the mountains and take part in rewarding volunteer work! Each day, volunteers will work for 4 to 6 hours and in the evenings, volunteers will take part in cultural activities ranging from

dumpling making to Chinese language lessons.

Day 7: Take a bus to either the airport or Chengdu City Centre if extending stay.

#### Some of Your Tasks Include

- Preparing food for the pandas
- Cutting down and carrying bamboos
- Cleaning panda enclosures
- Occasionally participating in observation and research

#### Requirements

- Ages 18 to 30 (This project may accept volunteers who are under 18 with a letter of consent from a parent)

- Basic English and/or Chinese
- Motivation to work with animals

#### Total Project Cost: 1,200 Dollars

- What's included

Room: Shared hotel room

Food: Three meals a day

Airport transfers: Airport transfers upon arrival and departure

• What's not included

Flights, travel health insurance, personal expenses

Important note: Please apply for this programme 1 to 2 months in advance. Families upgrading to private accommodations must pay an additional charge.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了GoEco的帮助保护大熊猫的志愿者服务项目。

1. What might volunteers do on the sixth day?

- A. Visit Chengdu Research Base of Giant Panda Breeding.
- B. Clean panda enclosures.
- C. Travel around Chengdu.
- D. Depart from China Conservation and Research Centre for the Giant Panda Dujiangyan Base.

B 细节理解题。根据“**Your Schedule**”部分中的“Day 3 to 6: Transfer to China Conservation and Research Centre for the Giant Panda Dujiangyan Base in the mountains and take part in rewarding volunteer work! Each day, volunteers will work for 4 to 6 hours and in the evenings, volunteers will take part in cultural activities ranging from dumpling making to Chinese language lessons.”以及“**Some of Your Tasks Include**”部分中的“Cleaning panda enclosures”可知,第六天志愿者仍然在山里的中国大熊猫保护研究中心都江堰基地,可能会打扫熊猫圈舍。故选B。

2. What does the project cost include?

- A. Accommodations.
- B. Personal expenses.
- C. Travel insurance.
- D. The air ticket.

A 细节理解题。根据“**Total Project Cost: 1,200 Dollars**”部分中的“Room: Shared hotel room”以及“**What's not included**”部分中的“Flights, travel health insurance, personal expenses”可知,费用包括住宿。故选A。

3. What is required of applicants?

- A. Being fluent in both English and Chinese.
- B. Having experience of working with animals.
- C. Applying for the programme in advance.

D. Being at least 18 years old.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Important note: Please apply for this programme 1 to 2 months in advance.”可知,参加志愿者服务项目的人员要提前申请。故选C。

## B

Technology is developing rapidly. A device as small as a smartphone now has more processing power than rockets to the Moon once had. New tech brings many advantages, making our lives easier and opening up new opportunities. One piece of kit that's been really taking off recently is the drone (无人机).

This pilotless mini aircraft, originally developed for aerial photography (航拍) and wars, is now bringing us benefits closer to home. In the last few years, tech companies have promised us delivery drones bringing goods to our doorsteps in a matter of minutes. However, progress in developing them has been slow.

Drones are helping to connect with and enhance the lives of people in lonely locations. In the UK, the Royal Mail wants 300 drones to help deliver the mail to far-away communities. Windracers, the company developing the drones, says they can fly in fog and produce 30% fewer emissions (排放) than comparable piloted aircraft. And in Coventry in the UK, construction has started on an air hub, which will act as a base for police and delivery drones.

Drones could also play a part in improving the health of millions of people. For example, Harriet Constable describes an unbelievable development project by the University of South Australia. The plan is for drones to finally be able to survey populations for diseases by reading the blood oxygen levels of humans from the air. They'll also be able to examine other important signs, like coughing and a high temperature.

It seems limitless for what drone technology can achieve. The only thing that sometimes keeps it grounded is regulation. Jessica Brown, a government official says, “If our skies are to become as crowded as our streets, airspace rules need updating to prevent accidents.” There are also related problems, such as noise pollution.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了无人

机技术给我们生活带来的好处,以及它未来需要注意的问题。

4. Why were drones originally developed?

- A. For taking photos.
- B. For delivering.
- C. For transporting.
- D. For farming.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“This pilotless mini aircraft, originally developed for aerial photography (航拍) and wars, is now bringing us benefits closer to home.”可知,无人机最初开发是为了拍照。故选 A。

5. What can replace the underlined word in Paragraph 3?

- A. Change.
- B. Improve.
- C. Enrich.
- D. Worsen.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线单词所在句“Drones are helping to connect with and enhance the lives of people in lonely locations.”可推知,无人机帮助偏远地区的人们建立了联系,因此那里人们的生活可以得到改善。由此猜测画线词意为“提高”,与 improve 同义。故选 B。

6. How does the author introduce the benefits of drones?

- A. By stating facts.
- B. By listing data.
- C. By comparison.
- D. By looking up references.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Drones are helping to connect with and enhance the lives of people in lonely locations. In the UK, the Royal Mail wants 300 drones to help deliver the mail to far-away communities.”以及第四段的内容可推知,作者是通过陈述事实来介绍无人机的好处的。故选 A。

7. What can be inferred from the last paragraph?

- A. Rules for drones haven't been made.
- B. Drones are not allowed to develop without rules.
- C. The development of drones will cause pollution.
- D. The skies are becoming crowded because of drones.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Jessica Brown, a government official says, ‘If our skies

are to become as crowded as our streets, airspace rules need updating to prevent accidents.’ There are also related problems, such as noise pollution.”可推知,无人机的发展会造成污染。故选 C。

### C

A lot of businesses are started by people who have hobbies or special talents and want to turn these interests into a business. But switching from a hobby to a real business requires business know-how and investments, which stops many people. However, an increasing number of ambitious business owners have found a way to take a first step. They are taking their dreams and talents on the road—in vans and lorries, and even horse trucks.

Beginning on a small scale has its advantages, the most important of which is the relatively modest size of start-up costs. These costs, which consist primarily of the vehicle and any required equipment, usually come to about only 5,000 to 10,000 pounds. With such tightly controlled costs, mobile businesses often break even in a year or two; in contrast, success comes to brick-and-mortar businesses much more slowly, and they often fail within the first two years. In short, mobile businesses are relatively low-risk.

The first entrepreneurs (企业家) to do this have been in the food business. The mobile food vendor trend in the US and Europe has spread to other parts of the globe. The success of these street food vans has inspired other entrepreneurs to consider starting out on wheels.

UK entrepreneurs could take inspiration from the US where, today, there are vehicles that sell flowers, shoes, clothes and all kinds of specialty food items. There are also mobile businesses that provide services, such as hair styling, pet grooming and repair of high-tech devices. Mobile retail is not without problems, however. Weather, the increasing price of fuel, and just finding a place to set up are all challenges that mobile entrepreneurs have to deal with. These business owners, however, feel the advantages outweigh the disadvantages. In the US, the mobile food business alone generates an average annual revenue of 837 million dollars.

Once convinced that their business has achieved enough success, some successful mobile entrepreneurs move on to a brick-and-mortar business. Others are satisfied to stay mobile. As stand-alone businesses or as extensions of shops, mobile retail has huge future potential in these economic times.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要讲述了如今移动式经营的兴起及其背后的原因,移动式经营面临的挑战以及未来前景。

8. What's the major cause for the rise of mobile business?

- A. High profit.
- B. Strong interest.
- C. Low investment.
- D. Convenient transport.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Beginning on a small scale has its advantages, the most important of which is the relatively modest size of start-up costs.”可知,移动式经营兴起的主要原因是低投入。故选 C。

9. How does the author prove the advantages of the mobile business in Paragraph 2?

- A. By quoting a famous saying.
- B. By giving an example.
- C. By providing an explanation.
- D. By making a comparison.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“With such tightly controlled costs, mobile businesses often break even in a year or two; in contrast, success comes to brick-and-mortar businesses much more slowly, and they often fail within the first two years. In short, mobile businesses are relatively low-risk.”可推知,作者在第二段通过比较证明移动式经营的优势。故选 D。

10. Which of the following will make it harder for the owners to run the mobile business?

- A. The vehicle care.
- B. The business permit.
- C. The terrible storm.
- D. The insufficient supply.

C 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“Weather, the increasing price of fuel, and just finding a place to set up are all challenges that mobile entrepreneurs have to deal with.”可知,可怕的暴风雨会使移动式经营者更难做生意。

故选 C。

11. What's the author's attitude towards the future of mobile business?

- A. Negative.
- B. Positive.
- C. Unconcerned.
- D. Neutral.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“As stand-alone businesses or as extensions of shops, mobile retail has huge future potential in these economic times.”可推知,作者对移动式经营的未来持积极态度。故选 B。

#### D

Scientists estimate that more than 95 percent of Earth's oceans have never been observed, which means we have seen less of our planet's ocean than we have the far side of the moon or the surface of Mars. The high cost of powering an underwater camera for a long time, by tying it to a research boat or sending a ship to recharge its batteries, is a steep challenge preventing widespread undersea exploration.

MIT researchers have taken a major step to overcome this problem by developing a battery-free, wireless underwater camera that is about 100,000 times more than other undersea cameras. The device takes colour photos, even in dark underwater environments, and transmits image data wireless through the water.

The autonomous camera is powered by sound. It transforms mechanical energy from sound waves travelling through water into electrical energy that powers its imaging and communications equipment. After capturing and encoding (编码) image data, the camera also uses sound waves to transmit data to a receiver that reconstructs the image.

Because it doesn't need a power source, the camera could run for weeks on end before retrieval, enabling scientists to search remote parts of the ocean for new species. It could also be used to capture images of ocean pollution or monitor the health and growth of fish raised in aquaculture farms.

“One of the most exciting applications of this camera for me personally is in the context of climate monitoring. We are building climate models, but we are missing data from over 95 percent of the ocean.

This technology could help us build more accurate climate models and better understand how climate change impacts the underwater world,” says Fadel Adib, associate professor in the Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章讲述了麻省理工学院的研究人员开发了一种无电池的无线水下摄像机,这种水下摄像机除了能帮助科学家们认识海洋偏远地区的新物种,还可用于捕捉海洋污染图像或监测水产养殖场养殖鱼类的健康和生长情况。在气候监测方面,这项技术可以帮助研究人员建立更精确的气候模型,更好地了解气候变化如何影响水下世界。

12. What does Paragraph 1 mainly tell us?

- A. The introduction of new batteries.
- B. The emphasis on scientists' leading work.
- C. The advertisement for underwater cameras.
- D. The difficulty of widespread undersea exploration.

D 段落大意题。根据第一段的内容可知,地球上超过95%的海洋从未被观测到过的原因是进行大范围的海底勘探要面临着对其水下摄像机供电的高成本的严峻挑战。所以本段主要介绍了对海洋进行大范围的勘测所面临的困难。故选D。

13. How is the camera powered?

- A. It is charged by batteries.
- B. It uses sound waves to transmit data.
- C. It changes sound waves into water energy.
- D. It changes mechanical energy into electrical energy.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“The autonomous camera is powered by sound. It transforms mechanical energy from sound waves travelling through water into electrical energy that powers its imaging and communications equipment.”可知,水下摄像机是将声波在水中传播的机械能转化为电能,为其成像和通信设备提供动力。故选D。

14. What does the underlined word “retrieval” mean in Paragraph 4?

- A. Being fetched.
  - B. Being destroyed.
  - C. Being out of control.
  - D. Being reconstructed.
- A 词义猜测题。根据画线词前的“Because it

doesn't need a power source, the camera could run for weeks on end...”和下文的“... enabling scientists to search remote parts of the ocean for new species.”可知,这种摄像机由于不用充电,所以可以持续运行好几个星期,帮助研究人员获得研究需要的东西,最后被取回,由此可推知,画线词在此处的含义为“被取回”。故选A。

15. What can we learn about the MIT researchers' camera?

- A. It affects climate change efficiently.
- B. It will be widely used in some fields.
- C. It will help know more about Mars' climate.
- D. It monitors the health and growth of new species.

B 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“... enabling scientists to search remote parts of the ocean for new species. It could also be used to capture images of ocean pollution or monitor the health and growth of fish raised in aquaculture farms.”可知,这种水下摄像机除了能帮助科学家们认识海洋偏远地区的新物种,还可用于捕捉海洋污染图像或监测水产养殖场养殖鱼类的健康和生长情况。根据最后一段中的“One of the most exciting applications of this camera for me personally is in the context of climate monitoring. We are building climate models, but we are missing data from over 95 percent of the ocean. This technology could help us build more accurate climate models and better understand how climate change impacts the underwater world...”可知,这种摄像机最令人兴奋的应用之一是在气候监测方面。由此可推知,它将在一些领域得到广泛的应用。故选B。

## II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Daily overuse of media and technology has a bad effect on the health of all children and teenagers by making them more open to anxiety, and more at risk of future health problems. 16 Many newer apps automatically show where the users are when they're used. This can tell anyone out there exactly where to find the person using the app.

17 They are also upset about their kids spending time on social media accounts instead of getting down to their homework assignments, and are afraid of what can come out of their online connections.







28. A. up B. down  
C. excited D. satisfied  
B 父母的不允许、男孩们的不理解使“我”打篮球的梦想根本无法实现,“我”感到心情沮丧。feel down 意为“感到沮丧,情绪低落”。故选 B。
29. A. Luckily B. Naturally  
C. Badly D. Clearly  
A 下文交代“我”新交的朋友鼓励“我”重新回到篮球场,这一转机是非常幸运的。故选 A。
30. A. enjoyed B. admitted  
C. competed D. explored  
A 她们也喜欢打篮球。enjoy doing sth. 表示“喜欢做某事”。故选 A。
31. A. effort B. way  
C. business D. direction  
B 走自己的路,让别人说去吧。这是一句谚语,way 表示“道路”。故选 B。
32. A. basketball B. sports  
C. interests D. dreams  
A 本文话题是篮球与女生,因此该空应填basketball。故选 A。
33. A. stuck B. left  
C. turned D. returned  
D 在朋友们的鼓励与引导下,自信又回到“我”心中。return 表示“返回,恢复”。故选 D。
34. A. wish B. life  
C. work D. study  
B 篮球已变成“我”生命的一部分。故选 B。
35. A. experience B. grow  
C. learn D. play  
C 通过篮球,“我”不但感到幸福、自信,而且还从别人身上学到很多东西。learn sth. from sb. 表示“从某人身上学习某事”。故选 C。

#### IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Rainbows are often seen as signs of hope. And we are likely to see more of them due to global warming, according to a new study **36. published** (publish) in the journal *Global Environmental Change*.

**37. Gathering** (gather) 121, 338 rainbow pictures from the Internet taken between 2004 and 2019, the research team then used the **38. photos** (photo) to form a database which allowed the

researchers **39. to learn** (learn) the patterns of how rainbows occur.

Rainbows only appear with a suitable angle of the sun, rainfall and less clouds. Due to the emission of greenhouse gases, there will be more rainfall and less clouds, **40. which** can lead to more rainbows in the future.

The team also predicted that global rainbow **41. occurrence** (occur) might increase by 4 to 5 percent by 2100. **42. However**, some places in the world may witness fewer rainbows. For example, the climate in tropical areas in Africa and South America may be **43. drier** (dry) with less rainfall.

The researchers also called on more studies about how people's lives can **44. be affected** (affect), apart from the changes **45. with** which we are already familiar. "Shifts in intangible (无形的) parts of our environment—such as sound and light—are part of these changes and deserve more attention from researchers," the lead author of the study Kimberly Carlson said.

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,你的英国笔友彼得(Peter)沉迷网络游戏,甚至不听父母劝阻并与他们发生了争吵。请根据以下要点提示,用英语写一封信劝阻他。

1. 网瘾的危害;
2. 要尊重父母并道歉;
3. 建议他管理好自己的时间。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

#### 【参考范文】

Dear Peter,

I'm sorry to hear that you had an argument with your parents because of your conflict with them.

I don't think your behaviour is right. Addicted to playing online games, you are not only wasting your valuable time but also hurting the feelings of your parents. Judging from your last letter, your parents are living a simple life to save every penny

for your future. Therefore, wouldn't it be reasonable for you to respect them, have a talk with them and apologise? Meanwhile, you should manage your time more wisely and find some meaningful ways to spend your free time, such as playing sports with your friends, learning a new language, etc.

I'm looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

### Lisa and Her Dog

One day, Lisa was walking home from school when she passed a pet shop. It was the same one she had passed hundreds of times before. However, this time she looked in and saw the prettiest black dog she had never seen in her life. It was as black as coal (煤块) and had a red bow behind one of its ears.

Lisa ran home to tell her mother that she had seen the gift she wanted for her birthday, which was next week. Lisa ran as fast as her legs would carry her. She ran inside the house, slamming (砰地关上) the door behind her. She rushed into the kitchen where her mother was busy cooking dinner.

She asked, "Mommy, do you think I could get the dog for my birthday?" "I don't know," her mother replied. "It depends on what your father has got to say about getting a dog." "But you and Daddy promised I could have anything I wanted for my birthday," Lisa muttered (嘟囔). She walked into the living room, threw her schoolbag on the sofa and turned on the TV. Upon seeing this, Lisa's mother said, "If you want your daddy to let you have a dog, you need to get your homework done before your daddy comes home."

"Okay, Mommy!" Lisa immediately turned off the TV. She got her schoolbooks out of her backpack and started doing her homework. A short while later, she heard her father pulling up into the driveway and getting out of his car. He walked into the house and laid his newspaper on the coffee table.

Seeing Lisa in the living room, he went to the kitchen and said to his wife, "What made Lisa start her homework early? She usually waits until after dinner." "Well, she just thought she would start her homework earlier tonight. She would also like to ask you a question, but I'll let her explain," said Lisa's mother.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Lisa's father walked back into the living room where Lisa was busy doing her homework. \_\_\_\_\_

After hearing what her father had said, Lisa's face turned red. \_\_\_\_\_

### 【参考范文】

Lisa's father walked back into the living room where Lisa was busy doing her homework. "Daddy, can I get a pretty black dog next week for my birthday?" Lisa begged. Seeing Lisa's eager face, her father froze for a moment, surprised by her request. He realised this was a good teaching opportunity. "But first I need you to promise me that you will take care of this dog on your own. Considering your previous behaviour, I'm not sure that is a promise you can keep."

After hearing what her father had said, Lisa's face turned red. She decided to make a change. After dinner, she told her parents that she would go to bed early instead of watching TV. She also promised to clean her room the following day. The next morning, Lisa's parents were greeted by her tidy bedroom and surprised to see their daughter keep her word. "Sweetie, let's go pick the dog up!" they grinned. Hearing the good news, Lisa jumped with joy.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and nature. In this unit we will listen to topics on the fact that man should learn from nature, use proper vocabulary and expressions to talk about relevant topics, and learn that architects and poets grasp inspiration from nature to create. We will explore nature and learn from nature constantly.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“人与自然”主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	理解并运用非谓语动词作主语、宾语和表语。
		语篇	1. 阅读以“人与自然”为主题的文章,尊重自然规律,与自然和谐共生; 2. 熟悉“从自然中获得的启示”为主题的文章的文体结构。
		语用	1. 了解谈论益处和展示兴趣的基本交际用语; 2. 了解以“从自然中获得的启示”为主题的文章的基本思路。
	语言技能	听	通过听力材料学习关于五禽戏的词汇和表达。
		说	能使用所学表达谈论益处,展示兴趣。
		读	通过阅读两篇文章,深入思考人类与自然的关系,学会与自然和谐共生。
		写	1. 能正确运用非谓语动词作主语、宾语和表语,描述人类向自然界学习的例子; 2. 能够写一篇以“从自然中获得的启示”为主题的文章。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	熟练利用本单元知识,围绕“向大自然学习”这一话题进行听、说、读、写训练,从而提升综合运用语言的能力。
文化意识	通过对“Nature in Architecture”和“Back to Nature”的学习,了解人与自然的关系,树立人与自然和谐统一的意识。
思维品质	在生活中要善于发现和合理利用自然资源,了解自然界中的动植物,并与它们和谐相处。

### ◊ 必备知识

必背单词	architect, superb, frontier, pond, sow, wisdom, employ, bat, physician, bow, rural, decent, cottage, withdraw, domestic, depressive, purity, resign, botanical, reject, ease, attain, evaluate
重点表达	take... for granted, an example of, respond to, seek solutions to, draw... from, come about, withdraw from, resign oneself to, convert... into...
重点知识	1. find+宾语+宾语补足语 2. that 引导同位语从句
单元语法	非谓语动词作主语、宾语和表语
单元写作	以“从自然中获得的启示”为主题的文章

## 探 · 究 · 构 · 建

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

#### 学习任务目标

1. Watch the video, and know that humans can get inspiration from nature.
2. Read the text, understand the main idea, and learn to live in harmony with nature.

#### ○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一)核心词汇

1. superb *adj.* 极好的, 出色的
2. architect *n.* 建筑师
3. convert *v.* 使转变; 使转换
4. frontier *n.* (学科的) 知识前沿
5. take... for granted 认为……理所当然
6. respond to 对……作出反应
7. convert... into... 把……转换成……
8. associate... with... 把……与……联系起来
9. be based on 基于; 以……为基础
10. look like 看起来像
11. in fact 事实上; 实际上

#### (二)阅读词汇

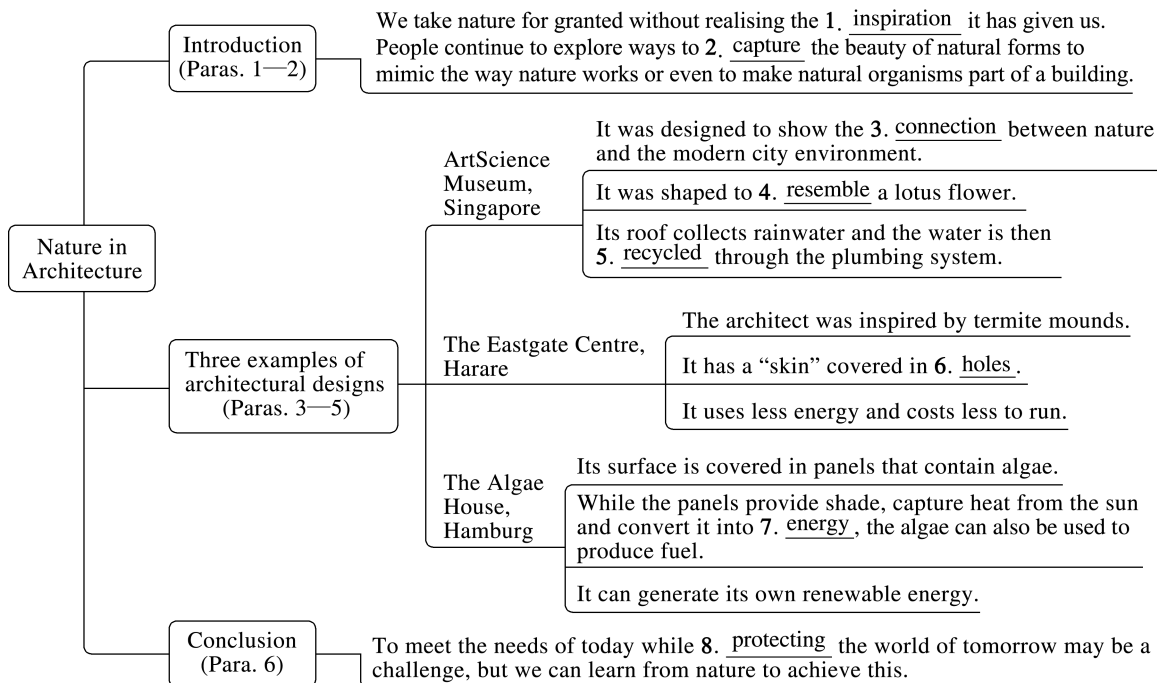
1. dioxide *n.* 氧化物

2. lotus *n.* 莲花, 荷花
3. mimic *v.* 模仿
4. mound *n.* 土堆, 土丘
5. algae *n.* 藻类(植物)
6. tile *n.* 瓦片
7. waterfront *n.* 滨水地区
8. promenade *n.* 滨海步行道
9. termite *n.* 白蚁
10. plumbing *n.* 管道系统
11. biomimicry *n.* 仿生学
12. pine cone 松果, 松球
13. in a similar way 以同样的方式; 类似地
14. stick with 坚持(做)
15. an example of ……的一个例子

## 任务型课堂

### 文本整体理解

#### Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### 文本细节领悟

#### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Which building is a superb example of biomimicry?
  - Water Cube, Beijing.
  - ArtScience Museum, Singapore.
  - The Eastgate Centre, Harare.
  - The Algae House, Hamburg.
- What inspired Mick Pearce to create Harare's Eastgate Centre?
  - Termites.
  - Mounds.
  - Holes.
  - A nature documentary about termites constructing their nests.
- What's the author's opinion about the relationship between humans and nature?
  - Living in harmony with nature.
  - Constructing buildings in nature.
  - Protecting the world by creating more algae-powered buildings.
  - Taking nature for granted.

答案: 1~3 CDA

### 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- In fact, we are so used to them that we may even take them for granted without realising how much inspiration they have given us.  
[句子分析] 句中 so used to them that... 为 so... that... 引导的结果状语从句, 其中介词 without 后是动名词短语作宾语, how much inspiration they have given us 为 how much 引导的宾语从句。  
[尝试翻译] 事实上, 我们已经习惯了它们, 甚至可能认为它们是理所当然的, 没有意识到它们给了我们多少灵感。
- To meet the needs of today while protecting the world of tomorrow may be a challenge, but even the simplest organisms can help teach us how to achieve this.  
[句子分析] 句中 but 连接表示转折关系的并列句。第一个分句中不定式短语 To meet the needs of today 为主语, while protecting the world of tomorrow 为时间状语; 第二个分句中 how to achieve this 为宾语。  
[尝试翻译] 在保护明天的世界的同时满足今天的需要可能是一个挑战, 但即使是最简单的生物也可以帮助我们实现这一点。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. Which of the three buildings are you most impressed by? Why?

略

2. If you were given a chance to design a building, what inspiration would you take from nature?

略

## Unit 5 课后素养评价（十七）

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

#### I. 阅读理解

Everyone knows this: Slowly turn up the heat on a frog in a pot of water, and the frog won't hop out. Unaware of the slight increase in heat, it will stay put until—well, until it dies. When it comes to the effect of rising global temperatures on amphibians (两栖动物), the frog-boiling fable is more than just a metaphor (隐喻).

Climate change is becoming one of the biggest threats to frogs and other amphibians, according to a major study published Wednesday in the journal *Nature*. Between 2004 and 2022, rising temperatures became the primary reason why more than 100 amphibian species were slipping towards extinction.

The spread of disease among frogs and the destruction of their habitats have long been recognised as reasons why many amphibians are decreasing. But this new study establishes climate change as a major risk for amphibians around the world, too. The soft-skinned animals lack the fur and feathers to help adjust their temperature in this hotter and more drought-stricken world.

Less attention is paid to frogs and other amphibians compared to more well-known groups like birds. But losing amphibians would be disastrous because they often act as a key link in the food web of ecosystems, wolfing insects down and, in turn, being eaten by larger predators (捕食者). “Without those amphibians to fill that role, we will see the breakdown of this food web,” said Neam, who works for an Austin-based environmental group.

Luckily, habitat protection and other conservation measures have been taken to help recover more than five dozen amphibians from Costa Rica to Malaysia. “It's not all bad news,” said Jennifer Luedtke, an amphibian group leader with the International Union for Conservation of Nature.

“But we really must build on this improvement and significantly increase investment in amphibian conservation.”

**【语篇解读】**文章主要说明了研究发现气候变化正在导致两栖动物数量减少，并分析了两栖动物的数量减少会带来的影响。

1. How is the topic introduced?

- A. By listing facts.  
B. By explaining ideas.  
C. By sharing a story.  
D. By raising a question.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可推知，文章通过分享故事引入主题。故选 C。

2. What is the main reason for the decrease of amphibians according to the new study?

- A. The spread of disease.  
B. The loss of habitats.  
C. The rise of temperature.  
D. The lack of feathers.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Between 2004 and 2022, rising temperatures became the primary reason why more than 100 amphibian species were slipping towards extinction.”可知，根据这项新研究可知，导致两栖动物数量减少的主要原因是温度的升高。故选 C。

3. What will happen if the number of amphibians decreases?

- A. The food chain will be destroyed.  
B. Wolves will depend more on insects.  
C. Predators will be the key role of the web.  
D. The ecosystem will become more diverse.

A 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段的内容可知，如果两栖动物的数量减少，食物链将被破坏。故选 A。

4. How does Luedtke feel about the future of amphibians?

- A. Worried. B. Hopeful.  
C. Uncertain. D. Curious.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘It's not all



bad news,’ said Jennifer Luedtke, an amphibian group leader with the International Union for Conservation of Nature. ‘But we really must build on this improvement and significantly increase investment in amphibian conservation.’”

可知，Luedtke 对两栖动物的未来抱有希望。故选 B。

## II. 七选五

The human body is made up of over 75% water, and we cannot live without water. Keep in mind that water is healthy and necessary for leading yourself towards better health.

Your own personal need for water can vary greatly due to exercise, weight and temperature.

1 By drinking water on a regular basis you can replenish (补充) the water in your body.

By the time you are thirsty you have already lost two or more cups of the body’s water supply.

2 Whenever you exercise, you need more water. Due to exercise, your body loses quite a bit of water. For each pound lost, you need to drink two cups of water.

3 By drinking a glass of water before you go to sleep, you can wake up with your body functioning as it should be. When you are sick, you

need more water than at any other time. 4

Therefore, you feel more thirsty than usual when you have a cold. You can try to prevent this by drinking more water at times when you become sick.

5 You should keep a bottle of water with you at all times and drink it throughout the day. You should also teach yourself to drink water instead of other drinks that don’t include the things that your body needs.

A. Always make it a habit to drink water on a daily basis.

B. You should decide which the best type of water is.

C. Therefore, drinking water regularly is much better than simply waiting until you are thirsty.

D. Even when you lie down to sleep, your body loses water.

E. When you get a cold, your body loses water quite quickly.

F. There are several different opinions as to whether drinking water is actually beneficial.

G. Research has proven that over two thirds of adults don’t get the water they need on a daily basis.

答案: 1~5 GCDEA

## Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

### 学习任务目标

1. Learn important expressions about the topic, and accumulate vocabulary about humans and nature.
2. Use proper expressions to talk about inspiration from nature.
3. Practise using the expressions to complete relevant exercises.

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. This team is such a **superb** one that they can beat us hands down. 极好的，出色的
2. They point out that **algae** is cheap and grows very quickly. 藻类
3. I hope you can see the white **tile** underneath the table. 瓦片
4. Across the river are **waterfront** baseball and football stadiums. 滨水地区
5. A wide **promenade** allows many people to walk at the same time. 滨海步行道

6. Reducing levels of carbon **dioxide** in the atmosphere is of critical importance. 二氧化碳

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>architect</u> <i>n.</i> 建筑师	<u>architecture</u> <i>n.</i> 建筑; 建筑学
	<u>architectural</u> <i>adj.</i> 建筑的; 建筑方面的
<u>plumbing</u> <i>n.</i> 管道系统	<u>plumber</u> <i>n.</i> 水暖工

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
biomimicry <i>n.</i> 仿生学	mimic <i>v.</i> 模仿
convert <i>v.</i> 使转变;使转换	convertible <i>adj.</i> 可改变的;可转换的
	conversion <i>n.</i> 转变;换算

III. 补全短语

1. take... for granted 认为……理所当然
2. associate... with ... 把……与……联系起来
3. be based on 基于;以……为基础
4. stick with 坚持(做)
5. in fact 事实上;实际上
6. convert... into ... 把……转换成……
7. respond to 对……作出反应

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: It + be + *adj.* + to do  
It is natural to think in this way, but of course it wasn't the umbrella that inspired the flower or the roof that inspired the pine cone.  
这样思考是很自然的,但当然不是雨伞给了花朵灵感,也不是屋顶给了松果灵感。
2. 句型公式: find + 宾语 + 宾语补足语  
Visitors are often amazed to find themselves in an urban building that so truly captures the beauty of natural forms.  
游客们常常惊奇地发现自己置身于一座能如此真实地捕捉到自然形态之美的城市建筑中。
3. 句型公式: if 引导虚拟条件句  
If you were given a chance to design a building, what inspiration would you take from nature?  
如果你被给予一次机会设计一座建筑物,你会从大自然中得到什么灵感?

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. (be) based on 根据;基于;以……为基础

[教材原文] To use biomimicry is to create structures **based on** natural forms and processes.

利用仿生技术,在自然形态和过程的基础上来创造建筑结构。

[归纳拓展]

(1) base *n.* 根基,基底;基础;基地;总部 *v.* 把基地设于,以……为基地

(2) basic *adj.* 基本的;基础的

(3) basically *adv.* 大体上;基本上;总的来说

(4) basis *n.* 基础;根据;要素

on the basis of 根据;在……的基础上

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Basically, his income only meets basic living expenses. So he only chooses a simple lifestyle based on his limited salary. (base)

② Based (base) on the analysis she made a prediction that his company would pick up soon.

③ I suggest changes be made to your original plan based (base) on how many guests will turn up.

④ We drew this conclusion on the basis of experiments.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之报道) 全体师生不仅掌握了一些基本实用的急救技能,还提高了他们的安全意识。

Not only did all the teachers and students

command some basic and practical first-aid skills, but also they raised their awareness of safety.

2. absorb *v.* 吸收;吸引,使全神贯注;理解

[教材原文] At night, the heat **absorbed** by the wall during the day warms the cool air, creating a comfortable temperature inside.

晚上,白天墙壁吸收的热量会使冷空气变暖,创造一个适宜的室内温度条件。

[归纳拓展]

(1) absorb oneself in 全神贯注于

absorb... into... 把……吸入……

absorb... from... 从……中吸收……

(2) absorbed *adj.* 被吸收的;全神贯注的

be absorbed in 专心于;专注于

be absorbed into... 被融入/吸纳进/同化为……

(3) absorbing *adj.* 引人入胜的

(4) absorption *n.* 吸收;全神贯注,专心致志;并入;同化

名师点拨

表示“专心于;致力于”的短语: be absorbed in, be devoted to, be lost in, be buried in, concentrate on, focus on/upon 等。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① We need to be absorbed in physical exercise before we break down.

② You will never gain success unless you are fully absorbed (absorb) in your work.

③ Vitamin C increases the absorption (absorb) of iron from food.

④ The surrounding small towns have been absorbed into the city.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情节描写) 毫不犹豫地, 我专注于这场游泳比赛, 仿佛这是我在这个世界上唯一需要做的事情。

Without second thoughts in my mind, I was absorbed in the swimming game as if this was the only thing I needed to do in the world.

### 3. convert v. 使转变; 使转换

[教材原文] The panels also capture heat from the sun and **convert** it into energy that powers the building.

太阳能板还能从太阳获取热量, 并将其转化为电能, 为建筑物供电。

[归纳拓展]

(1) convert from sth. to sth. 由某物改成某物

convert sth. into/to sth. 把某物改成某物

(2) convertible *adj.* 可改变的; 可转换的

(3) conversion *n.* 转变; 换算

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The signal will be converted into/to digital code.

② In the process, the power has converted from light energy to heat energy.

③ The warehouse (仓库) was undergoing conversion (convert) into apartments.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之景物描写) 就像一个迷人、多变的美人, 西湖在不同的时间或天气里呈现出令人惊叹的样子。

Just like a charming and convertible beauty, the

West Lake takes on an amazing look at different times and in different weather.

### 4. find+宾语+宾语补足语

[教材原文] Visitors are often amazed to **find themselves in an urban building** that so truly captures the beauty of natural forms.

游客常常惊奇地发现自己置身于一座能如此真实地捕捉到自然形态之美的城市建筑中。

[句式分析] 句中 find themselves in an urban building 为“find+宾语+宾语补足语”结构的应用, 其表示“(在事先毫无知觉的情况下)突然发现自己处于某种状态”。宾语补足语常由介词短语、现在分词、过去分词、形容词或副词充当; 一般不用不定式, 但可用 to be。

[归纳拓展]

(1) find+宾语+宾语补足语 (形容词/副词/介词短语/现在分词/过去分词) 发现/觉得……处于某种状态

(2) find+it+*adj./n.*+to do sth. 发现/认为做某事……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① When she came to herself, she found herself lying (lie) in a strange room.

② One night, she was sleeping heavily in bed when she found herself trapped (trap) in a big fire.

(2) 写作微练

① (2024·浙江1月卷读后续写之心理描写) 由于方向感差, 伊娃发现在这么大的楼里走动是不可能的。Having a poor sense of direction, Eva found it impossible to get around in such a huge building.

② (读后续写之动作描写) 吉姆转过身来, 发现一个陌生人站在他身后。他对吉姆友好地笑了笑, 并自我介绍是芬恩先生。

Jim turned around and found a stranger standing behind him. He gave Jim a friendly smile and introduced himself as Mr Finn.

## Unit 5 课后素养评价 (十八)

### Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

#### I. 单词拼写

- Each of the rooms has a superb (极好的) view of the sea.
- The house was designed by architect (建筑师) Louis Kahn.
- The stories of those scientists working in the

frontiers (前沿) of science and technology inspire us to study harder.

- The report is based (以……为基础) on figures from six different European cities.
- As is known to all, plants absorb (吸收) nutrients from the soil.

## II. 短语填空

take... for granted; be used to; convert... into; in harmony with; respond to; such as; look like; stick with

1. Although Lee found the project difficult, he was determined to stick with it.
2. How did your friends respond to your decision on going abroad for further study?
3. It is obvious that the lazy man has taken it for granted that we should help him.
4. Most of the exchange students have been used to the new environment in the university.
5. It takes more time to convert knowledge into your own ability.
6. It protects against environmental hazards such as wind and sun.
7. The wild flowers look like a soft orange blanket covering the desert.
8. With better education, people will be able to build a better society in harmony with nature.

## III. 完成句子

1. It is natural to feel nervous when you give a speech in public for the first time.  
第一次在大众面前演讲感到紧张是自然的。
2. While mimicking Charlie Chaplin on the stage, he himself couldn't help laughing.  
当在舞台上模仿查理·卓别林时,他自己情不自禁地笑了。
3. The designer developed the habit of observing in his childhood, enabling him to design such a unique architecture.  
这位设计师在童年时代养成了观察的习惯,这使他能够设计出如此独特的建筑。
4. It appears that there has been a mistake.  
似乎有一个差错。
5. I would go with you if I had time.  
如果有时间的话,我就和你一起去了。
6. I found it impossible to answer all the questions within such a short time.  
我发现在如此短的时间里回答所有的问题是不可能的。

## IV. 完形填空

On an early summer day in the fascinating landscape of Jiulong Peak provincial nature reserve, deep in Anhui Province, Du Minghui, working in the reserve, was taking a group of 20 students on a

study 1. With the symphony of birdsong 2 through the air, they went on the journey, winding their way through the forest to 3 the secrets and wonders of wildflowers and trees.

The tours primarily 4 nature education. They aim to allow children to gain a profound understanding of nature by acquiring knowledge of the animals and plants in the 5. Throughout the tour, students have the opportunity to acquire essential 6 skills in the wild, such as learning to tie knots and 7 simple stretchers (担架).

In recent years, the reserve has strengthened partnerships with scientific institutions, making use of its advantages to develop 8 tours and ecotourism. During the first three days of June, Du and his colleagues 9 three groups of students. With summer vacation approaching, they 10 a flood of children to appreciate the appealing beauty of nature.

The 11 in study tours is closely linked to the 12 environment of the mountains. In the past four years, the reserve has captured nearly 350,000 13 of wild animals. With the environment becoming better, people are 14 to witness the return of animal species that had been 15 for years.

**【语篇解读】**文章介绍了安徽省九龙峰自然保护区通过加强与科研机构的合作,利用自身优势发展教育旅游和生态旅游的情况。

1. A. schedule B. task  
C. tour D. experience  
C 根据下文的“they went on the journey”可知,这是一个由 20 名学生组成的游学团。故选 C。
2. A. playing B. echoing  
C. releasing D. composing  
B 根据下文的“through the air”可知,鸟的叫声在空中回响。故选 B。
3. A. keep B. leak  
C. spread D. unlock  
D 根据上文的“a study 1”及下文的“the secrets and wonders of wildflowers and trees”可知,此处指通过这次游学旅程,孩子们可以了解自然界的秘密和奇迹。故选 D。
4. A. centre around B. rely on  
C. cope with D. take over  
A 根据下文的“They aim to allow children to

gain a profound understanding of nature by acquiring knowledge of the animals and plants”可知,这次游学主要以自然为中心。故选 A。

5. A. zoos B. mountains  
C. villages D. cities

B 根据上文的“understanding of nature by acquiring knowledge of the animals and plants”可知,此处指通过了解山上的动物和植物,这些学生能对自然有更深刻的了解。故选 B。

6. A. writing B. weaving  
C. survival D. withdrawal

C 根据下文的“skills in the wild, such as learning to tie knots and 7 simple stretchers (担架)”可知,这些技能对于人们在野外生存是必要的。故选 C。

7. A. lifting B. building  
C. sending D. borrowing

B 根据上文的“learning to tie knots”及下文的“simple stretchers (担架)”可知,这里指学习打结和搭建简单的担架的技巧。故选 B。

8. A. recreational B. commercial  
C. educational D. medical

C 根据上文的“The tours primarily 4 nature education.”及“strengthened partnerships with scientific institutions”可知,这里指保护区加强与科研机构的合作,利用其优势发展教育旅游。故选 C。

9. A. hosted B. assessed  
C. sponsored D. rewarded

A 根据上文的“Du Minghui, working in the reserve, was taking a group of 20 students on a study 1”可知,在游学活动中,杜作为领队带领着这些学生,所以此处指他们接待了三组学生。故选 A。

10. A. persuade B. anticipate  
C. require D. allow

B 根据上文的“With summer vacation approaching”及下文的“a flood of children to appreciate the appealing beauty of nature”可知,暑假到来后,会有很多的学生愿意来欣赏迷人的大自然之美,所以此处指他们预想会有很多的学生来参加游学活动。故选 B。

11. A. contest B. prejudice  
C. reform D. boom

D 根据上文的“a flood of children to appreciate the appealing beauty of nature”可知,参加游学的学生数量很多,说明游学活动在日益繁荣。故选 D。

12. A. improved B. mixed  
C. disturbed D. exploited

A 根据下文的“With the environment becoming better”可知,自然环境在日益变好。故选 A。

13. A. feelings B. images  
C. sounds D. shapes

B 根据“captured nearly 350,000”可知,此处指拍摄了近 350 000 张野生动物的照片。故选 B。

14. A. confused B. moved  
C. delighted D. shocked

C 根据下文的“witness the return of animal species”可知,人们看到多年不见的物种重新出现,自然是高兴的。故选 C。

15. A. free B. diverse  
C. extinct D. absent

D 根据上文的“witness the return of animal species”可知,人们看到物种重新出现,说明好多年是看不到这些动物的。故选 D。

## Section III Using language

### 学习任务目标

1. Study the sentences, and understand non-finite forms as subject, object and predicative.
2. Properly use the grammar in this unit to do exercises.

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. They also had a small **pond** in which they kept fish.

池塘

2. **Bats** fly at night and feed on insects.

蝙蝠

3. We continued tracking the plane on our **radar**.

雷达



4. I will put on my **swimsuit** and swim in the pool.  
游泳衣
5. They caught a **dragonfly** and watched its wings carefully.  
蜻蜓
6. Above him an invisible **drone** flew through the night sky.  
无人驾驶飞机

## II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>employ</u> v. 使用, 运用	employer n. 雇主, 老板
	employee n. 雇员, 受雇者
	employment n. 使用; 雇用; 就业
	unemployment n. 失业; 失业人数
<u>wisdom</u> n. 智慧	wise adj. 明智的, 聪明的

## III. 补全短语

- crash into 撞到……
- come about 发生, 产生
- come into being 出现, 形成, 产生

- take inspiration from 从……中获取灵感
- be good for 对……有好处
- go back 追溯到

## IV. 补全句子

- 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语

Drawing inspiration from nature is a tradition that goes back centuries.

从大自然中汲取灵感是几百年前的传统。

- 句型公式: “nowhere is + 形容词比较级 + than” 表示最高级含义

Nowhere is this better illustrated than in the beautiful Lingering Garden of Suzhou.  
最能说明这一点的莫过于美丽的苏州留园。

- 句型公式: be supposed to do

Visitors are also supposed to explore it scene-by-scene.

游客也应该一个景色接一个景色地探索。

- 句型公式: 时间状语从句的省略

When solving a design problem, you can sometimes look to nature for a solution.

在解决设计问题时, 有时你可以向大自然寻求解决方案。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. inspire v. 激励, 鼓舞; 激发, 启发; 使产生灵感

[教材原文] Inspired by dolphins, people have learnt how to send signals underwater, which is currently employed in tsunami early-warning systems.  
受海豚的启发, 人们学会了如何在水下发送信号, 目前这已应用于海啸预警系统。

#### [归纳拓展]

(1) inspire sb. to do sth. 激励某人做某事  
inspire... in sb. 激发/激励某人的……

(2) inspired adj. 激动人心的; 卓越的

(3) inspiring adj. 鼓舞人心的; 启发灵感的

(4) inspiration n. 灵感; 启发灵感的人(或事物)  
take inspiration from 从……中获取灵感

#### [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① When asked where her inspiration of the novel came from, she said her father's inspiring words inspired her to write it. (inspire)

② His speech was inspiring (inspire) and touched everyone's heart, which inspired all the people present to work (work) even harder later.

③ Some other museums across the country, such

as the National Museum of China, are inspired (inspire) by the Palace Museum's efforts and are working on similar projects of their own.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写) 受到她的话语的鼓舞, 我决定创作自己的人生故事。

Inspired by her words, I decided that I would produce my own life story.

### 2. employ v. 使用, 运用; 雇用

[教材原文] Inspired by dolphins, people have learnt how to send signals underwater, which is currently **employed** in tsunami early-warning systems.

受海豚的启发, 人们学会了如何在水下发送信号, 目前这已应用于海啸预警系统。

#### [归纳拓展]

(1) be employed in doing sth. 从事于/忙于做某事

(2) employer n. 雇主, 老板

(3) employee n. 雇员, 受雇者

(4) employment n. 使用; 雇用; 就业

(5) unemployment n. 失业; 失业人数

(6) unemployed adj. 失业的, 没有工作的

## [即学即练]

## (1) 单句语法填空

- ① He was employed in watering the garden.  
 ② Some unemployed (employ) workers have been fortunate to find their jobs in the suburbs.  
 ③ The young man impressed all the employers (employ) with his honesty.

## (2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情节描写) 果园的主人雇用了一些移民家庭采摘苹果和照料果树。

The man owning the orchard employed some migrant families to gather apples and care for the trees.

## 多义词汇 专练

I guess he can be on our team and we'll try to put him in to **bat** in the final inning. B

A. *n.* 蝙蝠

B. *v.* 击球

C. *n.* 球棒

## 语法研习课

## 非谓语动词作主语、宾语和表语

## 语法感知

- ① It is natural **to think** in this way...  
 ② Today, architects continue **to explore** ways to capture the beauty of natural forms...  
 ③ People whose interest is **exploring the relationship** between art and science will enjoy Singapore's ArtScience Museum.  
 ④ ... it appears **to float** above the waterfront promenade and the water that surrounds it.  
 ⑤ Visitors are often **amazed** to find themselves in an urban building that so truly captures the beauty of natural forms.  
 ⑥ **To use biomimicry is to create** structures based on natural forms and processes.  
 ⑦ **Creating buildings** such as these enables us to live in closer harmony with our environment.  
 ⑧ I can hardly imagine **sailing across the Atlantic Ocean in five days**.

- 以上句子中,句①和句⑥中的第一处黑体部分为不定式短语作主语,有时可以用 *it* 作形式主语而把不定式短语放在后面,如句①;句②中不定式短语作宾语;句④和句⑥中的第二处黑体部分为不定式短语作表语。
- 句③中动词-ing形式作表语;句⑦中动词-ing形式作主语。
- 句⑤中过去分词作表语。
- 句⑧中动词-ing形式作宾语。

## 语法精讲

## 一、非谓语动词的基本形式、结构与句法功能

## (一) 基本形式、结构

—		主动形式	被动形式
肯定式	不定式	to do, to be doing, to have done, to have been doing	to be done, to have been done
	动词-ing形式	doing, having done	being done, having been done
	过去分词	—	done
否定式		以上形式前加 not, 如 not to do, not doing, not to be done, not having done	
复合结构	动名词形式	名词所有格、形容词性物主代词+动名词形式	
	不定式	for sb./sth. to do	

## (二) 句法功能

	主语	宾语	补语	表语	定语	状语
不定式	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
动名词形式	✓	✓		✓	✓	
分词			✓	✓	✓	✓



二、非谓语动词作主语

动名词形式和不定式在句子中都可充当主语。单个的动词不定式或动名词形式作主语时,谓语动词常用单数。有时,为避免句子由于主语太长而显得头重脚轻,常用 it 作形式主语,把真正的主语移到句子后部。例如以下结构:

- ①It+be+名词/形容词+to do sth.
- ②It+be+形容词+for+sb.+to do sth.

名师点拨

形容词说明不定式所表示的行为的性质或特点,不能说明不定式动作的执行者。常用的表示客观情况的形容词有 difficult, easy, hard, important, impossible, necessary 等。

- ③It+be+形容词+of+sb.+to do sth.

名师点拨

形容词说明不定式逻辑主语的品行、性格、性质等,该句型通常可改为:sb.+be+形容词+to do sth., 常用 careless, clever, good, foolish, honest, kind, lazy, nice, right, silly, stupid, wise 等表示赞扬或批评的词。

- ④It+be+

no use/good

not any use/good

of little use/good

useless/useful

+doing sth.

To climb the mountain road is easy while to go down the hills is hard.

上山容易下山难。

Reading aloud is very important for us to learn a foreign language.

大声朗读对我们学习一门外语是很重要的。

It is hard to think of a world without metals.

难以想象一个没有金属的世界(是什么样子)。

It's a good idea to have your destination written in Chinese.

把你的目的地用汉语写出来是个好主意。

It's easy for me to work out this maths problem.

对我来说,解出这道数学题是容易的。

It is no use asking me. I know no more than you know.

问我没用。我知道的不比你多。

It was considerate of Michael to inform us of his delay in advance in case we got worried.

迈克尔提前告知我们会晚到以免我们担心,他考虑得真周到。

It seems very difficult to finish the work within an hour.

在一个小时内完成这项工作似乎十分困难。

三、非谓语动词作宾语

1. 不定式和动名词形式可在句中充当宾语。

有一部分动词后面只可以接不定式作宾语,如 decide, want 等;而某些动词只能接动名词形式作宾语,如 enjoy, appreciate 等。某些动词后面既可以接不定式作宾语,也可以接动名词形式作宾语,但是它们表达的意义不同,如下表:

动词	以 to do 作宾语的意义	以 doing 作宾语的意义
stop	停止手中事,去做另一件事	停止正在做的事
go on	接着做另外一件事	接着做同一件事
remember/ forget/ regret	(指动作尚未发生) 记得/忘记/感到遗憾要去做某事	(指动作已经发生) 记得/忘记/感到后悔做过某事
try	设法、努力、尽力做某事	试试去做某事,看有何结果
mean	打算做某事,企图做某事	意思是,意味着
can't help	不能帮忙做某事	忍不住要做某事

She pretended not to see me when I passed by.

当我经过时,她假装没看见我。

We agreed to meet here but so far she hasn't turned up yet.

我们约好了在这里见面,但是她到现在还没有露面。

Remember to lock the door.

记得锁门。

I remember locking the door.

我记得我把门锁上了。

Try doing more exercise, and you will lose weight.

试着多做运动,你就能减肥了。

I will try to improve my oral English.

我将努力提高我的英语口语。

In some parts of London, missing a bus means waiting for another hour.

在伦敦的某些地区,错过一趟公共汽车就意味着再等一个小时。

I didn't mean to leave her name off the list; it was an oversight.

我不是有意在名单上漏掉她的名字的,这是个疏忽。

## 【记忆口诀】

(1) 只能用不定式作宾语的动词(词组)

决定设法学会不定式 decide/determine/  
manage/learn

许诺计划表示立志 promise/plan/intend

提出要求忙准备 offer/ask/demand/help/prepare

假装同意实拒绝 pretend/agree/refuse

“五望”未能成现实 hope/wish/expect/desire/  
want/fail

(2) 只能用动名词形式作宾语的动词(词组)

喜欢考虑不可免 enjoy/appreciate/consider/avoid

现在放弃太冒险 give up/risk

注意想象莫推延 mind/imagine/delay/put off

要求完成是期望 require/finish/look forward to

不行停止准逃亡 allow/escape

情不自禁要原谅 can't help/excuse

建议继续勤练习 suggest/go on/practise

继续坚持定成功 keep on/succeed in

(3) 既可以接不定式作宾语,也可以接动名词形式  
作宾语,但是表达的意义不同的动词(词组)

“四记”“力争”“停”“后悔”

“四记”指“记得、记住(remember)”“忘记(forget)”

“计划、打算(mean)”“继续(continue)”“力争”指  
try; “停”“后悔”指 stop 与 regret.

2. 作宾语的不定式或动名词形式有补足语时,有时要  
使用形式宾语 it, 把真正的宾语——不定式或动名  
词形式放在后面。

I found **it impossible to finish the work on time.**

我认为按时完成这项工作不可能。

I don't think **it possible to master** a foreign  
language without much memory.

我认为掌握一门外语不靠大量的记忆是不可能的。

His being late **made it impossible for us to finish**  
the work on time.

他的迟到使我们不能按时完成工作。

3. 动词 need, require, want 作“需要”, deserve 作“应  
受, 应得”讲时, 其后用动名词的主动形式(doing)  
或不定式的被动形式(to be done)表示被动意义。  
此外, need, require, want 后可以接名词或代词作  
宾语, 然后接不定式作宾语补足语, 表示“需要/要  
求/想要某人做某事”。

The window **needs/requires/wants to be cleaned/**  
**cleaning.**

这扇窗户需要擦一下。

These proposals **deserve consideration/**  
**considering/to be considered.**

这些建议值得考虑。

4. 介词后面要用动名词形式, 要特别注意 to 的词性,  
分析其为介词还是不定式符号。下列结构中的 to  
为介词: be accustomed to(习惯于), be used to(习  
惯于), stick to, turn to, devote oneself to, be  
devoted to, look forward to, pay attention to, get  
down to, contribute to, lead to, the key to 等。

Please pay attention to **adding** the date in the  
form.

请注意在表格里添加日期。

—How do you deal with the disagreement  
between the company and the customers?

——你如何解决公司与顾客之间的矛盾?

—The key to **solving** the problem is to meet the  
demand made by the customers.

——解决问题的关键是满足顾客提出的要求。

## 四、非谓语动词作表语

(一) 不定式和动名词形式在句子中可充当表语

不定式作表语相当于名词作表语, 表示主语的内容,  
主语和表语可以对调。动词不定式通常表示将来某  
一次的动作, 而动名词形式则表示经常性发生的  
动作。

My job is **teaching/to teach** English.

我的工作是教英语。

Her wish was **to become an artist.**

她的愿望是成为一名艺术家。

The purpose of the new technology is **to make** life  
easier, **not to make** it more difficult.

这项新技术的目的是要使生活更简单, 而不是让它更  
困难。

(二) 不定式作表语的常见用法

1. 表示按约定、计划、职责、义务、要求等即将发生的  
动作, 这是将来时的一种用法。

They **are to pay a visit** to the teacher together at  
ten tomorrow morning.

他们明天上午十点钟一起去看望这位老师。

2. 表示必须或应该, 在意思上相当于 must, should,  
ought to 或 have to.

This medicine **is to be taken** three times a day.

这个药必须一天吃三次。

3. 表示注定要发生或不可避免要发生的事。

You **are to be rewarded.**

你定会得到奖励。

4. 如果主语是以 aim, duty, hope, idea, happiness,  
job, plan, problem, purpose, thing, wish 等为中  
心的名词或 what 引导的名词性从句, 不定式作表  
语, 对主语起补充说明的作用。

The **aim** of education is **to teach** young people to  
think for themselves and not follow others  
blindly.

教育的目的是让年轻人独立思考而不是盲目追随别人。

### 5. 动词不定式作表语时 to 的省略问题。

动词不定式作表语时,如果前面有实义动词 do,则后面的动词不定式符号 to 要省略。

The last thing I want to **do** is **hurt** you.

我最不想做的事就是伤害你。

What I want to **do** now is **thank** him.

我现在想做的就是感谢他。

### 名师点拨

不定式 to blame, to let 用作表语时,通常要用主动形式表示被动意义。

Who is **to blame**? 该怪谁呢?

The house is **to let**. 此屋出租。

### (三)分词也可充当表语

The book is **interesting**.

这本书很有趣。

The speech was **inspiring**.

这个演讲鼓舞人心。

The students were **excited**.

学生们很激动。

### 名师点拨

分词作表语时,它们都带有形容词的性质。现在分词作表语时,说明主语的特点,意为“使/令人……”;过去分词作表语常表示主语的性质、特征或状态,有时并无完成或被动之意,而是表示主语的状态或思想感情。过去分词作表语基本上是已经形容词化的动词-ed 形式,通常意为“感到……的”。

## 语法冲关

### I. 单句语法填空

1. Travelling (travel) along the road is an interesting and rewarding experience.
2. It took him a long time to learn (learn) the skills he needed to become a good dancer.
3. My duty is to water (water) the flowers every day.
4. He suggested taking (take) my daughter to the zoo the next day.
5. It's important for the figures to be updated (update) regularly.
6. It's no use complaining (complain) without taking action.
7. She hopes to find (find) a good job in the future.
8. Don't be surprised if I pretend not to recognise (not recognise) you.

### II. 完成句子

1. She considers it necessary to make friends with him.  
她认为与他交朋友是有必要的。
2. I will show you how to deal with it/what to do with it.  
我会向你演示如何处理它。
3. The stranger offered to show me the way.  
这个陌生人主动给我指路。
4. I will make it a rule to do physical training after supper.  
我将把晚饭后进行体育锻炼定为一项规则。

## Unit 5 课后素养评价 (十九)

### Section III Using language

#### I. 选词填空

wisdom; employ; take inspiration from; physician; seek solutions to

1. Western designers take inspiration from China and its rich culture for their works.
2. Piggy banks teach children the wisdom of saving, and adults often need to relearn childhood lessons.
3. The children should be taught how to employ their spare time properly.
4. The local physicians were brought in to research into the cause of the flu epidemic.
5. They attempt to seek solutions to the tough problem.

#### II. 单句语法填空

1. According to the specialist, it is time for the

farmers to sow (sow) the seeds.

2. It's not easy to find (find) your way around the town.
3. He described that he was too nervous to open (open) his eyes.
4. This is how they learn to make friends and to avoid doing (do) things that hurt others.
5. As we all know, it's no use crying (cry) over spilt milk.
6. Parents should learn to praise their children instead of blaming (blame) them.
7. Thomas Edison failed thousands of times before he succeeded in inventing (invent) the first electric lamp.
8. The policeman asked me to tell him exactly how this accident came about.

9. No one knows how this custom came into being.  
 10. It can be good for you if taken in moderation (有节制地).

### III. 阅读理解

A teenager joins a line of people boarding a spaceship. Once on board, she approaches a bed, crawls in, closes the lid and falls asleep. Her body is frozen for a trip to a planet several light-years from Earth. A few years later she wakes up, still the same age. This ability to put her life on pause while asleep is called “suspended animation”.

Scenes like this are the staple content of science fiction. All of these stories have something in common: People enter an unconscious state in which they can survive for a long time. Nothing like this is yet possible in the real world. But some animals and birds have their own forms of suspended animation: They hibernate. This might hold some lessons for how to put astronauts of the future into hibernation for long space flights.

“I think this is realistic,” says Katharine Grabek, a famous biologist. “It would be done by making ourselves as similar as we can to a hibernator.”

As an animal hibernates, it chills its body and slows its heart rate and breathing. Metabolism (新陈代谢) also slows. To do this, an animal must turn on and off certain genes when they hibernate. Those genes do things like controlling whether an animal burns sugars or fats for fuel. Other genes are involved in keeping muscles strong. Humans have many of these same genes. Turning some of these genes on or off might allow humans to do something similar to hibernation.

Since a person probably wouldn't survive their body temperature dropping below freezing, it is suggested that people might hibernate like bears. If people are like bears, hibernation may help keep bones and muscles strong. That is important in space. Bones and muscles tend to break down in low gravity. Hibernation could cut the amount of food, water and oxygen that crews need. And it could save

people from the inevitable boredom of long trips in space.

**【语篇解读】**文章主要介绍了一些动物和鸟类的冬眠可能会为未来的航天员进入冬眠状态以进行长期太空飞行提供一些经验。

1. What is the function of the first paragraph?

- A. To tell readers a story.  
 B. To give a definition.  
 C. To share scientific knowledge.  
 D. To introduce the topic of the text.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,第一段通过讲述一个例子引出文章的主题:未来的航天员可以进入冬眠状态以进行长期的太空飞行。故选D。

2. What does the underlined word “this” in Paragraph 2 refer to?

- A. Human hibernation.  
 B. Living forever.  
 C. Boarding spaceships.  
 D. Animals' suspended animation.

A 词义猜测题。根据第二段中的“*But some animals and birds have their own forms of suspended animation: They hibernate. This might hold some lessons for...*”可知,动物的冬眠会为未来的航天员进入冬眠状态以进行长期的太空飞行提供一些经验, this 指代人类冬眠。故选A。

3. What's Katharine Grabek's attitude to human hibernation?

- A. Doubtful.                      B. Critical.  
 C. Positive.                      D. Dismissive.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知, Grabek 对人类冬眠的态度是积极的。故选C。

4. What does the last paragraph mainly talk about concerning human hibernation?

- A. Its current problems.  
 B. Its working mechanism.  
 C. Its benefits for astronauts.  
 D. Its appeal to the scientists.

C 段落大意题。根据最后一段的内容可知,最后一段主要谈论了人类冬眠对航天员的好处。故选C。

# Section IV    Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Learn the main expressions, and use them appropriately in this part.
2. Read and understand the main idea of the text, gain the essence of foreign culture, and promote traditional Chinese culture.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. After the performance, the actor gave a graceful **bow** to the audience.                      鞠躬
2. He spoke with a heavy **rural** accent, which made us puzzled.                      乡村的
3. He achieved his aim and got a **decent** job in the company.                      相当好的
4. The famous model **withdrew** from fashion and took up writing.                      退出
5. I hope I can live in a beautiful country **cottage**, with roses around the door.                      乡村小屋
6. These **domestic** birds may not adapt to living in the wild.                      家养的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>depressive</u> <i>adj.</i> 抑郁的	depress <i>v.</i> 使抑郁;使沮丧;使萧条
	depression <i>n.</i> 抑郁症;沮丧;不景气,萧条期
<u>deliberately</u> <i>adv.</i> 不慌不忙地,从容不迫地	deliberate <i>adj.</i> 不慌不忙的,从容不迫的
	deliberation <i>n.</i> 从容,谨慎
<u>reluctant</u> <i>adj.</i> 不情愿的;勉强的	reluctantly <i>adv.</i> 不情愿地;勉强地
	reluctance <i>n.</i> 不情愿;勉强
<u>evaluate</u> <i>v.</i> 评估,评价	evaluation <i>n.</i> 评估,评价
<u>attain</u> <i>v.</i> 得到,获得	attainment <i>n.</i> 获得,达到;成就,造诣
	attainable <i>adj.</i> 可达到的;可获得的
<u>botanical</u> <i>adj.</i> 植物(学)的	botany <i>n.</i> 植物学
	botanist <i>n.</i> 植物学家

III. 补全短语

1. in return for 作为……的报答
2. draw... from ... 从……获得……
3. reaction to 对……的反应
4. resign oneself to 使自己顺从于……
5. at ease with 不拘束,放松
6. for good 永久地;永远地
7. be opposed to 反对
8. in other words 换句话说
9. seek solutions to 寻求……的解决方法

IV. 补全句子

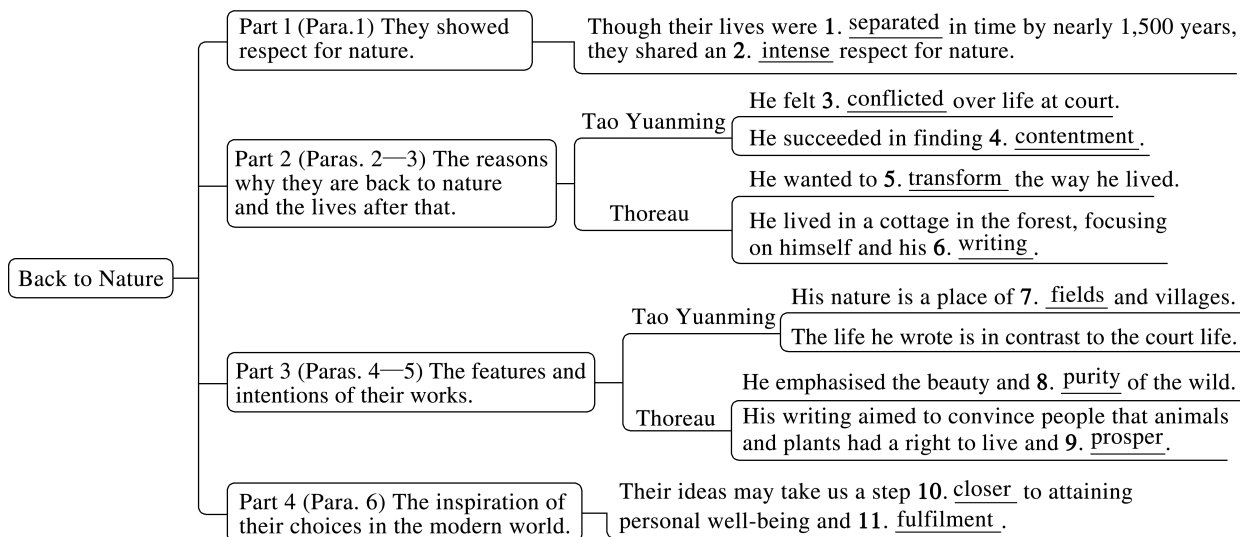
1. 句型公式:one... the other...  
Tao Yuanming and Henry David Thoreau were both poets, but one lived in Ancient China and the other in 19th century America.  
陶渊明和亨利·大卫·梭罗都是诗人,但一个生活在古代中国,另一个生活在19世纪美国。
2. 句型公式:现在分词短语作伴随状语  
... he lived in a cottage in the forest on the edge of Walden Pond, focusing on himself and his writing.  
……他住在瓦尔登湖边森林中的一间小屋里,专注于自己和自己的写作。
3. 句型公式:that引导同位语从句  
In 405, he quit the service of the court for good, expressing his unhappiness in the now famous line that he would not “bow like a servant in return for five dou of grain”.  
公元405年,他辞去了官职,以表达他的不满,用今天的一句名言形容就是“不为五斗米折腰”。

## 任务型课堂

### Part 1 课文理解

#### 文本整体理解

##### Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



#### 文本细节领悟

##### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What are the similarities between Tao Yuanming and Henry David Thoreau?
  - They both showed great respect for nature.
  - They both lived in the year 1500.
  - They were both officials in the government.
  - They both lived a simple life.
- Why did Tao Yuanming go back to nature?
  - He wanted to work the land in the field.
  - He was rejected by the court.
  - He was opposed to the life at court.
  - He learned from Henry David Thoreau.
- What's Henry David Thoreau's purpose in writing about nature?
  - To transform the way he lived.
  - To live on the edge of Walden Pond for about 2 years.
  - To make a personal decision.
  - To live in harmony with nature in the quietness of his life.
- Which of the following statements describes the life of Tao Yuanming?
  - A beautiful life breathing the air, drinking the drink and tasting the fruit.
  - A calm and peaceful life with some chickens and dogs.

C. A peaceful life by a lake.

D. A life of quality but in a simpler way.

答案: 1~4 ACDB

#### 语言知识运用

##### Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- In 405, he quit the service of the court for good, expressing his unhappiness in the now famous line that he would not “bow like a servant in return for five *dou* of grain”.

[句子分析] 本句是一个简单句。expressing...是现在分词短语作状语，状语部分中有一个 that 引导的同位语从句，解释说明 famous line 的具体内容。

[尝试翻译] 公元 405 年，他辞去了官职，以表达他的不满，用今天的一句名言形容就是“不为五斗米折腰”。

- From his poetry, we can learn that although his life was arduous, he succeeded in finding contentment in its simplicity and in drawing pleasure from nature.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复合句。谓语动词 learn 后接 that 引导的宾语从句，宾语从句中 although 引导让步状语从句，从句中的主句是 “he succeeded...”。

[尝试翻译] 从他的诗歌中我们可以看出，虽然他的生活是艰苦的，但他成功地在简单的生活中找到了满足感，从自然中获得了快乐。



## ○思维品质培养

### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- Why are their ideas important to our lives today?  
Because in today's modern world, we still need to live harmoniously with nature, and live a simple

## Part 2 语言梳理

### 1. depressive *adj.* 抑郁的

[教材原文] The calm and peaceful life he wrote about is in contrast to and critical of the **depressive** court life...

他所写到的平静安宁的生活与压抑的朝堂生活形成了鲜明的对比,是对压抑的官场生活的批判……

[归纳拓展]

- (1) depress *v.* 使抑郁;使沮丧;使萧条
- (2) depressing *adj.* 令人抑郁的,令人沮丧的,令人消沉的
- (3) depressed *adj.* 意志消沉的,沮丧的  
be/feel depressed about 对……感到沮丧
- (4) depression *n.* 抑郁症;沮丧;不景气,萧条期

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① On hearing the depressing news, he felt depressed and soon got into a state of depression. (depress)
- ② They are fearful of another business depression. (depress).
- ③ Your thoughts are negative, which furthers the depressive (depress) mood.
- ④ She's been very depressed (depress) and upset about this whole situation.

(2) 写作微练

- ① (读后续写之情绪描写) 他在街上徘徊了将近一整天,感到非常沮丧和绝望。

He had been wandering on the streets for almost a whole day, feeling so depressed and hopeless.

- ② (读后续写之情绪描写) 在我看来,特克斯从爸爸妈妈那里得到了太多的关注,我常常感到沮丧。

It seemed to me that Tex got too much attention from Mum and Dad, and I constantly felt a sense of depression.

### 2. resign *v.* 使自己顺从于(做)某事;安于;辞职

[教材原文] Live in each season as it passes; breathe the

life. Fewer material desires lead to better personal well-being and fulfilment.

2. What do you think about living in nature like Tao and Thoreau? Give your reasons.  
略

air, drink the drink, taste the fruit, and **resign** yourself to the influences of each.

好好度过每一个季节,呼吸新鲜的空气,畅饮美酒,品尝水果,尽情享受这一切。

[归纳拓展]

- (1) resign oneself to 使自己顺从于……  
resign from 从……辞职

- (2) resignation *n.* 辞职;顺从

a letter of resignation 辞职信

hand in/offer one's resignation 呈递/上交辞职书

with resignation 安于现状;听天由命

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① Will you resign from the company if they ask you to?
- ② They accepted their defeat with resignation (resign).

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之人物介绍) 从工厂辞职后,他去了一个较大的城市。

After he had resigned from the factory/Having resigned from the factory, he went to a larger city.

### 3. ease *n.* 舒适,悠闲 *v.* (使)宽慰;减轻;缓解

[教材原文] In today's modern world, their ideas about living simply and being at **ease** with nature may take us a step closer to attaining personal well-being and fulfilment.

在今天的现代世界,他们关于简单生活和与自然和谐相处的思想,可能会让我们离获得个人幸福和满足感更近一步。

[归纳拓展]

- (1) at ease with 和……一起时感到放松  
with ease 轻易地

feel at ease 感到轻松自在

put/set... at ease 使……感到舒适



live a life of ease 过着安逸/无忧无虑的生活

(2) ease one's mind 使某人放心

### [即学即练]

(1) 完成句子

① I am happy to be here and I find myself at ease with life very much here.

我很高兴来到这里,并且我觉得这里的生活也很轻松。

② It would ease my mind to know that she was settled.

知道她已安顿下来会使我放心些。

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之发言稿)优秀的老师和友好的学生会给你留下深刻的印象,从而让你感到轻松。

You will be impressed by nice teachers and friendly students, making you feel at ease.

### 4. that 引导同位语从句

[教材原文] In 405, he quit the service of the court for good, expressing his unhappiness in the now famous line **that** he would not “bow like a servant in return for five *dou* of grain”.

公元405年,他辞去了官职,以表达他的不满,用今天的一句名言形容就是“不为五斗米折腰”。

### [归纳拓展]

(1) that 引导同位语从句,只起连接作用,无具体词义,不可省略。可以接同位语从句的名词通常有 news, idea, fact, promise, question, doubt, thought, hope, message, suggestion, word (消息), possibility 等。

(2) 在某些名词(如 demand, wish, suggestion, resolution 等)后面的同位语从句要用虚拟语气,即从句中的谓语动词形式用“should + 动词原形”,should 可以省略。

### [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He made the suggestion that they (should) carry (carry) on their discussion in English.

② The possibility that there is life on other planets in the universe has always inspired scientists to explore outer space.

(2) 判断下面句子中黑体部分的从句类型

① The news **that he gave it up** surprised us.

同位语从句

② The news **that he told me** surprised us.

定语从句

(3) 写作微练

① (读后续写之心理描写)听到**你被解雇**的消息,我感到非常担心。

Hearing the news that you were fired, I felt greatly worried.

② (应用文写作之发言稿)毫无疑问,**您的好意我们将深表感谢**。

There is no doubt that your kindness will be greatly appreciated by us.

### 多义词汇 专练

1. When he selects news of the other kind, he usually **withdraws** from the world of threatening reality towards the dream world. A

A. v. 退出

B. v. 取(款)

C. v. 停止提供

2. Dr Rowan, whose secretary **resigned** two weeks ago, has had to do all his own typing. B

A. v. 使自己顺从于(做)某事

B. v. 辞职

3. **reject**

A. v. 不用,不出版

B. v. 拒收,不录用

C. v. 拒绝接受

① Imperfect articles are **rejected** by our quality control. A

② He **rejected** the suggestions his assistant had given. C

③ To his sadness, they **rejected** his application for membership. B

4. With that, I spent eight to ten hours a day with Joe in the hospital, doing anything and everything I could to **ease** his discomfort. B

A. v. 使……容易些

B. v. 减轻,缓解

C. v. 降低

## Unit 5 课后素养评价（二十）

### Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### I. 单词拼写

1. In the botanical (植物的) garden we can find a variety of plants that range from tall trees to small flowers.
2. He lived in a poor, rural (乡村的) area as a child and his writings are related to his life at that time.
3. The old lady lived in the cottage (乡村小屋) at the foot of the mountain.
4. History books do not tell us much about the domestic (家庭的) lives of our ancestors.
5. The new vaccine is being evaluated (评估) in clinical trials.
6. Parents who have books in the home increase the level of education their children will attain (获得).
7. The lack of decent (相当好的) public transport is a great disadvantage.
8. Chinese people regard the lotus as a symbol of purity (纯洁).

#### II. 单句语法填空

1. According to the survey, people's reaction to the new film varies greatly.
2. We need to carry out a proper evaluation (evaluate) of the new system.
3. In other words, he must stop smoking for his health.
4. The volunteers' job is to have a chat with the depressive (depress) people to cheer them up.
5. As we all know, white is the symbol of purity (pure).
6. As a reward for his contribution to botany (botanical), Joseph Banks had a flower named after him.
7. Online networks, in contrast to the old kind, are open to all and easy to join.
8. One of the educational objectives of school is to attain (attain) a balanced development of students.

9. In return for your kindness, I would like to invite you to dinner.

10. I won't go to the party because I don't feel at ease with those people.

#### III. 短语填空

at ease with; in other words; in contrast to; in return for; focus on; draw... from; devote... to; withdraw from

1. There are many useful inferences that might be drawn from this research.
2. It's high time that we should devote ourselves to environmental protection and ecological improvement.
3. With five unexcused absences you will be withdrawn from the class.
4. She likes playing music. In other words, she will join the music club.
5. Listening to the soft music, the boy felt at ease with the communication with his friend.
6. With her attention focused on taking care of patients, she hardly has time to accompany her own child.
7. In return for your help, I invite you to spend the weekend with my family.
8. The stock (股票) lost 60 cents a share, in contrast to last year, when it gained 21 cents.

#### IV. 完成句子

1. Would you like to explain the reason why you are opposed to our plan?  
你能解释一下你为什么反对我们的计划吗?
2. She has resigned herself to the fact that she will lose the job.  
她已经接受了她将要失去这份工作的现实。
3. Widely employed in the teaching, the new method was popular with teachers and students.  
这种新方法在教学中得到了广泛的应用,受到了师生的欢迎。

4. All night long he lay awake, thinking of the reason why she rejected his offer.

他整夜都躺着没睡着,思考着她为什么拒绝他的帮助。

#### V. 语法填空

The Nanjing Hongshan Forest Zoo, once struggling to sustain its 1. survival (survive), has undergone a remarkable turnaround. It has become a popular destination 2. where visitors can glimpse diverse animals and appreciate the beauty and significance of life.

The man behind 3. the U-turn is Shen Zhijun, an animal welfare advocate. Last August, Shen took to the Internet 4. to publicise (publicise) his decade-long reform efforts—an overall campaign transforming the conventional zoo into a conservation-focused sanctuary(保护区). During his 30-minute speech 5. titled (title) *A Zoo's Pursuit*, Shen showcased the successful changes that he had performed.

After witnessing the helpless and hopeless 6. expressions (expression) of the animals, Shen's team set about making changes. Initially, they removed animal shows, which traditionally serve as the financial backbone of zoos. Subsequently, they transformed the park's landscape, cleverly using the 7. existing (exist) mountainous terrain of Hongshan to reproduce the natural habitats of animals in the wild. Plus, they introduced “multi-level villas” where animals belonging to the same ecological zone but not occupying the base of the food chain can 8. be housed (house) together, based on their ecological and geographical distribution.

This zoo has emerged 9. as the most animal-friendly zoo in China. Striking a balance between respecting animals' dignity and providing visitors with 10. enjoyable (enjoy) experiences is a challenging task, but Shen's team has successfully achieved it.

#### VI. 写作

##### 第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你准备参加一个“亲近绿色农场”的课外活动,请你用英语给你的朋友彼得(Peter)写一封电子邮件,邀请他参加。要点包括:

1. 写邮件的目的;
2. 活动的意义;
3. 期待回复。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:课外活动 extracurricular activity

---



---



---



---

##### 【参考范文】

Dear Peter,

I'm writing to invite you to participate in an extracurricular activity that will start soon.

It's to work on a small farm where students can grow flowers and vegetables. When you work on it after class, you will not only experience the pleasure of staying close to nature but also enjoy the rewards of your hard work in future. Besides, with more chances to communicate with Chinese students, you can improve your oral Chinese and also make some good friends. I am planning to join in it, hoping that we can work together on the farm.

I am looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

##### 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jenny was the only child in her home. She had a quarrel with her mother that afternoon and she ran out of the house angrily. She couldn't help weeping sorrowfully when she thought of the scolding from her mother. Having wandered aimlessly in the street

for hours, she felt a little hungry and wished for something to eat, but it was not possible for her, since she had nothing with her. She stood beside a stand for a while, watching the middle-aged seller busy doing his business. However, with no money in hand, she sighed and had to leave.

The seller behind the stand noticed the young girl and asked, "Hey, girl, do you want to have the noodles?"

"Oh, yes, but I don't have money on me..." she replied.

"That's nothing. I'll treat you today," said the man. "Come in."

The seller brought her a bowl of noodles, whose smell was so attractive. As she was eating, Jenny cried silently.

"What is it?" asked the man kindly.

"Nothing, actually I was just touched by your kindness!" said Jenny as she wiped her tears.

"Even a stranger on the street will give me a bowl of noodles, while my mother drove me out of the house. She showed no care for me. She is so merciless compared to a stranger!"

Hearing the words, the seller smiled, "Girl, do you really think so? I only gave you a bowl of noodles and you thanked me a lot. But it is your mother who has raised you since you were a baby. Can you number the times she cooked for you? Have you expressed your gratitude to her?"

Jenny sat there, speechless and numb with shock; she remembered her mother's familiar face and weathered hands. "Why did I not think of that? A bowl of noodles from a stranger made me feel indebted, but I have never thanked my mum for what she has done for me."

On the way home, Jenny made up her mind to make an apology to her mother for her rudeness as soon as she arrived home.

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

Approaching the doorway, Jenny took a deep breath. \_\_\_\_\_

A gentle touch on her hair called her mind back. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 【参考范文】

Approaching the doorway, Jenny took a deep breath. When she knocked at the door, she found the door was locked and her mother was not in. Tired and sad, she sat down in front of the house. "Where could my mother be?" she wondered. "Was she still angry with me?" Again, the scene of the quarrel appeared in her mind. She remembered her rudeness to her mother. Realising that all the scolding from her mother was due to the fact that her mother really cared a lot about her, she felt rather ashamed, but tears began to roll down her cheeks.

A gentle touch on her hair called her mind back. She raised her head and saw the familiar face of her mother. "Here you come! I've been looking for you," she said, tired but relieved. Jenny couldn't help throwing herself into her mother's arms. "Mum, I'm so sorry and thank you for all you have done for me." She expressed her sincere apology and great gratitude. Hearing this, her mother smiled patting her back gently.

# 迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

## Part 1 应用文写作——从自然中得到的启示

### 写作指导

#### (一) 文体

此类文章属于夹叙夹议类,内容通常包含“谁?”“干了什么事?”“结果如何?”等,然后再谈谈从这次经历中得到了什么经验教训。需要注意的是:

1. 在时态上,叙事多用一般过去时,看法和感受多用一般现在时;在人称上,多以第一人称和第三人称为主;
2. 注意叙事的衔接性,常见的衔接词有(just) then, after (that), when, as soon as 等。

#### (二) 基本框架

第一部分:简要叙述该事件;

第二部分:从该事件中收获的感想和教训;

第三部分:谈谈如何在实际生活中运用该经验。

### 典题示例

阅读下面短文,谈谈该故事给你的启示。词数应不少于 80。

On a sunny day a shepherd (牧羊人) walked with his two hungry sheep along a winding country path. He managed to have them two tied to each other just in case they should go separated. It was quite a long time before they arrived at a place where there was merely a small amount of fresh grass on each side of the path. Both of the sheep were so hungry that they hurried to the grass but in the separated direction. Unfortunately the rope fastening them was not long enough. No matter how hard they struggled, neither was able to reach the grass in front of them.

The shepherd was about to help them when he was surprised to find that one of them should voluntarily abandon the struggle, and went along with the other. Consequently, together the two sheep enjoyed the fresh grass on one side happily, and then the grass on the other.

### Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	夹叙夹议文
时态	以一般现在时为主
人称	以第一人称、第三人称为主
要点	1. 描述自然界中的现象 2. 该现象带给我们的启示或道理 3. 如何将获得的启示或道理运用到生活中

### Step 2: 要点补全

- ① It tells readers a story about two sheep (给读者讲述了两只羊的故事).
- ② They choose cooperation rather than competition (选择合作而不是竞争) in order to have access to the fresh grass (能吃到新鲜的草) of different sides.
- ③ As an old saying goes (俗话说), unity means power.
- ④ A chopstick breaks easily (容易折断).
- ⑤ A bunch of them does not break easily (难折断).
- ⑥ In my daily life, I often cooperate with my classmates when playing basketball, taking part in running races (参加赛跑比赛) or going in for community-service activities (参加社区服务活动).
- ⑦ I learn a lot from my classmates and friends by following their advice (通过听取他们的建议).
- ⑧ Meanwhile, I also do my part to help them in return (帮助他们以此作为回报).
- ⑨ Teamwork helps us secure numerous victories (确保无数次胜利).

### Step 3: 句式升级

- ① 用“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句连接 Step 2 中的①②两句。

It tells readers a story about two sheep, both of whom choose cooperation rather than competition in order to have access to the fresh grass of different sides.

- ② 用 while 连接 Step 2 中的④⑤两句。

A chopstick breaks easily, while a bunch of them does not.

③用强调句型升级 Step 2 中的⑨句。

It is teamwork that helps us secure numerous victories.

#### Step 4: 连句成篇

#### 【参考范文】

It tells readers a story about two sheep, both of whom choose cooperation rather than competition in order to have access to the fresh grass of different sides.

As an old saying goes, unity means power. A chopstick breaks easily, while a bunch of them does not.

In my daily life, I often cooperate with my classmates when playing basketball, taking part in running races or going in for community-service activities. I learn a lot from my classmates and friends by following their advice. Meanwhile, I also do my part to help them in return. It is teamwork that helps us secure numerous victories.

#### ○学以致用

阅读下面短文,谈谈海狸修水坝的故事给你的启示。词数应不少于 80。

Most people think it's fine to be "busy as a beaver (海狸)". But actually, although beavers may work hard, often they don't get much done.

Beavers are good at building dams and most beaver dams are wonders of engineering. The best ones are strongly built of trees, stones, and mud. They are wide at the bottom and narrow at the top.

Beavers think nothing of building a dam more than two hundred feet long. One dam, in Montana, was more than two thousand feet long. The largest one ever seen was in New Hampshire. It stretched for four thousand feet. It made a lake large enough

to hold forty beaver homes.

So beavers do build good dams. But they don't always build them in the right places. They just don't plan. They will build a dam across the widest part of the stream. They don't try to find a place where the stream is narrow. So a lot of their hard work is wasted.

Beavers should learn that it's not enough to be busy. You have to know what you're doing, too. For example, there was one Oregon beaver that really was a worker. It decided to fix a hole in a man-made dam. After five days of work it gave up. The hole it was trying to fill was the space that boats go through.

#### 【参考范文】

Beavers are very diligent dam-builders who can build extremely good dams. However, they sometimes don't know where to build the dams or which dams should be fixed only because they have no consciousness to make a plan.

The beavers' story illustrates the importance of planning. Without a plan the best intentions and efforts will not produce results.

As a high school student, I achieved considerable success in learning English through the combination of hard work and planning. I prepared good materials with the help of my teacher, made plans for my daily study and self-monitored the whole process of my learning. I made rapid progress and became very confident. I think I couldn't have done it without a good plan. Diligence is a key to success, but in my opinion, a good plan is also essential.

## Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

When I arrived home from school night was falling. A call came from the public: a bird of unknown species was being attacked by a group of noisy children in his front garden. He scared them off and grabbed their victim. I immediately called for my classmate Jack to the spot.

We were standing in front of a stranger's house in an unfamiliar street, rescue box in hand. My head was full of instructions to follow. "The bird would be our first test as a volunteer wildlife rescuer!" Jack said excitedly. We had completed the two-day intensive training course the previous month and learned the basic skills of rescuing animals in various situations.



But we were anxious, too. After all, it was the first time for us to rescue a bird. Would I be able to transfer the bird neatly into my rescue box? Many worries flashed in my mind. Sensing my unease about the act ahead, Jack said, “These things are pretty easy to deal with!”

I was wondering what kind of bird it was when a kind-looking man appeared and led us inside to see our very first patient. I lifted the edge of the shoe box very slightly to see an angry-looking bird standing to attention on very thin and long legs, together with a slice of banana and a small dish of water. He didn’t know its true name but the folks called the creature Red Fan. “It’s eaten some banana,” said the man proudly. The poor soul seemed rather nervous, so I decided not to grab it by hand but just transfer the whole shoe box into my rescue box.

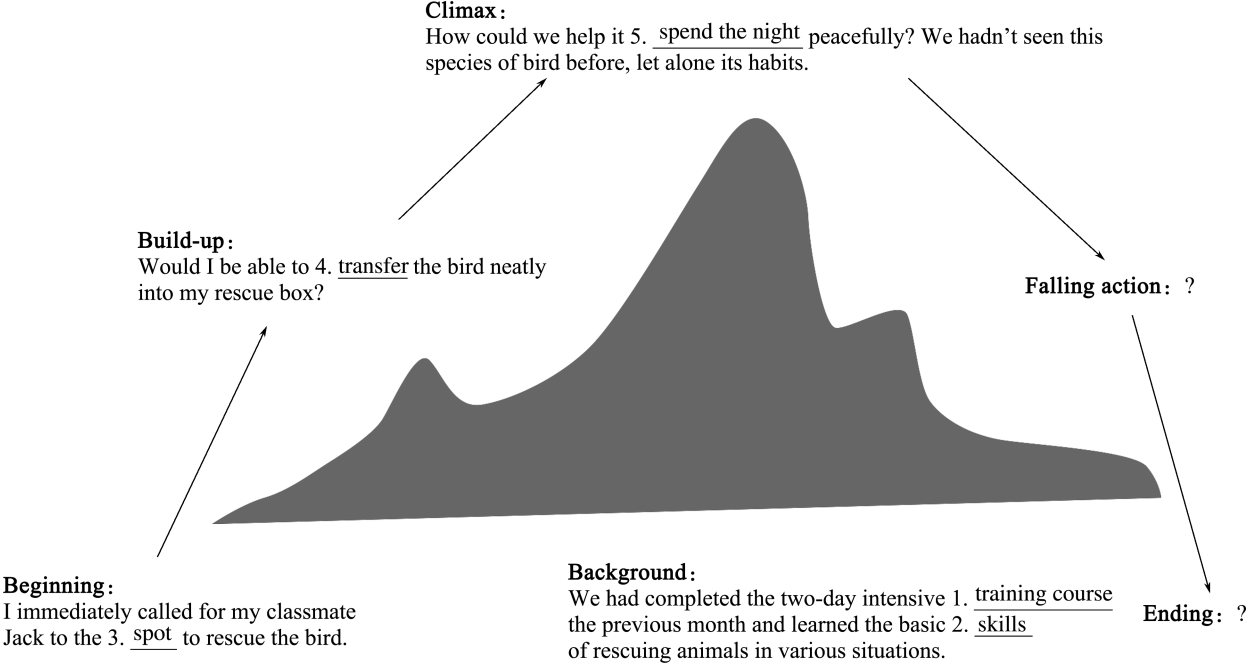
Back home, we could only see some minor injuries in the left wing, but there was no blood on its feathers. Jack managed to treat the injuries with some iodophor (碘伏药水). We assessed its condition to find out if it was appropriate to release the bird the next day. How could we help it spend the night peacefully? We hadn’t seen this species of bird before, let alone its habits.

任务一：阅读文章，回答问题。

What does the passage mainly talk about?

The author and his classmate Jack used rescue knowledge to save an injured bird successfully.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山(Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下列问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思并完善故事发展的情节。

<p><b>Paragraph 1:</b></p> <p>“Why not do a search on the Internet?” suggested Jack. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What did they do when surfing the Internet?</p> <p><u>They acted quickly and surfed the Internet to figure out the relevant information about the bird, such as its species and habits.</u></p> <p>2. What did they do for the bird according to the knowledge on the Internet?</p> <p><u>They put some cotton at the bottom of the box to keep it warm and placed it near the fireplace. In order to recover its energy, they gave it some food and water.</u></p> <p>3. How did the bird change after that? And how did they feel?</p> <p><u>The bird looked a bit more comfortable, and soon it fell asleep, so they felt relieved.</u></p>
---	--



续表

<p><b>Paragraph 2:</b></p> <p>The next day, we were glad to see the bird was well enough. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What was the bird doing when it felt good? <u>It was singing and bouncing around in the rescue box. Obviously, it had regained its energy!</u></p> <p>2. What did they do when the bird was well? <u>Realising it was fully ready for freedom, they took the box outside, placed the bird in my palm and petted it softly with mixed feelings. The author held the bird up and let it go.</u></p> <p>3. What did the bird do then? <u>The bird was circling above them as if to express its gratitude.</u></p> <p>4. How did they feel at last? <u>They felt that they were qualified volunteer wildlife rescuers now.</u></p>
---	--

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

“Why not do a search on the Internet?” suggested Jack. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

The next day, we were glad to see the bird was well enough. \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

【参考范文】

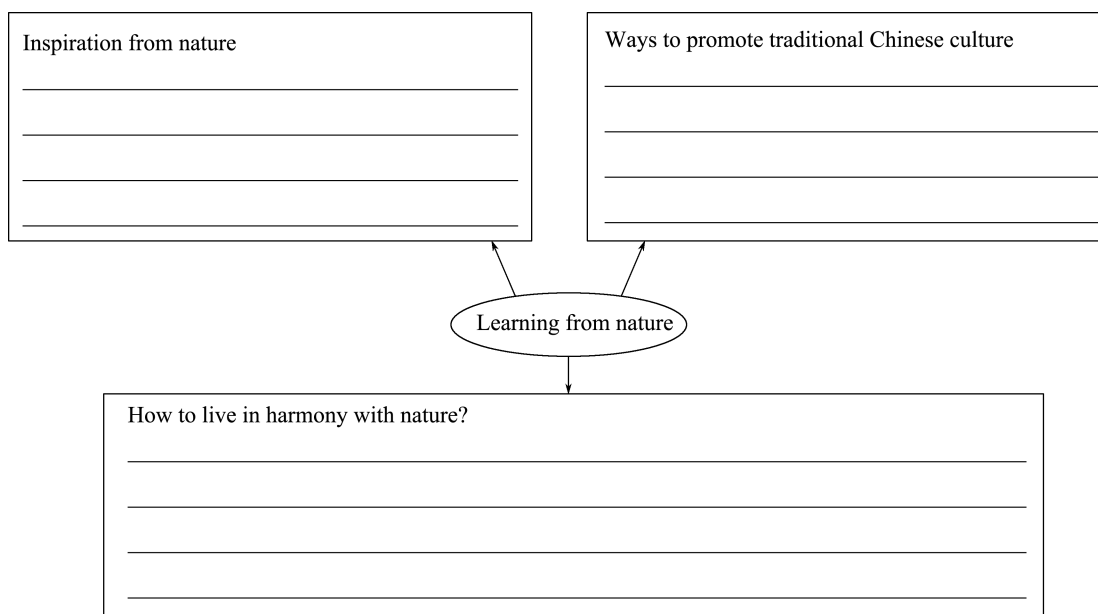
“Why not do a search on the Internet?” suggested Jack. We acted quickly and surfed the Internet to figure out the relevant information about the bird, such as its species and habits. Following the given advice, we put some cotton at the bottom of the box to keep it warm and placed it near the fireplace. In order to recover its energy, we gave it some food and water. The bird looked a bit more comfortable, and soon it fell asleep. Having ensured the bird was in good condition, we felt relieved.

The next day, we were glad to see the bird was well enough. It was singing and bouncing around in the rescue box. Obviously, it had regained its energy! Realising it was fully ready for freedom, we took the box outside, placed the bird in my palm and petted it softly with mixed feelings. I held the bird up and let it go. The bird was circling above us as if to express its gratitude. Jack and I looked at each other with a broad smile, feeling that we were qualified volunteer wildlife rescuers now.

## 重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

### 一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



答案:略

### 二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

Trees are useful to man in three very important ways; they provide him food, wood and other products; they give him shade; and they help to prevent drought and floods.

Unfortunately, in many parts of the world, man has not realised that the third of these services is the most important. In his eagerness to draw quick profit from the trees, he has cut them down in large numbers.

Two thousand years ago, a rich and powerful country cut down its trees to build warships, with which to gain itself an empire. It gained the empire but, without its trees, its soil became bare and poor. When the empire fell to pieces, the country found itself faced by floods and starvation.

Even though a government realises the importance of a plentiful supply of trees, it is difficult sometimes to make the people realise this. They cut down the trees but are too careless to plant and look after new trees. So unless the government has a good system of control, or can educate the people, the forests will slowly disappear.

This does not only mean that there will be fewer trees. The results are even more serious. For where there are trees, their roots break the soil up, allowing the rain to sink in, and also bind the soil. This prevents the soil from being washed away. But where there are no trees, the rain falls on hard ground and flows away on the surface, and this causes floods and the rain carries away the rich top soil in which crops grow. When all the top soil is gone, nothing remains but worthless desert.

1. Which of the following is the most important function of trees?

- A. They can keep man from the hot sunshine.
- B. They can protect man from drought and floods.
- C. They can make man draw quick profit from them.
- D. They can enable man to build warships.

2. What does the underlined word “bind” in Paragraph 5 mean?

- A. To wash away.
- B. To make stay together.
- C. To make wet.
- D. To improve.

3. What's the writer's purpose of writing the article?

- A. To tell people the use of wood.
- B. To tell people the function of tree roots.
- C. To warn that man mustn't destroy forests any more.
- D. To explain how trees help to prevent drought and floods.

答案:1~3 BBC

## 单元测试卷(五)

(考查范围:Unit 5 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

### A

Have you ever been into a cave? If not, please follow us and explore some of the most beautiful caves from around the world!

#### Marble Caves

Located in the centre of Lake General Carrera, the Marble Caves in Chico, Chile, are only accessible by boat. The surrounding crystal-clear waters allow visitors to see the rock formations beneath them while the rock ceilings above change colour (depending on the water levels and the season). The best time to visit, during sunrise and sunset, when the sun's rays light up the cave walls, making it an experience to remember.

#### Reed Flute Cave

Reed Flute Cave, known as “the Palace of Natural Arts”, is located in the northwest of Guilin in southern China. The limestone cave offers a grand fairyland of stalactites (钟乳石), stone pillars, stone curtains, birds, plants and animals in fantastic shapes and colours.

#### Fingal's Cave

This incredible sea cave is located on the uninhabited island of Staffa in Scotland. The cave's size, shape, and naturally-arched (拱形的) roof combine with the waves to create strange sounds that enhance its cathedral-like atmosphere.

#### The Blue Grotto

The Blue Grotto is the symbol of Capri. It is a sea cave found on the coast of the island and is a

well-known spot to all who visit the area. This cave is unique for its brilliant blue light which comes from two sources: the entrance to the cave and a bigger hole beneath the entrance. When viewed from inside the cave, the entrance appears as a brilliant white light just above the waterline, while the underwater hole, which is the larger source of light, provides a blue light.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了世界上最美丽的几个洞穴。

1. Why is sunset the best time to visit Marble Caves?

- A. Because it has enough light in it.
- B. Because it has the most beautiful scenery.
- C. Because it is surrounded by clear waters.
- D. Because boats are only available at sunset.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Marble Caves** 部分中的 “The best time to visit: during sunrise and sunset, when the sun's rays light up the cave walls, making it an experience to remember.” 可知,日落是参观 Marble Caves 的最佳时间,因为那个时候,洞里面有足够的光。故选 A。

2. Which cave will you go to if you want to enjoy the strange sound?

- A. Reed Flute Cave.
- B. Marble Caves.
- C. The Blue Grotto.
- D. Fingal's Cave.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Fingal's Cave** 部分中的 “The cave's size, shape, and naturally-arched (拱形的) roof combine with the waves to create

strange sounds that enhance its cathedral-like atmosphere.”可知，这个洞穴的大小、形状和自然的拱形屋顶与波浪相结合，创造出奇怪的声音，增加了如同大教堂般的氛围。所以如果你喜欢奇怪的声音，你可以去 Fingal's Cave。故选 D。

3. What is special about the Blue Grotto?

- A. Clear waters.
- B. Various birds and animals.
- C. Bright blue light.
- D. Strange shapes.

C 细节理解题。根据 **The Blue Grotto** 部分中的 “This cave is unique for its brilliant blue light which comes from two sources: the entrance to the cave and a bigger hole beneath the entrance.” 可知，这个洞穴是独一无二的，因为它明亮的蓝光来自两个源头：洞穴的入口和入口下面的一个更大的洞。所以 the Blue Grotto 的特别之处在于它的明亮的蓝色光。故选 C。

**B**

It's a sweet moment, as a chimp reaches up to kiss his mother's face. The touching photo was taken by the famous conservationist and activist Jane Goodall in 1993 in Gombe National Park in northwest Tanzania where she has studied chimpanzees for more than six decades.

The image is part of Vital Impacts consisting of a group of 100 photographers. The women-led non-profit was founded by award-winning photographer Ami Vitale and visual journalist Eileen Mignoni. They are selling fine arts images, most of which focus on wildlife and nature, with earnings benefiting conservation organisations including Jane Goodall Institute's Roots & Shoots programme.

“Our purpose is to use photography to create awareness and understanding; to help us see that the survival of the planet is closely connected with our own survival. As photographers, we have a huge opportunity to inform and influence change, but pressing the shutter (快门) is just the start,” Vitale said.

“For an image to have significance, it needs to reach people. To this end, we are working to get the photographs of Vital Impacts photographers and our students into high-profile media and exhibitions around the world.”

The organisation gives special attention to

photographers who are committed to the planet. Funds will be used to support global conservation and environmental initiatives and the group will offer two 20,000 dollars environmental storytelling awards.

Vital Impacts has raised more than 1.5 million dollars from the sale of fine art prints since the organisation was set up in late 2021. Some of its profits were donated to the organisation Direct Relief, which shipped more than 1,400 tons of medical supplies valued at 545 million dollars to support 351 healthcare facilities in disaster zones. Other profits were able to provide fuel and vehicle assistance to support wildlife corridors (廊道), a monitoring programme, and the restoration of the Snake River in the Pacific Northwest.

**【语篇解读】**摄影师 Ami Vitale 和视觉记者 Eileen Mignoni 共同创办了非营利组织 Vital Impacts。他们同一百名摄影师一起精选出与野生动物和自然相关的照片进行售卖，所得收益则用于支持自然环境的保护工作。

4. How did the author begin the text?

- A. By sharing an image.
- B. By introducing Jane Goodall's hobby.
- C. By recalling sweet memories.
- D. By describing chimps' unusual behaviour.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段中的 “It's a sweet moment, as a chimp reaches up to kiss his mother's face. The touching photo was taken by the famous conservationist...” 可知，文章开头描述了一张感人的照片，照片中一只黑猩猩在亲吻自己的妈妈。紧接着文章介绍了这张照片的拍摄背景，是著名的自然环境保护主义者和活动家 Jane Goodall 于 1993 年在贡贝国家公园拍摄的。以此引出下文中与环境保护相关的一个非营利组织。由此可推断，作者以分享照片为开端，引出下文。故选 A。

5. What is the aim of Vital Impacts?

- A. To help non-profits in the world.
- B. To call on people to donate.
- C. To sell images to benefit conservation.
- D. To pick out excellent photographers.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 “They are selling fine arts images, most of which focus on wildlife and nature...” 和第三段中 Vitale 所说的话 “Our purpose is to use photography to create

awareness and understanding...”可知, Vital Impacts 售卖的照片大多与野生动物和自然相关, 所得收益则用于自然环境的保护。故选 C。

6. Which photographers are most likely to join Vital Impacts?

- A. Those who love nature.
- B. Those who are award winners.
- C. Those who mainly take photos of animals.
- D. Those who are devoted to the environment.

D 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“The organisation gives special attention to photographers who are committed to the planet.”可知, Vital Impacts 会重点关注致力于保护地球的摄影师。由此可推断, 致力于环境保护的摄影师最有可能加入 Vital Impacts 组织。故选 D。

7. What does the last paragraph mainly tell us about Vital Impacts?

- A. Its funds.
- B. Its sponsor.
- C. Its contributions.
- D. Its future plan.

C 段落大意题。通读最后一段的内容可知, 本段主要介绍了 Vital Impacts 将售卖照片所筹集到的资金捐给其他组织, 为它们提供援助。由此可以归纳, 本段是对 Vital Impacts 这一组织所做出的贡献的介绍。故选 C。

### C

Not long ago, people could only buy organic food in small shops. Today it is common in most major supermarkets. The reason for the increase is that more and more people are demanding food grown without chemicals. Since the 1990s, organic farm production has gone up continuously. This pattern is expected to continue around the globe.

Australia leads the world in land used for organic agriculture. It has four times as much land devoted to organic farming as all of Asia. However, most of the land is not very fertile, and it only produces a modest amount of food. Argentina is a distant second, followed by Brazil, the United States and China. In Africa, only a very small amount of land is registered for organic farming. That does not mean Africa relies on chemicals. In fact, many farmers do not use chemicals because they cannot afford them. Yet there are no programmes for these farmers to prove they do not

use chemicals. Without these programmes their food can never be approved organic.

India has had the most dramatic recent increase in organic farming. Like many other countries, India sees continual growth in organic food sales around the world. This, of course, leads to growth in profits. Sales of organic food were more than doubled from 2000 to 2005. Like India, many countries are trying to increase commercial organic farming to get a share of the sales. This has led to criticism. Some people believe that organic farming should not just be about making money. They think the goal is to help the environment. Others say organic farming will not continue if it is not profitable. They say that people should be able to make money while providing healthy food for mankind.

【语篇解读】有机食品有益于地球和人类, 所以人们想增加有机耕作。目前世界各地都在提倡有机耕作。

8. Why do people want to increase organic farming?

- A. Because more and more people demand chemicals to grow food.
- B. Because profits from organic farming help make approval programmes.
- C. Because there are fewer chemicals available to the human beings.
- D. Because organic food is good for Earth and the human beings.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“The reason for the increase is that more and more people are demanding food grown without chemicals.”可知, 有机食品因为在种植的时候没有使用化学品, 所以受到了越来越多人的青睐。因此可推知, 人们想发展有机农业的原因是有机食品不破坏环境, 且对人的身体健康有好处。故选 D。

9. What can we know from the passage?

- A. India uses the least land to organic farming.
- B. The US is the fourth largest organic farming country.
- C. Brazil uses less land to organic farming than China.
- D. China and India have the same amount of organic farmland.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Australia leads the world in land used for organic agriculture. It has four times as much land

devoted to organic farming as all of Asia. However, most of the land is not very fertile, and it only produces a modest amount of food. Argentina is a distant second, followed by Brazil, the United States and China.”可知，澳大利亚拥有世界上最多的有机农田，阿根廷、巴西、美国和中国紧随其后，即美国是第四大有机农业国家。故选 B。

10. What can be inferred from the passage?

- A. People who eat food with chemicals have shorter lifespans.
- B. India will soon become the largest country of growing organic food.
- C. More countries will farm organically as the environment gets worse.
- D. There will be fewer organic farms if the demand for organic food goes down.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“The reason for the increase is that more and more people are demanding food grown without chemicals.”以及最后一段中的“India has had the most dramatic recent increase in organic farming. Like many other countries, India sees continual growth in organic food sales around the world. This, of course, leads to growth in profits.”“Others say organic farming will not continue if it is not profitable.”可知，因为人们对有机食品的需求不断增加，所以有机食品热销，因而促进了有机农业的迅速发展。由此可推知，如果有机农业没有利润，以及人们对有机食品的需求下降了，那么有机农业的规模也会随之变小，即如果对有机食品的需求下降，有机农场就会减少。故选 D。

11. What is the passage mainly about?

- A. Organic food has become much more common.
- B. People do not want to eat food with chemicals in it.
- C. Organic farming is growing around the world.
- D. Countries all want to make money from organic farming.

C 主旨大意题。根据第一段中的“Since the 1990s, organic farm production has gone up continuously. This pattern is expected to continue around the globe.”并结合全文可知，文章主要介绍有机食品有益于地球和人类，所以人们想增加有机耕作，同时本文举例说明了有机农

业在全球的快速发展；澳大利亚拥有世界上最多的有机农田，阿根廷、巴西、美国和中国紧随其后，印度在有机农业方面的发展最为迅速。故选 C。

#### D

Polar bears generally use sea ice to hunt (捕猎), but a newly discovered group has found another way. An isolated (与世隔绝的) population of polar bears has been discovered in a fjord (峡湾) in southeast Greenland, which is free of sea ice for most of the year. Polar bears generally need sea ice to survive, so the discovery is raising hopes that some kinds of the polar bears might survive the loss of sea ice caused by global warming.

Researchers found the population living in a fjord in the southeast Greenland, which is surrounded by mountains and an ice sheet to the west, and the ocean to the east. The sea-ice coverage lasts for only around 100 days each year. With sea ice in the fjord becoming smaller because of global warming, the whole group was expected to die out by the end of this century.

But the isolated population has found a way to hunt without sea ice. The group, about 27 adult females, has been isolated from other polar bear populations along Greenland's east coast for at least 200 years.

Tracking data from marked bears proves that they don't move far. For example, when members of the group went out of the fjord, the ice on which they sat sometimes got caught in the rapid water flow. “Whenever this happened, they would get stuck and then, they would have to jump off, swim to the beach and walk back home empty-handed,” says lead author Kristin Laidre, an animal ecologist at the University of Washington in Seattle.

Though the researchers failed to video their hunting without sea ice, the existence of this small population in conditions of low sea-ice coverage suggests there is a chance that the population can survive, even as sea ice flows away to farther north each year.

【语篇解读】研究者发现，一小群生活在格陵兰岛东南方向一峡湾处的北极熊可能会在全球变暖导致的海冰流失中幸存下来。

12. What have the newly discovered polar bears



found?

- A. A place filled with ice sheets.
- B. A way to hunt without sea ice.
- C. A way to track sea ice flowing away.
- D. An ice sheet caught in the rapid water flow.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*But the isolated population has found a way to hunt without sea ice.*”可知,新发现的这一北极熊群体找到了这一种没有海冰的狩猎方式,故选B。

13. Why were polar bears in the fjord expected to die out?

- A. Because they are being hunted by humans.
- B. Because they have lost their source of food.
- C. Because they can't stand the increasing heat.
- D. Because the sea ice there is becoming smaller.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*With sea ice in the fjord becoming smaller because of global warming, the whole group was expected to die out by the end of this century.*”可知,由于海冰变少,峡湾里的北极熊群体可能会面临灭绝。故选D。

14. What can be inferred from the text?

- A. The bears can swim very far to hunt for food.
- B. Kristin Laidre is negative about the future of the group.
- C. Once the group went out of the fjord, they might get into trouble.
- D. If the bears got caught in the rapid water flow, they wouldn't go home.

C 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段的内容可推知,如果北极熊群体走出峡湾,它们就会陷入困境。故选C。

15. Which is the most suitable title for the text?

- A. Polar Bear Population Can Survive Without Sea Ice
- B. Sea Ice Is Becoming Smaller Because of Global Warming
- C. Polar Bear Population May Die Out Because of Global Warming
- D. A Newly Discovered Polar Bear Population Has Been Stuck in a Fjord

A 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“*Polar bears generally need sea ice to survive, so the discovery is raising hopes that...*”可知,本文主要讲述了研究者发现北极熊可能会在全球变暖导致的海冰流失中幸存下来。由此可知,A项

“没有海冰,北极熊群体可能会幸存下来”适合作为文章标题。故选A。

## II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

“*Most people don't know anything about soil,*” says Dominique Arrouays, a soil scientist in France. “*In the city, they never see the soil, unless there's construction. It's all pavement. They don't realise that everything depends on soils.*”

Soils grow the food that provides an estimated 98.8 percent of our daily calories, according to a paper in *Environment International*, and house more than 25 percent of the world's biodiversity.

### 16

Healthy soil is marked by its porous (多孔) structure, produced by root growth as well as the activities of earthworms and insects. 17 Healthy soils not only make farms more climate-resilient (气候适应力), but they can also help keep costs for farmers and taxpayers down.

According to a United Nations report, a third of the planet's soil is highly degraded due to acidification, erosion (腐蚀), and other factors. Soils cannot be regenerated quickly. 18 And yet many people dismiss it as nothing more than dirt.

19 Erosion occurs when soil is displaced by wind or water—washed off farms and stored in ditches and streams, or blown across the landscape as dust. Healthy soil resists erosion well, especially if it is protected by plants above ground and roots below-ground. 20 The results can be disastrous. Even small changes year after year can gradually cause big problems.

Soil is the skin of the earth. We need to protect it. It's in everybody's interest to support farmers in rebuilding soil health and preventing erosion.

- A. But soils are in great trouble at present.
- B. Soil erosion is a particularly serious problem worldwide.
- C. This structure allows rainfall to sink in healthy soil deeply.
- D. Soils also store massive amounts of both fresh water and carbon.
- E. It may take up to 1,000 years to produce a couple centimetres of soil.
- F. But when soil is left bare, wind and water can

more easily displace it.

G. Soil is a living community to create a rich environment for food production.

答案:16~20 DCEBF

### III. 完形填空(共15小题;每小题1分,满分15分)

Early spring can be a tough time in the Midwest. It can 21 both people and animals with its unexpected snowstorms.

Every spring, migratory (迁徙的) birds camp out in a large pond near my house on the way to their summer 22. This year, besides geese, scaups, a type of diving duck spent days hanging out 23 food. Then a snowstorm hit, followed by a very 24 night.

The next morning, I was shocked to see that all birds had 25 overnight—except one lone female, who was diving 26 and dynamically in the circle of open water. Her movement and body heat had kept the 27 from coming close as I 28 her from my warm house.

However, as the temperature dropped, the open water got smaller, and her movements slowed. I watched with 29 as she eventually stopped moving, fearing that something might happen.

And then it happened: Two more ducks appeared, 30 next to her still body. More ducks came and the circle of water came alive with their splashing and diving. Slowly, the circle of water 31 in size. Within minutes, the lone female was revived by her friends' presence.

This little duck wouldn't have 32 another night without her friends. She, in turn, had kept that area of water 33, so her friends had a place to stop and 34 themselves. Sometimes, a tiny action—even our mere 35—might brighten one's day, and even save one's life.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章通过叙述母鸭陷入危险最终得救的故事告诉我们:一个小小的举动,甚至是我们的出现,都有可能给某个人的生活带来光明。

21. A. scare B. move  
C. surprise D. beat

C 根据下文的 "... with its unexpected snowstorms."可知,早春时节会出现意想不到的暴风雪,让人和动物都大吃一惊。故选C。

22. A. camp B. vacations

- C. courses D. habitat

D 根据上文的 "migratory (迁徙的) birds"可知,此处指迁徙的鸟在去往栖息地的路上。故选D。

23. A. regardless of B. in search of  
C. in addition to D. as for

B 根据语境及上文的 "hanging out"可知,潜鸭徘徊是为了寻找吃的东西。故选B。

24. A. dark B. starry  
C. peaceful D. freezing

D 根据上文的 "Then a snowstorm hit..."可知,暴风雪袭来,接着应是一个非常寒冷的夜晚。故选D。

25. A. gathered B. disappeared  
C. panicked D. fainted

B 根据下文的 "... except one lone female, who was diving 26 and dynamically in the circle of open water."可知,除了一只孤单的母鸭,其他的都消失了。故选B。

26. A. energetically B. patiently  
C. calmly D. cautiously

A 此处和 "dynamically" 意义一致,energetically符合语境。故选A。

27. A. ice B. house  
C. snowstorm D. water

A 根据语境可知,母鸭用她的体温和身体运动的热量使开阔的水域不被冰封住。故选A。

28. A. tended B. followed  
C. watched D. recorded

C 根据此处对母鸭的描写及下文的 "I watched with 29 as she eventually stopped moving..."可知,作者在温暖的屋子里注视着这一切。故选C。

29. A. relief B. doubt  
C. anxiety D. pleasure

C 根据下文的 "... fearing that something might happen."可知,作者担心母鸭。故选C。

30. A. rowing B. landing  
C. circling D. feeding

B 根据语境可知,两只鸭子应是降落在母鸭旁边。故选B。

31. A. increased B. decreased  
C. transformed D. formed

A 根据上文的 "More ducks came and the circle of water came alive..."可知,更多的鸭子来了,池塘中没有结冰的小水圈因为它们的游动和潜

水而复苏,所以水圈应是变大了。故选 A。

32. A. spared B. wasted  
C. spent D. lasted

D 根据上文的“Within minutes, the lone female was revived by her friends' presence.”可知,其他鸭子的到来使这只母鸭苏醒过来,所以如果没有那些鸭子,她可能熬不过另一个晚上。故选 D。

33. A. still B. open  
C. clean D. steady

B 根据上文内容及空后的“so her friends had a place to stop”可知,母鸭一直努力让那块水域保持开放。故选 B。

34. A. motivate B. remind  
C. judge D. refresh

D 根据空格前的“so her friends had a place to stop”可知,此处指有一个地方可以栖息。故选 D。

35. A. presence B. appreciation  
C. attitude D. request

A 此处是词汇复现,呼应上一段末句“Within minutes, the lone female was revived by her friends' presence.”中的“presence”。故选 A。

#### IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

“Failing to open curtains fully makes people more likely to get sick,” 36. a new study suggests. It found sunlight kills disease-causing bacteria 37. which/that live in dust, while darker conditions let them thrive (繁殖). The findings 38. were published (publish) in the journal *Microbiome*.

Researchers 39. warned (warn) the problem also affects windowless offices. Study leader Dr Ashkaan Fahimipour said, “Humans spend most of their time indoors, where dust carries bacteria 40. making (make) us sick.”

“Therefore, it's important 41. to understand (understand) how the buildings we live influence dust eco-systems and how this could 42. seriously (serious) affect our health.”

His team at the University of Oregon chose 11 small rooms and allowed in 43. different (differ)

levels of sunlight. After 90 days, dark rooms had doubled the number of bacteria able to reproduce. Fahimipour added, “We hope that with 44. further (far) understanding we can design access to daylight in 45. building (build) schools, offices, hospitals and homes in ways that reduce the risk of dust-borne infections.”

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,学校为增强学生的环保意识,倡导学生养成垃圾分类的习惯,邀请你为校英语宣传栏写一封以“垃圾分类,保护环境”为主题的倡议书。内容包括:

1. 倡议的原因和目的;
2. 倡议的具体内容;
3. 发出倡议。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右,开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:垃圾分类 garbage sorting 区分 differentiate

Dear friends,

---

---

---

---

Li Hua

##### 【参考范文】

Dear friends,

Our school produces a lot of rubbish every day, such as leftover food, waste paper and plastic bottles, which brings a wide range of environmental problems as well as the waste of resources. Therefore, it's time we took immediate action to change the situation.

First of all, it is necessary for us to raise awareness of environmental protection and develop the good habit of garbage sorting. What's more, we should voluntarily differentiate recyclable rubbish from non-recyclable waste in our daily life.

In a word, if everyone does his/her bit

responsibly in garbage sorting, our school will become better and better.

Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

When tragedy struck his little girl during the Depression (大萧条), this father did the only thing he could.

The tragedy happened in the year 1913. I was only 6 years old when I was rushed to the hospital with two crushed feet. My parents were told I might never walk again.

The accident happened when I was sitting in front of our house in Lowell, Massachusetts. I was playing in a puddle (水坑) after a rainstorm and suddenly felt a huge weight on my feet. When I looked up, there was a car tire on them. I cried out, but the motor was running and no one could hear me over the engine.

The driver ran across the street for a newspaper. When he got back to his car, he drove away—never knowing he had parked on my feet.

Just about then, our neighbour's son came home and saw me bending over my feet in pain. He immediately carried me home, and I remember thinking how tall and strong he was.

An ambulance came, and I remained in the hospital for 3 weeks while my feet were “repaired”. When I returned home, I could hardly walk.

I sat in our bay window and watched the children play on the street and longed to join them, but I couldn't. I felt so left out despite my parents' company.

My parents were told that if I was ever to walk again, I'd need treatment, which in those days meant riding a tricycle (三轮车) to strengthen the muscle and eventually get my feet back into condition for walking.

Our family couldn't afford such an extravagance (奢侈品). Times were tough during the Depression, and there were five mouths to feed, besides buying

coal and wood for the stove.

Dad couldn't afford the bus fare and on cold winter days he walked 7 miles every day in his only winter coat to get to work. No, there was no money for a tricycle. I would be a cripple (残疾人) all my life.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Then one day, while sitting at my usual place in the window, I saw my father walking up the street carrying a tricycle on his shoulder. \_\_\_\_\_

It was many years later before I learned where and how Dad had got the tricycle.

## 【参考范文】

Then one day, while sitting at my usual place in the window, I saw my father walking up the street carrying a tricycle on his shoulder. Was that true? I couldn't believe my eyes. I opened the window and cried out, “Is that tricycle for me?” Having put down the tricycle, Dad told me that it belonged to me. “Ride the tricycle every day, and then you will be all right, my girl!” From then on, with my father's company, I rode it every day to strengthen my muscle. Regardless of pain, I kept on practising riding. Eventually I got my feet back into condition, and could walk normally!

It was many years later before I learned where and how Dad had got the tricycle. My mother told me what had happened on those cold winter days. In his only winter coat, he was wandering around the hospital. He begged the doctor to save my feet. Moved by my father, the doctor asked the hospital to give my father a part-time job to do. With the doctor's help, my father got the job. Working day and night, eventually, he earned enough money to buy the tricycle.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and nature. In this unit we will realise the natural beauty, and meanwhile get to know how to protect the environment. Through learning the unit, we will grasp characteristics of different types of writing, better understand the relationship between man and nature, develop the awareness of appreciating and conserving nature, and establish the belief of appreciating nature, valuing nature and caring for nature.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“人与自然”主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	理解并运用非谓语动词作定语、状语和补语。
		语篇	1. 阅读描写自然的语篇,热爱自然; 2. 了解格律诗的写作手法。
		语用	1. 了解分享旅游经历的基本用语; 2. 了解创作诗歌的基本规则。
	语言技能	听	了解材料中说话者的观点,并尝试回忆对话内容。
		说	学习并使用有关“举例子”“做解释”的常用表达。
		读	通过阅读描写自然的文章,思考人类活动对自然环境的影响,提高保护大自然的意识。
		写	1. 能正确运用非谓语动词作定语、状语和补语的用法描绘大自然; 2. 能创作一首诗歌。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	熟练运用本单元所学的知识,围绕“会说话的大自然”这一话题进行听、说、读、写训练,从而提升综合运用语言的能力。
文化意识	通过对“First Snow”和“Silent Spring”的学习,树立欣赏自然之美和保护环境意识。
思维品质	在生活中要善于发现大自然的美,并努力保护我们赖以生存的环境。

◊ 必备知识

必背单词	weekly, inspector, insist, shaving, prospect, bend, church, rhyme, innocent, enhance, wheat, sweep, ban, chorus, dozen, thorough, precise, launch, reputation, elegance, passionate, diamond
重点表达	break out, come around, talk away, cause harm to, urge... to do, be a target for, stand by
重点知识	1. as if/as though 引导表语从句 2. 形容词作状语
单元语法	非谓语动词作定语、补语、状语
单元写作	诗歌

## 探 · 究 · 构 · 建

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

#### 学习任务目标

1. Watch the video, get the main idea, and activate learned background knowledge and language knowledge.
2. Read the text, and summarize the descriptions about the first snow.

#### ○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

#### (一)核心词汇

1. insist *v.* 坚称, 坚决认为
2. innocent *adj.* 天真无邪的
3. enhance *v.* 改进; 增强
4. weekly *adj.* 一周一次的, 每周的
5. inspector *n.* 检查员, 巡视员
6. prospect *n.* 开阔的景观, 景色
7. bend *v.* 变弯曲
8. church *n.* 教堂
9. rhyme *n.* 儿歌, 童谣
10. transform... into... 把……转变成……
11. turn... into... 把……变成……

#### (二)阅读词汇

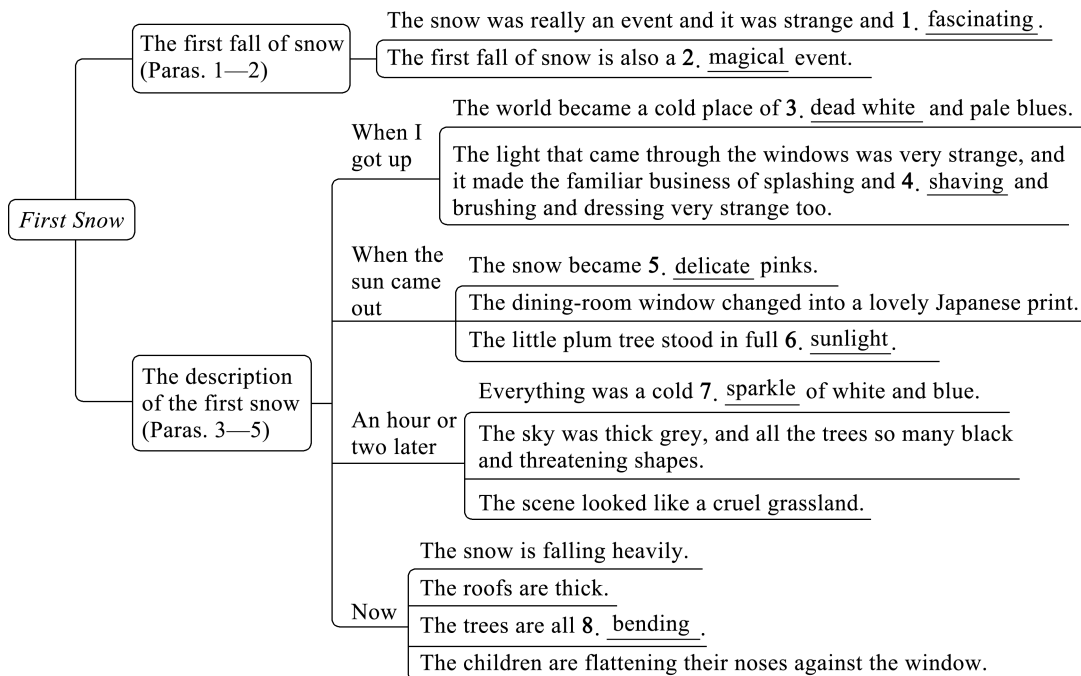
1. secrecy *n.* 保密, 秘密状态
2. shaving *n.* 刮胡子
3. faintly *adv.* 微弱地; 模糊地
4. dispose *v.* 排列, 布置
5. sparkle *n.* 闪耀, 闪光
6. feather *n.* 羽毛
7. goose *n.* 鹅
8. flush *v.* (使)发红
9. plum *n.* 李子; 梅子
10. redden *v.* (使)变红
11. talk away 不断地谈; 在谈话中度过
12. early on 在初期



## 任务型课堂

### 文本整体理解

#### Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### 文本细节领悟

#### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Why did the writer think it is a different age?
  - Because Mr Robert Lynd said a fall of snow was an event.
  - Because it seemed as if Christmas had suddenly come round again.
  - Because he didn't see a fall of snow for a long time.
  - Because he never saw so heavy a fall of snow before.
- How did the writer find the first fall of snow here?
  - Magical.
  - Quiet.
  - Strange.
  - Common.
- What happened to the dining-room window?
  - It was flushed with delicate pinks.
  - It became a lovely Japanese print.
  - It was covered by the faintly flushed snow.
  - It was artfully disposed in full sunlight.
- What made the writer hardly see the whole shallow valley clearly?
  - The grey sky.
  - The falling flakes.

- The bending trees.
- The white and blue light.

答案: 1~4 CABB

### 语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- I was nearly as excited about it this morning as the children, whom I found all looking through the window at the magic outside and talking away as excitedly as if Christmas had suddenly come round again.

[句子分析] 句中 whom I found all looking through the window... 为 whom 引导的非限制性定语从句, 修饰先行词 children; as if Christmas had suddenly come round again 为 as if 引导的方式状语从句。

[尝试翻译] 今天早上我几乎和孩子们一样兴奋, 我发现他们都透过窗户望着外面奇妙的世界, 兴奋地说个不停, 好像圣诞节又突然来临了。

- It is the first fall we have had here this winter, and last year I was out of the country, sweating in a hot climate, during the snowy season, so that it really does seem an age since I saw the ground so fantastically carpeted.

[句子分析] 句中 and 连接两个表示顺承关系的并列分句, 第一个分句中 we have had here this

winter 为省略关系代词的定语从句，修饰先行词 fall，第二个分句中 so that it really does seem an age 为 so that 引导的结果状语从句，since I saw the ground so fantastically carpeted 为 since 引导的时间状语从句。

[尝试翻译]这是今年冬天我们这里的第一场降雪，去年雪季，我身在异国，在炎热的天气里汗流不止，所以我确实很长一段时间没有欣赏到这银装素裹的世界了。

### ○思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. Why does the author mention Jane Austen at the beginning of the text?

By referencing the characters of Jane Austen, who is known for her witty, perceptive observations of early 19th century English country life, the author is emphasising the irony and self-awareness with which he goes on to make his statement about the first snow.

2. What images does the author use to enhance the description of snow?

Images used by the author to enhance the description of snow: a cold place of dead white and pale blues, flushing the snow with delicate pinks, a cold sparkle of white and blue, falling heavily, in great soft flakes...

## Unit 6 课后素养评价（二十一）

### Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

#### I. 阅读理解

One afternoon, as we approached a mine from the air, a crew of panicked miners went running into the forest. As I followed their progress, something caught my eye: two macaws, flying away like crazy. After we landed, I found macaw feathers, yellow and blue, hanging on a string from a pole in the camp. Cabral shook his head and said that the miners must have hunted and eaten the bird. “The animals die a silent death,” he said mournfully. For a public servant, Cabral is unusually outspoken—at least on social media, where his account is devoted to strongly criticising animal cruelty.

At the camp, Finger told Cabral that he had found signs of an active site deeper in the forest. We followed him, moving silently along a path through the woods. As we advanced, we could hear a dog barking. There in a clearing was a wooden hut, abandoned except for a black dog, yowling miserably. Then we heard a strange noise from a box next to the hut. Cabral lifted a plastic cover, revealing a mass of puppies, just a few days old. He picked up a couple and held them, then walked to a shelf where the miners had been drying wildlife meat. He threw a piece to the mother dog, which began wolfing it.

Early in his career, Cabral acquired the nickname Rambo, but it seemed mostly like a joke. He had taken up armed patrols (巡逻) only in service of wildlife conservation, his lifelong passion. He came from Juiz de Fora, a city in Brazil’s central part, and spent his childhood immersed in nature, watching wildlife programmes and reading about animals.

“This is all I ever wanted to do,” he told me. He earned a degree in biology and another in ecology, then joined IBAMA, a branch of the environment ministry that protects threatened ecosystems. In 2013, Cabral secured approval to build a unit of rangers (护林员) who were committed to saving the environment, by force if necessary.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了 Cabral 保护野生动物的故事。

1. Why did the miners get so panicked that they ran into the forest?
    - A. Because they mined illegally.
    - B. Because they mistook “us” as invaders.
    - C. Because they killed animals cruelly.
    - D. Because they camped without permission.
- C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Cabral shook his head and said that the miners must have

hunted and eaten the bird. ‘The animals die a silent death,’ he said mournfully.”可推断出，矿工们惊慌地跑进了森林是因为他们残忍地杀害了动物。故选 C。

2. What was Cabral’s career?

- A. Fighting against evils like Rambo.
- B. Protecting wildlife, by force if necessary.
- C. Volunteering in service of wildlife conservation.
- D. Filming wildlife programmes in nature.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“He earned a degree in biology and another in ecology, then joined IBAMA, a branch of the environment ministry that protects threatened ecosystems. In 2013, Cabral secured approval to build a unit of rangers (护林员) who were committed to saving the environment, by force if necessary.”可知，Cabral 的职业是护林员，必要时可以使用武力。故选 B。

3. What do we know about IBAMA?

- A. It centred on wildlife protection.
- B. It originally built a unit of armed rangers.
- C. It was co-founded by Cabral.
- D. It worked as a branch of a non-profit organisation.

A 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“... then joined IBAMA, a branch of the environment ministry that protects threatened ecosystems.”可知，IBAMA 以保护野生动物为中心。故选 A。

4. Which can best describe Cabral?

- A. Passionate and devoted.
- B. Smart and straightforward.
- C. Cooperative and courageous.
- D. Intelligent and knowledgeable.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“He had taken up armed patrols (巡逻) only in service of wildlife conservation, his lifelong passion. He came from Juiz de Fora, a city in Brazil’s central part, and spent his childhood immersed in nature, watching wildlife programmes and reading about animals.”可推断出，Cabral 对保护野生动物充满热情并全身心投入。故选 A。

## II. 七选五

Work, family and world events can be so stressful that it feels like optimism and joy are far out of reach. Anyone can get stuck in a bad mood—but you don’t have to stay there! 1

Once you’re in a mood you need to shake, start by going to your happy place. 2 If not, keep a photo on your phone or computer of a beautiful, favourite place and take a moment to imagine yourself there. What’s the weather like? What does the air smell like? What are you doing while you’re there? How does being there make you feel? You’ll instantly feel calmer, lost in the daydream or the memory of your happy place.

We can make our situations worse by keeping thinking about negative thoughts. 3 say “Bad things always happen to me” becomes “What lesson can I learn from this situation?” “I wasted the whole day” into “I still have 5 more hours left to make today a great day!”

Whether it is going for a coffee at your favourite café, or catching a movie in the theatre, make sure that once a week you schedule some “me” time. 4 That may mean getting less done during the day, but you deserve to take a mental break, regularly. So give priority to the time you need to recharge.

5 Whether it’s the rare bit of easy traffic on your way to work or the break in the weather, you won’t have time to complain about the negative things because you’re so busy being grateful.

- A. You can also volunteer at your local shelter.
- B. It helps focus on the present and clear your mind.
- C. Thankfully, there are ways you can get back on track.
- D. If you’re able, get into nature and breathe the fresh air.
- E. Relieve your stress and refresh your mind, body and spirit.
- F. When a negative thought flashes, replace it with a positive one.
- G. When a negative attitude takes over, shake it off by practising gratitude.

答案: 1~5 CDFEG

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—  
Language points

学习任务目标

- 1. Learn important expressions about the topic, and use them to describe snow.
- 2. Practise using the expressions to complete relevant exercises.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. The **prospect** from the balcony was breathtaking. 景色
- 2. The branch **bent** but didn't break when the boy climbed along it. 变弯曲
- 3. The peacock displayed its fine tail **feather**. 羽毛
- 4. Young children often learn nursery **rhymes**. 儿歌, 童谣
- 5. The two halves of the town face each other, and both have interesting **churches**. 教堂

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>inspector</u> <i>n.</i> 检查员, 巡视员	<u>inspect</u> <i>v.</i> 检查; 视察; 检阅
	<u>inspection</u> <i>n.</i> 检查; 视察; 检阅
<u>secrecy</u> <i>n.</i> 保密, 秘密状态	<u>secret</u> <i>adj.</i> 秘密的 <i>n.</i> 秘密
	<u>secretary</u> <i>n.</i> 秘书
<u>shaving</u> <i>n.</i> 刮胡子	<u>shave</u> <i>v.</i> 剃(须发); (尤指) 刮脸
<u>glare</u> <i>n.</i> 刺眼的强光	<u>glaring</u> <i>adj.</i> 耀眼的; 明显的
<u>innocent</u> <i>adj.</i> 天真无邪的	<u>innocence</u> <i>n.</i> 清白; 无辜; 无罪; 天真
<u>enhance</u> <i>v.</i> 改进; 增强	<u>enhancement</u> <i>n.</i> 改进; 增强; 提高
<u>insist</u> <i>v.</i> 坚称, 坚决认为	<u>insistence</u> <i>n.</i> 坚决要求; 坚称; 固执

III. 补全短语

- 1. come round 拜访; 发生; 苏醒

- 2. come out 出现; 显露
- 3. break out (战争、火灾等) 爆发
- 4. transform... into ... 把……转变成……
- 5. on and on 不断地
- 6. talk away 不断地谈; 在谈话中度过
- 7. turn... into ... 把……变成……
- 8. as if 仿佛; 好像
- 9. early on 在初期
- 10. at the risk of 冒着……的风险

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式: as if 引导表语从句

It was as if our kindly countryside, close to the very heart of England, had been turned into a cruel grassland.  
就好像我们这个靠近英格兰中心位置的亲切小乡村变成了暴躁的草原。

- 2. 句型公式: “in+关系代词”引导定语从句

They are people in whose lives a slight fall of snow is an event.  
在他们的生活中, 一场小雪就是一件大事。

- 3. 句型公式: whom 引导定语从句

I was nearly as excited about it this morning as the children, whom I found all looking through the window at the magic outside and talking away as excitedly as if Christmas had suddenly come round again.

今天早上我几乎和孩子们一样兴奋, 我发现他们都透过窗户望着外面奇妙的世界, 兴奋地说个不停, 好像圣诞节又突然来临了。

- 4. 句型公式: by the time 引导时间状语从句

Then the sun came out, and by the time I had sat down to breakfast it was shining bravely and flushing the snow with delicate pinks.  
接着太阳出来了, 等到我坐下来吃早饭的时候, 太阳的光彩已是绚烂夺目, 给雪地添了一抹柔和的粉红色。

## 任务型课堂

### 1. inspector n. 检查员, 巡视员

[教材原文]... but is best remembered for his play *An Inspector Calls*.

……但是最令人难忘的是他的戏剧《探长来访》。

[归纳拓展]

(1) inspect v. 检查; 视察; 检阅

inspect sth./sb. for sth. 因某事检查某事/某人

(2) inspection n. 检查; 视察; 检阅

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The police will inspect the venue (会场) for safety.

② The manager told me that these machines were inspected (inspect) twice daily by some experienced workers.

③ It is said that an inspector will come to inspect our school, and he will judge our school according to his inspection. (inspect)

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之动作描写) 第二天早上, 我和祖父母一起出来 检查花园的受损情况。

Next morning along with my grandparents I came out to inspect the damage to our garden.

② (读后续写之动作描写) 巡查员来到我们家, 把房子彻底搜查了一遍, 以确定我们没有藏匿任何食物。

The inspector came to our house, and searched it from top to bottom to be sure we didn't have any food hidden away.

### 2. insist v. 坚称, 坚决认为

[教材原文]... I must **insist** that last night's fall of snow here was an event.

……我也必须坚持认为昨晚这里的降雪是件大事。

[归纳拓展]

(1) insist on/upon (doing) sth. 坚持要求(做)某事  
insist that... (should) do... 坚持要求……做某事(虚拟语气)

insist that... 坚持说, 坚持认为(真实语气)

(2) insistence n. 坚决要求; 坚持; 固执

at one's insistence 在某人的坚持下

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① She insisted on/upon seeing the manager as soon as possible.

② Although Tom insisted that he had handed (hand) in his homework yesterday, Mr Wang still insisted he (should) do (do) it again.

③ The government insisted that plans (should) be made (make) to help those out of work.

④ I did it, but only at your insistence (insist).

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之体育运动) 我对运动有如此强烈的热情, 以至于我能 坚持每天锻炼。

I have such a strong enthusiasm for sports that I can insist on exercising every day.

② (读后续写之动作描写) 我的朋友顺路过来, 送给我们一株漂亮的植物作为礼物, 坚持说它会在 这个困难时期给我们家带来生机。

My friend stopped by and gave us a beautiful plant as a gift, insisting that it would bring life to our home during this difficult time.

### 3. as if/as though 引导表语从句

[教材原文] It was **as if** our kindly countryside, close to the very heart of England, had been turned into a cruel grassland.

就好像我们这个靠近英格兰中心位置的亲切小乡村变成了暴躁的草原。

[句式分析] 句中 as if 引导的是表语从句。从句主干结构是 our kindly countryside had been turned into a cruel grassland.

[归纳拓展]

as if/as though 引导的从句可以分为以下几种情况:

(1) 在 be, look, seem, appear 等系动词后引导表语从句。

(2) 引导方式状语从句。

(3) as if 还可用于省略句中。如果 as if 引导的从句是“主语+系动词”结构, 可省略主语和系动词, 这样 as if 后就只剩下名词、不定式、形容词(短语)、介词短语或分词。

### 名师点拨

as if/as though 从句用虚拟语气的情况：当说话人认为句子所表述的是不真实的或极少有可能发生或存在的情况。从句用虚拟语气时，其谓语动词形式如下：

- (1) 从句表示与现在事实相反，谓语动词形式用动词过去式。
- (2) 从句表示与过去事实相反，谓语动词形式用“had+过去分词”。
- (3) 从句表示与将来事实相反，谓语动词形式用“would/could/might+动词原形”。

#### [即学即练]

##### (1) 单句语法填空

- ① She ran as if she had had (have) wings on her feet.
- ② He talked about Rome as if he had been (be) there himself.
- ③ He has just arrived, but he talks as if he knew (know) all about that.

##### (2) 写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写) 威尔盯着我，好像他知道我

在想什么。

Will stared at me as if he knew what I was thinking.

### 多义词汇 专练

1. His job is not only to **dispose** of problems but also to meet unexpected challenges. B  
 A. v. 排列, 布置  
 B. v. 处置, 处理  
 C. v. 使倾向于
2. **prospect**  
 A. n. 开阔的景观, 景色  
 B. n. 可能性, 希望  
 C. n. 前景  
 D. n. (竞赛中的) 有望获胜者
- ① There is no immediate **prospect** of peace. B
- ② Long-term **prospects** for the economy have improved. C
- ③ She is one of China's best **prospects** for a gold medal. D
- ④ We enjoyed a delightful **prospect** of the lake. A

## Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十二)

### Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

#### I. 单词拼写

1. In addition, attracted by interesting topics, the students are free to take part in the weekly (每周的) discussion.
2. With the help of artificial intelligence, the number of ticket inspectors (检查员) has on the decrease.
3. He was so stubborn that he insisted (坚称) on organising the trip by himself.
4. His father bought him some shaving (刮胡子) cream and taught him how to use it.
5. If parents express excitement about the prospect (景色) of a walk in the countryside, they are more likely to pass this feeling to their children.
6. We were surprised to find the branch bent (弯曲) but did not break after the big storm.
7. This fertiliser enhances (改进) the soil, so the vegetables and fruit are healthier and better.
8. The language of nursery rhymes (儿歌) is concrete but imaginative, and they delight

children because they have strong rhythm and a lot of repetition.

#### II. 短语填空

at the risk of; transform... into; used to; break out; come out; early on; come round; as if

1. He acted as if he hadn't heard any of it.
2. It was at midnight that a fire broke out, which caused many more deaths.
3. The medical workers treated the patients at the risk of being infected.
4. In only 20 years, the country has been transformed into an advanced industrial power.
5. Can you imagine the successful young man used to be a naughty boy?
6. For three days and nights they watched by her bed waiting for her to come round.
7. The company ran into trouble early on, when a major order was cancelled.
8. All the old crowd have come out for this occasion.



## III. 完成句子

1. With the food running out, the climbers had to return to the camp.

在食物即将用尽的情况下,登山者们不得不返回营地。

2. To be honest, I did see Tom bending the tree when I passed the playground.

坦白地说,在我经过操场时我确实看见汤姆正在弄弯小树。

3. The teacher insists that we (should) keep a diary to improve our ability to express ourselves in English.

老师坚持要求我们写日记来提高我们用英语表达的能力。

4. Regular exercise is as important to us as a healthy diet.

规律的锻炼和健康的饮食对我们是同样重要的。

5. The teacher treats her students very well, as if they were her own children.

这位老师对她的学生非常好,就好像他们是她自己的孩子。

## IV. 完形填空

While visiting my sister last year on a windy October day, we heard an eastern spinebill chick (幼鸟) chirping—she had been blown into her garden. We kept 1 for hours to see if her mother would find her, but she was a no-show. The chick had very 2 flying skills and got 3 between a bamboo and the Laserlight fence.

With my brother-in-law's help, we 4 the wire wrapped around her leg so we could 5 the chick from certain death. Then, we gave her honey with water from an eyedropper. After ringing a now retired wildlife rescuer for 6, we added ground oats to the mix.

Covered with tissues in a takeaway food container, the chick 7 the night and continued to feed well. In the morning, I 8 her in a cage outdoors. Her chirping 9 the attention of an adult male spinebill which started 10 her insects through the cage, and she 11 accepted. He even 12 my head at one stage when I was taking photos of her.

She was now about 12 kilometres away from where she'd been found, too 13 for him to be her father, yet he still fed her.

I am thankful for his 14 and believe her

future, under the wing of her handsome tutor after she flew off with him a week later, will be just 15.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和姐姐救了一只小鸟,后来一只成年鸟过来喂小鸟,作者相信在这只大鸟的帮助下,小鸟的未来是美好的。

1. A. watching B. balancing  
C. accompanying D. tracking

A 根据下文的“to see if her mother would find her”可知,观察是为了看鸟妈妈是否会发现她。故选 A。

2. A. superb B. limited  
C. new D. different

B 根据下文的“With my brother-in-law's help, we 4 the wire wrapped around her leg...”可知,“我们”把她从铁丝上解救下来,说明小鸟的飞行技能非常有限。故选 B。

3. A. hidden B. engaged  
C. trapped D. absorbed

C 根据下文的“With my brother-in-law's help, we 4 the wire wrapped around her leg...”可知,“我们”把她从铁丝上解救下来,说明小鸟被困住了。故选 C。

4. A. smoothed B. burned  
C. discovered D. unfastened

D 根据上文的“... got 3 between a bamboo and the Laserlight fence.”可知,小鸟被困住了,所以“我们”帮她解开了。故选 D。

5. A. separate B. remove  
C. train D. rescue

D 根据上文的“we 4 the wire wrapped around her leg”可知,“我们”解开了缠在小鸟腿上的铁丝,所以是营救了她。故选 D。

6. A. appearance B. contact  
C. permission D. advice

D 根据上文的“ringing a now retired wildlife rescuer”可知,“我们”给专业人士打电话,寻求建议。故选 D。

7. A. missed B. enjoyed  
C. survived D. passed

C 根据上文的“Covered with tissues in a takeaway food container...”以及下文的“the night”可知,小鸟被安置在容器里,盖着纸巾,熬过了一夜。故选 C。

8. A. placed B. returned  
C. followed D. grasped



A 根据下文的“... in a cage outdoors.”可知，小鸟是被放在户外的笼子里。故选 A。

9. A. shifted                      B. escaped  
C. attracted                      D. disturbed  
C 根据下文的“the attention of an adult male spinebill”可知，吸引了成年雄性棘喙鸟的注意。故选 C。
10. A. robbing                      B. sharing  
C. showing                      D. feeding  
D 根据下文的“... he still fed her.”可知，这只成年雄性棘喙鸟是喂小鸟的。故选 D。
11. A. readily                      B. barely  
C. unwillingly                      D. secretly  
A 根据下文的“... he still fed her.”可知，这只成年雄性棘喙鸟是喂小鸟的，而小鸟也是欣然接受的。故选 A。
12. A. knocked on                      B. pointed at  
C. turned around                      D. landed on

D 根据“my head”可知，他落在“我”的头上。故选 D。

13. A. far                      B. troublesome  
C. dangerous                      D. strange  
A 根据本句“She was now about 12 kilometres away from where she'd been found...”可知，她现在离她被发现的地方大约 12 千米远，太远了，他不可能是她的父亲。故选 A。
14. A. courage                      B. assistance  
C. tolerance                      D. profession  
B 根据上文的“... he still fed her.”可知，这只成年雄性棘喙鸟喂小鸟也是帮助了“我”。故选 B。
15. A. endless                      B. suitable  
C. rosy                      D. romantic  
C 根据上文的“under the wing of her handsome tutor”可知，在她英俊的导师的翅膀（庇护）下，小鸟的未来将是美好的。故选 C。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Study the sentences, and understand non-finite forms as attributive, adverbial and complement.  
2. Learn to use words that describe nature.

○ 自主式预习 ○

- I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思
1. The spring breeze is pleasantly warm and **sweeps** above the flowers on both sides of the road. 吹过，掠过
2. The fields around had been sown with **wheat**. 小麦
3. As evening came, the coastline **faded** into darkness. 逐渐消失
4. A few newspapers and magazines were **piled** on a table. 堆放，摞起
5. The weather can be quite **bleak** on the coast. 阴冷的
6. Looking round, he discovered a small **wagon** with a horse. 四轮运货车
7. The cherry blossoms that we planted during the conference **bloomed** this April. 开花
8. For the farmers in my hometown, they usually **reap** wheat in June every year. 收割
9. The boy dropped the apples and cut away across the **orchard**. 果园

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	词汇
<u>relax</u> v. 放松；休息； (使)松弛	relaxation n. 放松；消遣
	relaxed adj. 自在的，放松的； 冷静的，不加拘束的
<u>appearance</u> n. 到来，出 现；外表，外观	appear v. 到来，出现；似乎； 好像，看来
	disappear v. 消失，不见；失 踪，丢失
	disappearance n. 消失，失踪； 消亡，不复存在
<u>confused</u> adj. 困惑的； 不清楚的；难懂的	confuse v. 使困惑；混淆，弄错
	confusing adj. 令人困惑的， 模糊不清的，难懂的
	confusion n. 困惑；混乱；慌乱

## III. 补全短语

1. nothing but 只有, 只不过
2. add... to ... 把……加进……
3. be irrelevant to 与……不相干
4. have a point 有道理
5. be seen as 被看作……
6. replace... with ... 用……替代……
7. all the time 始终; 一直

## IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: what 引导主语从句

What the author wrote made me feel confused.  
作者写的内容令我感到困惑。

2. 句型公式: as 引导时间状语从句

And as times change, old words become as normal to young people as the new ones are to me.

而且, 随着时代的变迁, 旧词对年轻人来说就像新词对我一样平常。

3. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作后置定语

The Lake Poets were a small group of poets living in the Lake District of England in the late 18th and early 19th centuries.

湖畔诗人是 18 世纪末 19 世纪初生活在英格兰湖区的一小群诗人。

## ○ 任务型课堂 ○

## 1. fade v. 逐渐消失; 褪色

[教材原文]... when the memory of snow, and ice, and bleak winds, has **faded** from our minds as completely as they have disappeared from the earth...

……当冰雪和寒风的记忆从我们的脑海中完全消失, 就像它们从地球上消失一样……

## [归纳拓展]

fade away 消失; 衰弱

fade down 安静下来

fade from 从……逐渐消失

## [即学即练]

(1) 写出下列句中 fade 的含义

① The colours of the skirt gently **fade** each time you wash it. (颜色) 褪去

② Hopes for the missing men are **fading**. (希望) 逐渐破灭

③ They arrived home just as the light was **fading**. (光) 变暗

④ Flowers soon **faded** when they have been cut. 凋谢; 枯萎

(2) 单句语法填空

① Hopes of reaching an agreement seem to be fading away.

② His name will never fade from the memory of the world.

(3) 写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写) 山姆的微笑消失了, 他的眼睛里充满了泪水, 但在孩子们面前他不想让泪水削弱他的力量。

Sam's smile faded away while his eyes filled with

tears, but he didn't want his tears to weaken him in front of the boys.

## 2. sweep v. 吹过, 掠过; 打扫

[教材原文]... and the wheat, piled in graceful sheaves, or waving in every gentle wind that **sweeps** above it, tinges the landscape with a golden colour.

……麦子整整齐齐地一束束堆着, 或者在阵阵微风中摇曳着, 给大地染上了金黄的色彩。

## [归纳拓展]

(1) sweep up 打扫; 清扫

sweep away 消灭; 摧毁

sweep over/across/around 横扫

(2) sweeper n. 清洁工; 清扫机

## [即学即练]

(1) 完成句子

① She swept up the grains of wheat that had spilled on the ground.

她打扫了撒在地上的麦粒。

② Her habitation was swept away by the wind.

她的住处被风刮跑了。

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之通知) 我们要去学校旁边的快乐之家 打扫道路, 捡垃圾。

We are going to Happy Home next to our school to sweep the paths as well as to pick up litter.

② (读后续写之心理描写) 但是一想到他们的善良, 一股喜悦的浪潮席卷了我, 这提醒我, 他们生来就是善良的。

But at the thought of their kindness, a wave of delight swept over me, which reminded me that they were born to be kind.

## 多义词汇 专练

### sweep

- A. v. 吹过, 掠过  
B. v. 彻底消除  
C. v. 席卷, 横扫  
D. v. 打扫, 清扫

① Minutes after the last movie ended yesterday at the Plaza Theatre, employees were busy **sweeping** up

popcorns and gathering coke cups. D

② In that match, she **swept** away any doubts about her ability to perform consistently. B

③ The cooling wind **swept** through our bedroom windows, making air conditioning unnecessary. A

④ Deputy Agriculture Secretary sees an epidemic (流行病) **sweeping** across America's farmland. C

## 语法研习课

### 非谓语动词作定语、补语、状语

#### 语法感知

- ①... I saw the ground so fantastically **carpeted**.  
②... wake up **to find** yourself in another quite different, ...  
③... I can see the children **flattening** their noses against the window, ...  
④... flattened my nose against the cold window **to watch** the **falling** snow...  
⑤... last year I was out of the country, **sweating** in a hot climate, ...  
⑥ Carson urged people **to make** themselves aware of the facts and do something about the situation.

- 以上句子中,句①、句③和句⑥为非谓语动词作宾语补足语,过去分词表示被动或完成;现在分词表示主动或进行;不定式表示将来。
- 句②、句④中的不定式和句⑤中的现在分词在句中作状语;句②中的不定式作结果状语,句④中的不定式作目的状语,句⑤中的现在分词作伴随状语。
- 句④中的现在分词作定语;单个的现在分词一般放在名词前面,现在分词短语放在名词的后面。

#### 语法精讲

##### 一、不定式

##### (一)不定式作定语

不定式作定语一般情况下会置于被修饰词的后面,并且与被修饰词构成一定的逻辑关系,其用法如下:

- 主谓关系:被修饰词是不定式动作的发出者。此时被修饰词前通常有 the only, the first, the next, 序数词或形容词的最高级修饰。

She is always the first **to come** and the last **to leave**.

她总是第一个来最后一个离开。

- 动宾关系:被修饰词是不定式动作的承受者。此时需要注意,如果动词不定式中的动词是不及物动词时,其后应该有相应的介词。但当不定式修饰的名词是 time, place, way 时,不定式后可省略介词。  
There are many interesting things **to see** there.  
那里有许多有趣的东西可以看。

- 修饰关系:动词不定式对其所修饰的词起到补充、说明的作用。这些被修饰的词有 wish, way, chance, ability, decision, attempt, reason, answer 等。

Can you think up a good way **to deal with** the ever increasing prices?

你们能否想出一个应对日益上涨的价格的好办法?

- 动词不定式作定语有时也可以表示将来的动作。

We are invited to a party **to be held** in our club next Friday.

我们受邀参加下周五在我们俱乐部举办的聚会。

##### (二)不定式作补语

##### 1. 不定式作宾语补足语

不定式作宾语补足语时相当于名词,跟在某些及物动词的宾语之后,对宾语作进一步的补充、说明,并与该宾语构成逻辑上的主谓关系。

I wanted something **to happen** to me, but nothing happened.

我希望在我身上会发生些什么变化,可是什么都没发生。

I know nothing about him and I beg you **to tell** me nothing.

他的情况我一无所知,我也请求您别告诉我。

## 名师点拨

在一些使役动词(如 make, let, have 等)和感官动词(如 see, watch, observe, notice, hear, feel 等)之后,作宾语补足语的不定式需省略 to;用于被动语态时,省略的 to 要还原回来。

She let her hand **fall** from his arm and said no more.

她放开他的胳膊,没再说什么。

Tom is always hard-working, so he doesn't have to **be made to study hard**.

汤姆一直很努力,所以没有必要强迫他刻苦学习。

## 2. 不定式作主语补足语

在 "... be said/believed/known/reported/considered/found/thought to do sth." 结构中,不定式作主语补足语。

They **are said to have developed** a new approach to teaching, which **is said to improve** classroom teaching greatly.

据说他们已经研究出一种新的教学方法,这种方法据说可以极大地改善课堂教学。

## (三) 不定式作状语

不定式作状语主要表示目的、结果或原因,也可以表示条件、方式或比较。

He stood up **to be seen better**.

他站起来以便大家能更清楚地看到他。(目的)

He searched the room **only to find nothing**.

他满屋子找,却一无所获。(结果)

She wept **to hear the news**.

她听到这个消息哭了。(原因)

**To hear him talk**, you would think he owned the whole world.

如果你听他讲话,你会以为整个世界都是他的。(条件)

**To do his best**, he could not finish his task on time.

即使竭尽全力,他仍然不能按时完成任务。(让步)

## 二、现在分词

## (一) 现在分词作定语

1. 现在分词作定语说明被修饰词的性质或状态,表明动作是主动、进行的意义。单个分词作定语一般放在被修饰词的前面(前置定语),分词短语作定语一般放在被修饰词的后面(后置定语)。

a **flying** plane = a plane that is flying 一架正在飞行的飞机

a young man **sitting next to me** = a young man who/that is sitting next to me 一个坐在我旁边的年轻人

2. 现在分词作定语的时候,与被修饰词之间存在逻辑上的主动关系,表示事物存在的状态或动作正在进行;有时现在分词作定语可以转换为主动的定语从句。

The man **speaking to** the teacher is our monitor's father.

= The man **who is speaking to** the teacher is our monitor's father.

正与老师谈话的那个人是我们班长的父亲。

## (二) 现在分词作补语

## 1. 现在分词作宾语补足语

现在分词作宾语补足语表示正在进行的主动性的动作或状态。以下动词后可跟现在分词作宾语补足语: see, watch, hear, feel, find, get, keep, notice, observe, leave, catch, have, make, let 等。

Can you hear her **singing** the song in the next room?

你能听见她在隔壁房间唱歌吗?

He kept the car **waiting** at the gate.

他让小汽车在门口等着。

2. 当句子变为被动结构时,原来作宾语补足语的现在分词形式便转换为主语补足语。

They found the result very **satisfying**.

= The result was found very **satisfying**.

他们发现结果令人非常满意。

They heard him **singing** in the next room.

= He was heard **singing** in the next room.

他们听到他正在隔壁房间唱歌。

## (三) 现在分词作状语

现在分词作状语可以表示时间、原因、结果、条件、让步、方式或伴随情况等。

**Hearing the news**, they all jumped with joy.

听到这个消息,他们都高兴得跳了起来。(时间)

**Not knowing her address**, I had to call her.

由于不知道她的地址,我只能给她打电话。(原因)

He stayed at home, **cleaning and washing**.

他待在家里,又擦又洗。(伴随)

**Playing all day**, you will waste your valuable time.

要是整天玩,你就会浪费宝贵的时间。(条件)

He dropped the glass, **breaking it into pieces**.

他把杯子弄掉了,结果摔得粉碎。(结果)

## 三、过去分词

## (一) 过去分词作定语

过去分词作定语有两种情况,如果是单个的过去分词,通常放在所修饰的词的前面;如果是过去分词短

语,则放在所修饰的词的最后。过去分词(短语)作定语的时候,与被修饰词之间存在逻辑上的被动关系,表示被动或完成。过去分词(短语)作定语时可以转换为被动的定语从句。

The **excited** children are opening their presents.

兴奋的孩子们正在打开他们的礼物。

Some of the people **invited to the party** can't come.

有些被邀请参加聚会的人不能来。

After completing and signing it, please return the form to us in the envelope **provided**.

= After completing and signing it, please return the form to us in the envelope **which is provided**.

填完表格并签名之后,请把它装入所提供的信封里返给我们。

## (二)过去分词作补语

1. 过去分词作宾语补足语,说明宾语的状态或性质,宾语是其逻辑主语,一般是过去分词动作的承受者,即逻辑上的被动关系。

I saw his eyes **fixed** on me with curiosity.

我看见他的眼睛盯着我,充满了好奇。

We want the work **finished** by Saturday.

我们想要那项工作在周六前完成。

We found the house **deserted**.

我们发现这所房子已废弃了。

### 名师点拨

能够接过去分词作宾语补足语的动词:

(1) 表示感觉或心理状态的动词,如 see, watch, observe, hear, feel, notice, think 等。

(2) 表示愿望、想法的动词,如 want, should like, would like, prefer 等。

(3) 表示“致使”含义的使役动词,如 have, make, get, keep, leave 等。

2. 过去分词有时亦可作主语补足语。

The song is often heard **sung** everywhere in China.

在中国到处经常听到有人唱这首歌。

## (三)过去分词作状语

过去分词作状语可表示原因、时间、条件、让步、方式或伴随情况等。过去分词作状语可转换成状语从句。当过去分词作状语时,其逻辑主语一般就是句子的主语,并且与之构成逻辑上的被动关系。

**Asked what had happened**, his face turned red.

当被问及发生了什么事情的时候,他的脸红了。(时间)

**Written in a hurry**, this article was not so good!

因为写得匆忙,这篇文章不是很好!(原因)

**Given another hour**, I can also work out this problem.

再给我一个小时,我也能解出这道题。(条件)

**Followed by the old man**, we went upstairs.

我们上了楼,后面跟着那个老人。(伴随)

**Left at home**, John didn't feel afraid at all.

虽然约翰被单独留在家里,但他一点都不害怕。(让步)

## 语法冲关

### I. 用括号内所给动词的适当形式填空

- The building is said to be (be) the tallest building in the world.
- She asked me to answer (answer) the phone in her absence.
- Explained (explain) a hundred times, he still can't understand it.
- Can you see the star moving (move) in the sky?
- Mrs Brown was much disappointed to see the washing machine she had had repaired (repair) went wrong again.
- The letter posted (post) today will reach you in a week.
- He telephoned me, saying (say) that he wouldn't come for supper.
- Listen to the birds singing (sing) beautifully in the garden.
- She bought a bookshelf to put (put) her books on.
- Having hurried (hurry) through his breakfast, he went to wait for the school bus.

### II. 完成句子

- These are the books to be distributed among the students.  
这些是要分发给学生的书。
- His illness is not such as to cause anxiety.  
他的病还没有到令人焦虑的程度。
- I found those students studying very hard.  
我发现那些学生学习非常努力。
- Frightened by the horror movie, the girl didn't dare to sleep alone.  
因为被恐怖电影吓到了,这个女孩不敢单独睡觉。
- He won't like such questions discussed at the meeting.  
他不喜欢在会上讨论这样的问题。
- The man followed by security guards is our chairman.  
被保安人员跟着的那个人是我们的主席。



## Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十三)

## Section III Using language

## I. 选词填空

charm; nothing but; gentle; fade; replace... with;  
contrast with; wheat; have a point

- The snow was icy and white, contrasting with the brilliant blue sky.
- This town, clean and quiet, has a charm you couldn't find in a big city.
- He is the gentlest man I have ever known.
- The doctor recommended that we shouldn't replace supper with snacks.
- With time passing, the outward colour will fade.
- The price of wheat has decreased by 15%.
- Personally, I think he has a point.
- The whole story is nothing but a pack of lies.

## II. 单句语法填空

- The man sweeping (sweep) the street is one of the volunteers who make contributions to the neighbourhood.
- Caught (catch) in the flood, the man tried to climb the nearby tree.
- There are many interesting things to see (see) there.
- This is the reason why I have come so far to look for you.
- What he said made me feel rather confused.
- With online shopping increasingly popular, the Internet is seen as a way of reaching target customers.
- The woman talks all the time and hardly stops to draw breath.
- He raised his voice in order to make himself heard (hear).
- They use computers to keep the traffic running (run) smoothly (顺畅地).

## III. 阅读理解

Why would anyone want to write a poem? One reason to write a poem is to dig from yourself some thought, feeling, comprehension or question that you didn't know was in you, or in the world. Other forms of writing, such as scientific papers, political analysis and journalism, attempt to record something known. Poetry is a release of something previously unknown.

Poetry opens our eyes and offers increase of reach. We live so often on a lonely island, separated from ourselves and others due to social or personal reasons. To step into a poem is to agree to risk. Writing takes down all protections to see what steps forward. Poetry is a trick of language, in which the writer is both a magician and an audience. You reach your hand into the hat and surprise yourself with a rabbit or memory, with unusual verbs or rhymes. Poems lead to revolutions of being. Whatever the old order was, a poem will change it.

What we want from art is whatever is missing from the lives we are living and making. Something is always missing, and so art-making is endless.

There is also the matter of connection. You can't write an image, a metaphor (暗喻), a story, a phrase without approaching the shared world, without recognising that your supposed solitude (独处) is at every point touching some others. You can't read a good poem without recognising your own face in the poet's experience. It allows us to feel more strongly and accurately what is already present. Then it expands that and expands us.

Does art change anything by its existence or non-existence? I'd argue that art, if it is genuinely art, is a force for the good. That the rearrangement of words can reopen the potential of both inner and outer worlds—I cannot say why I feel this to be true, except that I feel it so when I read good poems.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了有人想要写诗的原因。

## 1. How does the writer introduce the topic?

- By listing numbers.
- By giving examples.
- By quoting a saying.
- By making a comparison.

D 推理判断题。通读全文可知,第一段中的“One reason to write a poem is to dig from yourself some thought, feeling, comprehension or question that you didn't know was in you, or in the world.”引出了主题。接下来“Other forms

of writing, such as scientific papers, political analysis and journalism, attempt to record something known. Poetry is a release of something previously unknown.”通过将其他写作形式和诗歌进行比较,从而对前文写诗的原因进行具体阐述。由此可推测,作者通过作比较介绍本文主题。故选 D。

2. What is the similarity between poetry and magic?
- A. They bring surprises.  
B. They follow traditions.  
C. They change the world.  
D. They are arts of language.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Poetry is a trick of language, in which the writer is both a magician and an audience. You reach your hand into the hat and surprise yourself with a rabbit or memory, with unusual verbs or rhymes.”可知,写诗的人和魔术师很像,魔术师把手伸进帽子里变出兔子,而写诗的人用记忆、不同寻常的动词或押韵创造新的东西,二者都可以带来惊喜。故选 A。

3. What can a good poem do according to the text?
- A. Criticise social reality.  
B. Apply new expressions.  
C. Bridge poets and readers.  
D. Remind readers of the past.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*There is also the matter of connection.*”和“*You can't read a good poem without recognising your own face in the poet's experience.*”可知,诗会创造联系,读好诗的时候你会体验作者的经历;由此可推测,一首好诗会给诗人和读者创造桥梁,将诗人和读者联系起来。故选 C。

4. What is the author's attitude towards art?

- A. Objective. B. Favourable.  
C. Unclear. D. Doubtful.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*Does art change anything by its existence or non-existence? I'd argue that art, if it is genuinely art, is a force for the good.*”可知,在提到艺术的作用时,作者认为真正的艺术是一种向善的力量。由此可推测,作者对艺术持肯定态度。故选 B。

## Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

### 学习任务目标

1. Learn the main expressions and structures in this part.  
2. Read the text, understand the main idea of the text, and learn to appreciate and compose poetry.

### 自主式预习

#### I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The reporter was **banned** from entering the company unless he was permitted. 禁止  
2. More and more young couples admitted that living together with **dozens** of relatives proved to be great fun. 许多  
3. To increase levels of community service, some schools have **launched** compulsory volunteer programmes. 发起  
4. Regular six-month checkups allow your dentist to give your teeth a **thorough** cleaning and examine your mouth and gums. 仔细的  
5. The front courtyard and the **backyard** are places for children to play. 后院  
6. The **diamond** shines brightly in the sun. 钻石

7. They rounded off their performance with a mixed **chorus**. 合唱曲

8. It was this campaign that established the paper's good **reputation**. 名誉, 名望

#### II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>tremble</u> v. 颤抖, 发抖	trembling <i>adj.</i> 发抖的; 哆嗦的
<u>puzzled</u> <i>adj.</i> 困惑的, 无法理解的	puzzle v. 使困惑 <i>n.</i> 谜; 智力游戏
	puzzling <i>adj.</i> 令人困惑的
	puzzlement <i>n.</i> 迷惑; 困惑



续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>passionate</u> <i>adj.</i> 具有强烈信念的	<u>passion</u> <i>n.</i> 激情
<u>elegance</u> <i>n.</i> 优美; 简洁	<u>elegant</u> <i>adj.</i> 高雅的; 优美的
<u>alert</u> <i>v.</i> 提醒, 使(某人)意识到	<u>alertness</u> <i>n.</i> 警戒; 机敏

## III. 补全短语

- stand by 坚持; 支持
- alert... to ... 使……意识到……
- or so 大约; 左右
- rather than 而不是
- be aware of 意识到
- in addition to 除……之外(还)
- scores of 大量; 许多
- in particular 尤其, 特别

## IV. 补全句子

## 1. 句型公式: 形容词作状语

Many people spoke of them, puzzled and disturbed.

许多人谈到它们, 都感到困惑和不安。

## 2. 句型公式: though 引导让步状语从句时的倒装

This is not so much because of the quality of her arguments, strong though they are, but because of the beauty and elegance of her writing.

这倒不是因为她的论据的质量, 尽管她的论据很有力, 而是因为她文笔的美丽和高雅。

## 3. 句型公式: make+宾语+宾语补足语

Carson urged people to make themselves aware of the facts and do something about the situation.

卡森敦促人们要意识到事实, 并对现状采取行动。

## 4. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语

The 50 or so pages at the end of the book list Carson's sources, showing how thorough and precise she was as a scientist.

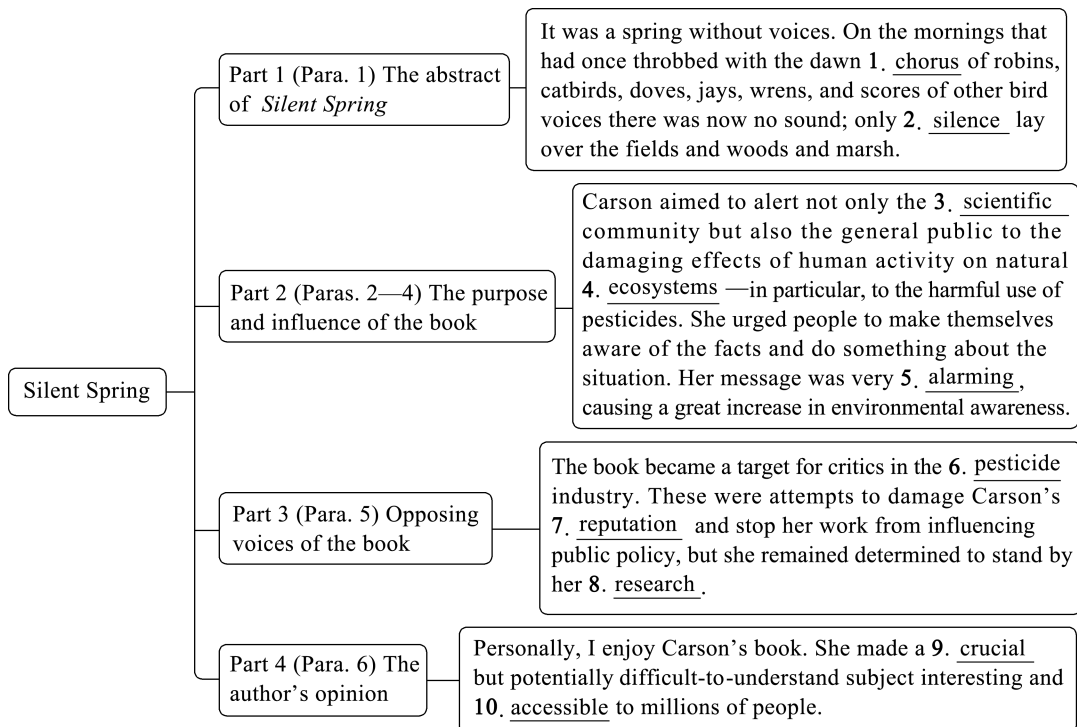
书的最后 50 页左右列出了卡森的资料来源, 展示了她作为一名科学家是多么一丝不苟。

## 任务型课堂

## Part 1 课文理解

## ○ 文本整体理解

## Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



### ○文本细节领悟

#### Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Why did many people get puzzled and disturbed?
  - Because they didn't speak of birds again.
  - Because the feeding stations were destroyed.
  - Because most birds were gone.
  - Because birds' voices were unusual.
- What can we learn about Rachel Carson?
  - She was born in 1962.
  - She was a writer by profession.
  - She thought pesticides were harmful.
  - She used too many pesticides daily.
- What caused a great increase in the awareness of protecting the environment?
  - Carson's research.
  - The fire-ant programme.
  - The green movement.
  - Some gypsy moths.

答案:1~3 CCA

### ○语言知识运用

#### Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Though Carson's research was strong and was supported by most scientists who reviewed her work, the book quickly became a target for critics in the pesticide industry.  
[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。though 引导让步状语从句,而 who 引导的定语从句修饰先行词 scientists。  
[尝试翻译]虽然卡森的研究很有说服力,而且得到了大多数审阅过她的著作的科学家的支持,但是这本书很快就成了杀虫剂行业批判的对象。
- This is not so much because of the quality of her arguments, strong though they are, but because

of the beauty and elegance of her writing.

[句子分析]本句中 not... but...连接并列表语(介词短语),though 引导让步状语从句,且使用了倒装语序。

[尝试翻译]这倒不是因为她的论据的质量,尽管她的论据很有力,而是因为她文笔的美丽和高雅。

- Her book not only changed the world; half a century later it remains a book that deserves to be reread today, so that we can once again feel ourselves warm to the fire of its passionate message.

[句子分析]本句是一个并列复合句。第一个 that 引导的定语从句,修饰先行词 book;so that 引导目的状语从句。

[尝试翻译]她的书不仅在当时改变了世界;半个世纪后的今天,它仍然是一本值得人们重读的书,以再次感受她充满感情的文字带给我们火焰般的温暖。

### ○思维品质培养

#### Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- What's the moral lesson behind "A Fable for Tomorrow"?  
The moral lesson is that financial profit should not come at the expense of the environment and the creatures living in it.
- In what different ways do *First Snow* and *Silent Spring* raise people's awareness of nature?  
*First Snow* shows the beauty of nature—and in particular the snow—through its words and imagery, while *Silent Spring* describes an unnatural spring without the beauty of birdsong. They each raise people's awareness of nature by highlighting the interplay between nature and human behaviour.

## Part 2 语言梳理

### 1. ban v. 禁止,取缔 n. 禁令

[教材原文]Now **banned** in many countries, it is still used in some for malaria control.

现在在许多国家被禁止使用,但在一些国家仍被用于控制疟疾。

[归纳拓展]

(1)a ban on... ……的禁令

put/place/lay a ban on 禁止……

lift/remove the ban 解除禁令

(2)ban sb. from doing sth. 禁止某人做某事(通常用于被动语态)

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①There is to be a total ban on smoking in the office.

②We are banned from reporting any details about her case.

③Chemical weapons are banned (ban) internationally.

## (2)写作微练

(应用文写作之通知)请记住,入场时**禁止制造噪音**。

Please remember that making noise is banned while entering the exhibit.

## 2. puzzled adj. 困惑的,无法理解的

[教材原文] Many people spoke of them, **puzzled** and disturbed.

许多人谈到它们,都感到困惑和不安。

## [归纳拓展]

(1) be puzzled about 对……迷惑不解

(2) puzzle v. 使迷惑 n. 谜;智力游戏

puzzle out 琢磨出……的答案

puzzle over sth. 苦苦思考某事(物)

in a puzzle about (sth.) 对(某事)困惑不解

(3) puzzling adj. 令人困惑的

## [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① To explain the puzzling (puzzle) findings, he offered two theories.

② There was a puzzled (puzzle) look on her face.

③ It's good for students to puzzle things out for themselves.

④ The class puzzled over a poem by Shakespeare.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之情绪描写) 每个学生都抬起头来,脸上流露出**困惑的表情**。

Each student lifted their head and had a puzzled look on their face.

② (应用文写作之建议信) 得知你对**如何写汉字感到困惑**,我写信是想给你一些建议。

Sorry to know that you are puzzled about how to write Chinese characters, I'm writing to give you some advice.

## 3. 形容词作状语

[教材原文] Many people spoke of them, **puzzled and disturbed**.

许多人谈到它们,都感到困惑和不安。

[句式分析] 本句是简单句,主干是 Many people spoke of them; puzzled and disturbed 为形容词短语在句中作状语。

## [归纳拓展]

形容词作状语,说明主语的性质和状态。形容词作状语的特点是该形容词的逻辑主语就是句子的主语,并且通常可以用并列句或主从复合句来改写。

## [即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Hopeless (hope), we watched the house being destroyed before our eyes.

② Curious (curiosity) about everything, we looked around.

③ Overjoyed (overjoy), she dashed out of the house.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之情绪描写) 他们的母亲**既震惊又自豪**,她低声温柔地说:“谢谢你们,孩子们。我真的很感激你们为我所做的一切!”

Shocked and proud, their mother said in a sweet whisper, “Thanks, my kids. I really appreciate what you have done for me!”

② (读后续写之情绪描写) **我既焦虑又羞愧**,什么也没说,不知道他会不会马上解雇我。

Anxious and ashamed, I said nothing, wondering if he would fire me right away.

## 4. more... than... 与其说……倒不如说……

[教材原文] Some also said that her work was **more emotional than** scientific.

一些人还说,她的作品与其说是科学之作,不如说是情感之作。

[句式分析] 句中 more... than... 意为“与其说……倒不如说……”;另外,此结构还有“比……多,比……更”的含义。

## [归纳拓展]

(1) no more than 只不过;仅仅

no more + adj. + than 同……一样不

not more... than... 不如;不及

(2) more than 超过;不止

more than one + 单数名词,意为“不止一个……”,在语义上虽为复数,但作主语时,谓语动词用单数。

① more than + 基数词,意为“多于;超出”(相当于 over)。

② more than + 名词,意为“不仅仅”(相当于 not only)。

③ more than + 形容词/副词,意为“非常;很”(相当于 very)。

④ more than + 从句,意为“超出……”。

## [即学即练]

(1) 完成句子

① This book is not more difficult than that one. 这本书不如那本书难。

② He's no more able to read Spanish than I am. 他和我都读不懂西班牙语。

③ He is more than a writer; he is also a professor.

他不仅仅是一位作家,还是一名教授。

④She is more a producer than an actress in this film. And she had to do more than others, which makes her more than tired.

她在这部电影中与其说是演员,不如说是制片人。而且她必须比别人做得更多,这让她很累。

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之情绪描写)他的朋友们非常高兴詹姆斯拥有了自己的自行车,这样他们就可以一起旅行了。

His friends were more than glad that James owned his bicycle so that they could make a trip together.

②(应用文写作之征稿启事)你的文章应该是真实的、原创的,不超过1 000字。

Your writing is expected to be real and original in not more than 1,000 words.

## 多义词汇 专练

1. The baby is just one day old and has not yet left hospital. She is quiet but **alert**. B

A. v. 使(某人)意识到

B. adj. 警觉的

C. v. 向……报警

2. **launch**

A. v. 发起,发动

B. v. 发射

C. v. 发行

①We will **launch** a rocket next week. B

②He plans to **launch** a big attack on the enemy. A

③If a company **launches** a new product, it makes it available to the public. C

## Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十四)

### Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

#### I. 单词拼写

- Smoking might be banned (禁止) totally in most buildings in big cities.
- From his puzzled (困惑的) look, we can tell that he is not aware of the topic we are discussing.
- His mouth became dry, his eyes widened, and he began to tremble (发抖) all over.
- He found it difficult to get the precise (精确的) location of the marsh.
- They launched (发起) an online activity to raise money to set up a school for them.
- I want to serve as a volunteer of this international tennis competition because I'm really passionate (具有强烈信念的) about tennis.
- Such is the elegance (优美) of this typeface that it is still a favourite of designers.
- Diamonds (钻石) are said to be the hardest known mineral.
- He had made a thorough (缜密的) investigation. No wonder he knew so much about it.
- When he was still very young, he established his reputation (名声) he still enjoys today as one of China's greatest writers.

#### II. 单句语法填空

- Don't lose heart; all your friends will stand by you.

- As she turned back, she caught the puzzled (puzzle) look on her mother's face.
- Dozens (dozen) of flats had been completely destroyed.
- The furniture managed to combine practicality with elegance (elegant).
- When I was standing before the judges, I was so nervous that I kept trembling (tremble).
- Beyond these, I also think you need to be passionate about what you do.
- We time the process to manufacture cars very precisely (precise).
- If we do not deal with pressure properly, it may cause harm to the body.

#### III. 短语填空

in particular; be aware of; be regarded as; rather than; dozens of; stand by; alert... to; speak of

- He mistakenly believed that his family would stand by him.
- They had been alerted to the possibility of further price rises.
- Facing up to your problems rather than running away from them is the best approach to working things out.
- The computer game is designed for game lovers, young ones in particular.

5. It was several minutes before the hostess was aware of her mistakes.
6. When they were talking, one of them spoke of his experience in China.
7. As we know, English is regarded as a global language, which plays an important role in our life.
8. She was picked out from dozens of applicants for the job.

#### IV. 完成句子

1. Worried, we urged/urge them to solve the problem as soon as possible.  
我们很担心,所以敦促他们尽快解决这个问题。
2. What they want to do at present is to replace the old car with a new one.  
他们目前想做的是将旧车换成一辆新车。
3. The manager did attempt to ban using phones during working hours at that time.  
经理那时确实试图禁止在工作时间使用手机。
4. Unless it snows heavily, we will go to school as usual.  
我们还是会照常去学校,除非下大雪。
5. Hard though they tried, they couldn't make her change her mind.  
尽管他们做了很大努力,还是没法让她改变主意。

#### V. 语法填空

“If the world ends one day, these collections will bring hope of a new beginning to life on the earth,” said Li Pei, a staff member at the Germplasm Bank of Wild Species (GBOWS), in Yunnan Province.

1. Founded (found) in 2007, GBOWS is a research and preservation facility for rare and endangered plants and animals.

How does the bank work? Scientists collect endangered and 2. useful (use) wild species and send them to the seed bank. For future study, collectors have to record 3. details (detail) of the plant, including 4. where it was found, its size and the number of individual plants in the habitat.

Once the seeds arrive, they're handled 5. properly (proper) by scientists. Then, X-rays confirm that the seeds are in good state. Then the seeds 6. are frozen (freeze), stored in glass bottles and placed in huge freezers at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Each container has 7. a bar code for scanning to enable scientists to view seeds' information.

GBOWS in Yunnan, 8. which works with international partners, holds 2,176 sets of seeds from 45 countries and regions, with each set 9. containing (contain) thousands of individual seeds.

“As China has rich and unique biological resources, we aim to further enhance (增加) our collections and conduct 10. deeper (deep) research,” Li Pei said.

#### VI. 写作

##### 第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华,你和外国笔友露西(Lucy)都喜欢英文诗歌。最近,她发来电子邮件,询问你最喜欢哪一首英文诗歌,请你用英语给她写一封电子邮件。要点包括:

1. 诗歌名;
2. 诗歌的作者;
3. 喜欢这首诗歌的原因。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Lucy,

I am glad to tell you about my favourite poem.

Looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours,

Li Hua

#### 【参考范文】

Dear Lucy,

I am glad to tell you about my favourite poem. You know, I like Robert Burns very much. My favourite poem is *A Red, Red Rose*. In this poem, Burns compares the woman he loves dearly to a red rose that is

in full bloom in June. Whenever I read the poem, a red rose will appear in my mind. Though the words he uses are simple and easy to understand, Burns expresses his feelings so powerfully that I am deeply impressed. Besides, I like the rhymes at the end of the sentences, which make the poem read well. Have you ever read poems by Burns? How do you like them?

Looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours,

Li Hua

## 第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

I live in a small but lovely neighbourhood. Our house is neither large nor luxurious, but it has a fairly big garden. My father loves his garden. He planted some seeds in it and took good care of the plants, watering them, applying fertiliser, weeding and getting rid of bugs. He was never tired of doing all that stuff. But at that time, I didn't understand why working in the dirt excited him so much.

Unfortunately, in the summer vacation before senior high school, my father was seriously injured in an accident. He had to stay in bed for a while. My mother had several business trips, so she couldn't take care of the garden. I didn't want my father to worry. I said that I would take care of his garden until he recovered. I assumed that the little plants would continue to grow as long as they had water, and luckily it rained fairly often, so I didn't think much about the garden.

One Saturday morning, my father said to me, "Christine, the vegetables should be about ready to be picked. Let's have a salad today!" I went out to the garden and was upset to see that many of the lettuce (生菜) leaves and carrots had been half eaten by bugs. There were hundreds of bugs all over them!

I panicked for a moment but then I quietly went to the nearest supermarket to buy some vegetables.

When I was making the salad, my mother came home and saw the bag from the supermarket in the kitchen. I was embarrassed and admitted, "Dad would like a salad, but the garden is a disaster. I don't want to disappoint him, so I went to the store and bought some vegetables." My mother smiled, saying, "Honey, you know what is the right thing to do."

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

My father seemed very pleased when I took the salad to him. \_\_\_\_\_

Feeling guilty, I decided to do the right thing. \_\_\_\_\_

## 【参考范文】

My father seemed very pleased when I took the salad to him. "It looks so good. Your salad makes my mouth water," Dad couldn't wait to try it. He forked a piece into his mouth and chewed slowly, his face spreading in a satisfied smile. Giving me a thumbs-up, he said, "Little did I know you are so good at gardening. You are a man of your word." My father kept praising me, which made my ears burning. Feeling bad about what I had done, I forced a bitter smile. How could I cheat my father?

Feeling guilty, I decided to do the right thing. With tears welling up in my eyes, I told my father I didn't live up to his expectations and that the garden was a mess. To my surprise, instead of scolding me, my father patted me on the shoulder gently and told me to turn to him if I needed any help. Under his guidance, I learned to apply fertilisers, weeds and remove bugs. The vegetables became better and better day by day, and so did my father. I began to enjoy taking care of vegetables and I finally understood my father's pleasure of working in the dirt.



# 迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

## Part 1 应用文写作——诗歌

### 写作指导

诗歌写作属于一种创意写作,是作者表达感情的一种文体。写作时可采用以下步骤:

1. 思考你想要在诗中表达什么。想一想你为什么要写诗,你的目标读者是谁,并以此规划你的写作。
2. 决定何种诗体适合你的主题。英文诗歌的诗体有很多种,如五行打油诗、十四行诗、十九行诗、自由诗等。你可以根据诗歌主题选择适合的诗体。
3. 选择正确的词。认真选择词语,有时两个读法相近的词或者同义词能组成有趣的双关语。
4. 使用具体的意象和生动的描述。这种方法可以引起读者的共鸣,以帮助其更加沉浸于文字中。
5. 运用写作手法增强诗的美感和意蕴。押韵是一种常见的诗歌写作手法。押韵可以为你的诗句增加节奏感和韵律感,增强意蕴,或者让整首诗更为连贯,让语言更美。
6. 在诗歌结尾增加一个“亮点”。把你的启示或洞悉放在诗歌结尾,给读者一些思考及回味的空间。

### 典题示例

阅读下面的诗歌节选,然后用英语写一首有关春天的诗歌。

#### LINES WRITTEN IN EARLY SPRING

(Excerpt)

I heard a thousand blended notes,  
While in a grove I sate reclined,  
In that sweet mood when pleasant thoughts  
Bring sad thoughts to the mind.

To her fair works did Nature link  
The human soul that through me ran;  
And much it grieved my heart to think  
What man has made of man.

Through primrose tufts, in that green bower,  
The periwinkle trailed its wreaths;  
And this my faith that every flower  
Enjoys the air it breathes.

The birds around me hopped and played,  
Their thoughts I cannot measure;  
But the least motion which they made  
It seemed a thrill of pleasure.

The budding twigs spread out their fan,  
To catch the breezy air;  
And I must think, do all I can,  
That there was pleasure there.

#### 写于早春

我躺卧在树林之中,  
听着融洽的千万声音,  
闲适的情绪,愉快的思想,  
却带来了忧心忡忡。

大自然把她的美好事物  
通过我连通人类的心灵,  
而我痛心万分,想起了  
人怎样对待着人。

那边绿荫中的樱草花丛,  
有长春花在把花圈编织,  
我深信每朵花不论大小,  
都能享受它呼吸的空气。

四围的鸟儿跳了又要,  
我不知道它们想些什么,  
但它们每个细微的动作,  
似乎都激起心头的欢乐。

萌芽的嫩枝张臂如扇,  
捕捉那阵阵的清风,  
使我没法不深切地感到,  
它们也自有欢欣。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	诗歌
格律	抑扬格五音步
修辞手法	反复、比喻
要点	1. 用花与树表达希望 2. 用棕榈表达胜利 3. 用鸟的歌唱表达喜悦

Step 2: 要点补全

① Spring, is the year's pleasant king,  
Then blooms each thing, then maids dance in a  
circle,  
Cold does not sting, the pretty birds do sing.  
令人愉快的春天, 你是快乐之王总领全年;  
万紫千红争艳, 少女环舞翩跹,  
乍暖还寒, 鸟啼鸣唱。

② The palm and may make country houses  
beautiful,  
Lambs frisk and play, the shepherds pipe all day,  
And we hear birds tune this merry lay.  
棕榈树和山楂花, 为农舍梳妆,  
羊羔嬉闹奔跑, 牧笛终日悠扬,  
百鸟齐鸣, 歌声欢快四处飘荡。

③ The fields breathe sweet, the daisies kiss our  
feet,  
Young lovers meet, old wives a sunning sit,  
In every street these tunes our ears do greet.  
田野散发芬芳, 雏菊亲吻脚掌,  
少男少女互诉衷肠, 老妇晒春阳,  
大街小巷, 总有歌声在耳畔荡漾。

Step 3: 句式升级

① 采用反复、押韵的手法升级 Step 2 中的①句。  
Spring, the sweet spring, is the year's pleasant king,  
Then blooms each thing, then maids dance in a ring,  
Cold does not sting, the pretty birds do sing.

② 采用反复、押韵的手法升级 Step 2 中的②句。  
The palm and may make country houses gay,  
Lambs frisk and play, the shepherds pipe all day,  
And we hear birds tune this merry lay.

③ 采用反复、押韵的手法升级 Step 2 中的③句。  
The fields breathe sweet, the daisies kiss our feet,

Young lovers meet, old wives a sunning sit,  
In every street these tunes our ears do greet.

Step 4: 连句成篇

【参考范文】

Spring

Spring, the sweet spring, is the year's pleasant  
king,  
Then blooms each thing, then maids dance in a  
ring,  
Cold does not sting, the pretty birds do sing:  
Cuckoo, jug-jug, pu-we, to-witta-woo!

The palm and may make country houses gay,  
Lambs frisk and play, the shepherds pipe  
all day,  
And we hear birds tune this merry lay:  
Cuckoo, jug-jug, pu-we, to-witta-woo!

The fields breathe sweet, the daisies kiss our  
feet,  
Young lovers meet, old wives a sunning sit,  
In every street these tunes our ears do greet:  
Cuckoo, jug-jug, pu-we, to-witta-woo!  
Spring! The sweet spring!

○学以致用

春天是万物复苏的季节, 请你以“春天”为题用英语写一首诗歌。

【参考范文】

Spring

Today is the day when bold kites fly,  
When cumulus clouds roar across the sky.  
When robins return, when children cheer,  
When light rain beckons spring to appear.

Today is the day when daffodils bloom,  
Which children pick to fill the room.  
Today is the day when grasses green,  
When leaves burst forth for spring to be seen.

## Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

When I was eleven years old, I moved to Tampa, Florida. My parents travelled for a living, so Aunt Emily took care of me while they were away. One rainy morning, there was an old lady who was dressed in a bright orange coat carrying a rubbish bag and a stick. “What’s that old lady doing?” I asked Emily, pointing out the window to the street in front of the house.

Hearing my question, Emily answered, “She’s picking up rubbish around here for fun.” “Oh,” I answered. “Interesting... Why would someone think picking up rubbish was fun?” For a long time, I often saw that old lady—rain or shine—on my way to school. In the beginning, I thought she was crazy to pick up rubbish. However, I finally smiled and waved at her each time I saw her.

Later, when I moved to college, I’d see rubbish in the grass and feel really angry about it. I’d think, “Why isn’t anyone picking up rubbish? People are so unconcerned!” But shortly after that, I said to myself, “Why do I think picking up rubbish is someone else’s duty?” And I couldn’t walk past trash without feeling guilty (内疚的).

So while walking in the college, I began picking up rubbish and made sure the campus was in better shape than I previously found it. My behaviour influenced some students. They started to help out.

Like me, they also picked up rubbish whenever they noticed it. And our college became more beautiful. Seeing it, I began to think, “If I could pick up rubbish outside the college—in other places of the town, it may make a big difference to the town.”

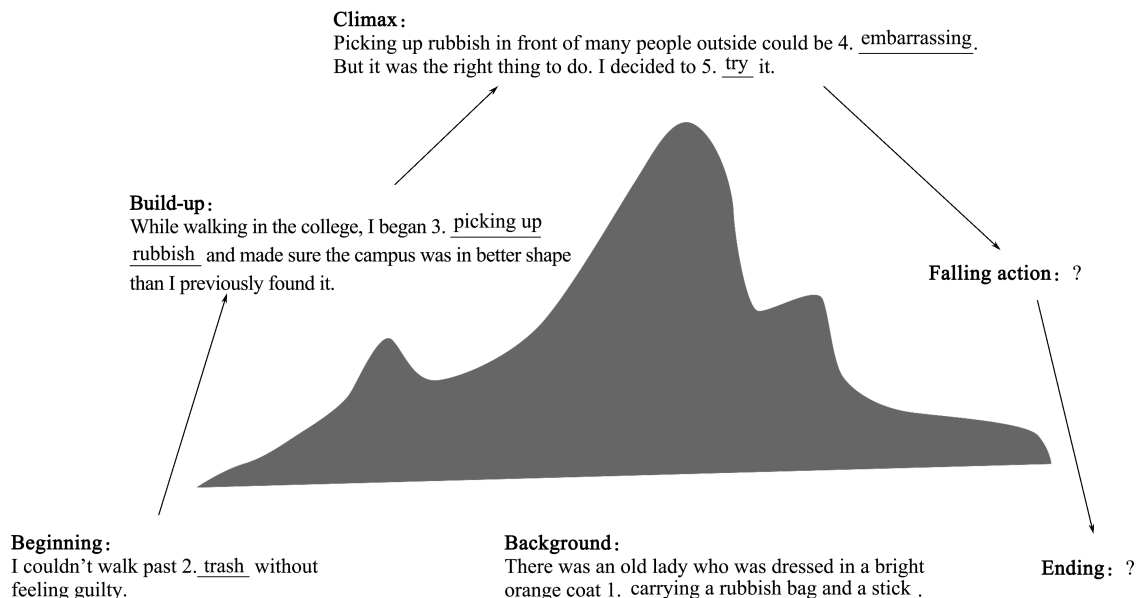
But picking up rubbish in front of many people outside the college needs courage. It could be embarrassing. But it was the right thing to do. I decided to try it.

任务一: 阅读文章, 回答问题。

What does the passage mainly talk about?

An old woman who often picked up rubbish influenced the author, later at college the author began to pick up rubbish bravely, and his act encouraged many people.

任务二: 梳理故事情节, 完成故事山 (Story Mountain)。



任务三:回答下列问题,并根据段落开头提示语,构思并完善故事发展的情节。

<p><b>Paragraph 1:</b></p> <p>One morning, I went out to pick up rubbish.</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. How did other people respond to the author's behaviour?</p> <p><u>Some people watched the author with a strange look that seemed to say he was crazy.</u></p> <p>2. Who did the author remember?</p> <p><u>He remembered that old lady who often picked up rubbish years ago.</u></p> <p>3. What did others do with time going?</p> <p><u>Gradually, they praised and thanked the author.</u></p>
<p><b>Paragraph 2:</b></p> <p>Then I decided to encourage more students to do this in the town. _____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p>	<p>1. What did they do to pick up more rubbish?</p> <p><u>They agreed and set up a volunteer organisation. They bought each student a bright orange coat with words on it: Let's make our town cleaner!</u></p> <p>2. What happened to strangers later after seeing their action?</p> <p><u>Something amazing happened—the strangers around them helped out too!</u></p> <p>3. How did the author feel through the experience?</p> <p><u>The author thought to himself, "The old lady made all this happen; she made a big difference in my life."</u></p>

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

One morning, I went out to pick up rubbish. \_\_\_\_\_

Then I decided to encourage more students to do this in the town. \_\_\_\_\_

### 【参考范文】

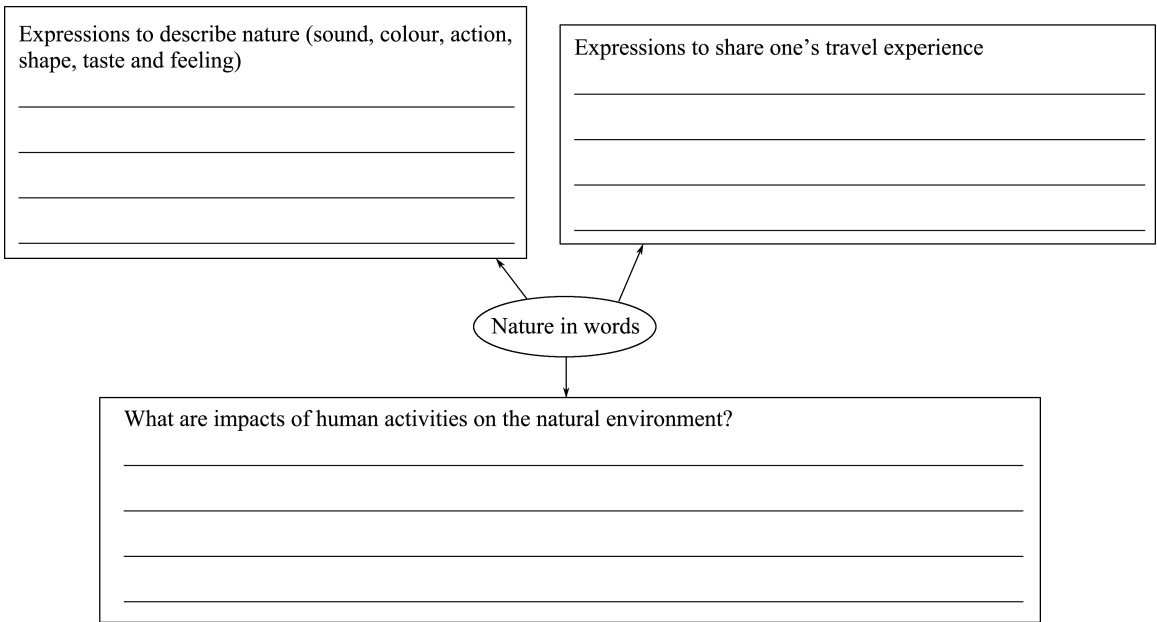
One morning, I went out to pick up rubbish. Some people watched me with a strange look that seemed to say I was crazy. And suddenly, I remembered that old lady who often picked up rubbish years ago. The interesting thing was that I was acting just like her! As strange as it might sound, picking up rubbish is kind of fun for me! Gradually, many people realised I was volunteering to help make our town clean. They praised me and thanked me.

Then I decided to encourage more students to do this in the town. Surprisingly, they agreed and we set up a volunteer organisation. We bought each student a bright orange coat with words on it: Let's make our town cleaner! And we took time to not only pick up rubbish but also sort through it and recycle it. Something amazing happened—the strangers around us helped out too! I thought to myself, "The old lady made all this happen; she made a big difference in my life."

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

ROOTS & SHOOTS

Most people suffer from what is known as “Just-me-ism”. What is that? Well, say you leave the tap running while you brush your teeth, leave a light on when you go out or you drop a piece of litter and can’t be bothered to pick it up. You know that all those things are wrong, but so what? “What difference can it possibly make?” you say to yourself. “There are millions of people in the world and I’m just me. How can it matter if I leave one little tap running, one little light on or leave a little piece of litter on the road? And, anyway, no one knows.” Of course, it wouldn’t matter if there were just a few people in the world. But just think of all the millions of people saying to themselves: “It doesn’t matter. It’s just me. And, anyway, no one knows.” Millions of gallons of water would be wasted; millions of lights would be left on; millions of pieces of litter would be dropped. And all of this would be very harmful.

To inspire young people to take action for the environment, animals and their community, Roots & Shoots was established. This institute was set up in the early 1990s by Dr Jane Goodall, a scientist who’s the world’s best-known expert on wild chimpanzees. In addition to her research, she has been whole-heartedly committed to environmental protection. The whole purpose of Roots & Shoots is to educate young people, from pre-schoolers to university students, so they can help to build a future that is secure and live together in peace with nature.

The organisation is called Roots & Shoots because roots move slowly under the ground to make a firm foundation, and shoots seem small and weak, but they can break open brick walls to reach the light. The roots and shoots are you, your friends and young people all around the world. Hundreds and thousands of roots and shoots can solve the problems, change the world and make it a better place to live in.

Do you think you help to make the world a better place when you make a sad person smile, when you make a dog wag its tail, and when you water a thirsty plant? One cheered-up person, one happy dog, one flowering plant, and you. That's what Roots & Shoots is all about: the value and importance of each individual—human, animal or plant. Dr. Jane Goodall believes that the most important thing is that: "Every individual matters. Every individual has a role to play. Every individual makes a difference." You get to choose: Do you want to use your life to make the world a better place for people, animals and the environment? Do you want to make Roots & Shoots rooted in everyone's heart? Do you want to be part of a community for a shared future? You cannot be absent.

*It is by acting together, in this exciting way, that we can involve thousands—millions—of people, and this is what is going to change the world.*

—Jane Goodall

1. What is not "Just-me-ism"?
  - A. Leave the tap running while you brush your teeth.
  - B. Leave a light burning when you go out.
  - C. Drop a piece of litter and can't be bothered to pick it up.
  - D. Turn off the light when you go out.
2. When was Roots & Shoots established?
  - A. In the early 1980s.
  - B. In the late 1980s.
  - C. In the early 1990s.
  - D. In the late 1990s.
3. What's the purpose of Roots & Shoots?
  - A. To educate old people.
  - B. To educate young people.
  - C. To educate middle-aged people.
  - D. To educate children.
4. What can we learn from the text?
  - A. Every individual doesn't matter.
  - B. Every individual can make a difference to the world.
  - C. Only a few people suffer from "Just-me-ism".
  - D. People can't live together in peace with nature.

答案:1~4 DCBB

## 单元测试卷(六)

(考查范围:Unit 6 时间:100 分钟 分值:120 分)

### I. 阅读理解(共 15 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 37.5 分)

#### A

With summer right around the corner, you're bound to feel a serious case of wanderlust coming on. Whatever you've got in mind, we've rounded up a selection of the world's most beautiful camping spots to get you started.

#### Yosemite National Park, California

Ninety-five percent of Yosemite National Park is set apart for wilderness, which means no cars, no buildings, and no electricity. Sleep under the stars and hike up to Glacier Point for a view of Yosemite Valley, Half Dome, and Yosemite Falls. Make sure you store your food properly though—black bears are common!

#### Boya Lake Provincial Park, Canada

Boya Lake Provincial Park, known for the colour and clarity of its lake, is a great place to enjoy any type of water recreation. The lake is also one of the few in the north that's warm enough for swimming. The area was carved out by glaciers, leaving many islands and lakes behind for modern campers to explore on the park's hiking trails.

#### Corcovado National Park, Costa Rica

Corcovado National Park is home to five percent of the world's biodiversity—*National Geographic* described it as the most "geographically intense" place in the world. Camping is a great option for a visit to Costa Rica; you'll be at the



heart of the rainforest away from the country's touristy resorts.

### Maasai Mara National Reserve, Kenya

If you've always dreamed of safaris (野外观兽旅行), Maasai Mara is the place to go. The ideal time to visit this large game reserve is between July and October, when you can witness the annual migration of Thomson's gazelle (汤氏瞪羚), zebra, and wildebeest (牛羚) to and from the neighbouring Serengeti, in Tanzania. Camp on the banks of the Mara River and hang out with the local Maasai people, well-known for their distinctive customs and dress.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了世界上四处最美的野营地点。

1. In which camping spot may you enjoy the grand view of waterfalls?

- A. Yosemite National Park.
- B. Corcovado National Park.
- C. Boya Lake Provincial Park.
- D. Maasai Mara National Reserve.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Yosemite National Park, California** 部分中的 "Sleep under the stars and hike up to Glacier Point for a view of Yosemite Valley, Half Dome, and Yosemite Falls." 可知, 大家可以在 Yosemite National Park 欣赏到瀑布。故选 A。

2. Who can be interested in camping in Corcovado National Park?

- A. Swimming lovers.
- B. Star observers.
- C. Animal researchers.
- D. Biology students.

D 推理判断题。根据 **Corcovado National Park, Costa Rica** 部分中的 "Corcovado National Park is home to five percent of the world's biodiversity..." 可知, 生物学学生可能会对去 Corcovado National Park 野营感兴趣。故选 D。

3. What will you do in Maasai Mara National Reserve?

- A. Migrate with wild animals.
- B. Pay a visit to Tanzania.
- C. Make contacts with locals.
- D. Camp in the Mara River.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Maasai Mara National Reserve, Kenya** 部分中的 "Camp on the banks of

the Mara River and hang out with the local Maasai people, well-known for their distinctive customs and dress." 可知, 可以在 Maasai Mara National Reserve 和当地人四处逛一逛。故选 C。

### B

Sharanya, 14, an eighth grader from Challenger School, built a solar-powered trash-collecting robot, which will play a vital role in taking care of the environment.

Volunteering in local city cleanups, Sharanya was always saddened to see tons of rubbish still out there after hours' hard work. "People do have very limited time and resources, but robots don't. They'll collect double the amount and work for longer hours," Sharanya says. "I learned from a science journal that solar panels designed to always face the sun collect more energy than stationary ones. So I determined to design a trash-collecting robot powered by a sun-tracking solar panel."

However, Sharanya had no experience in robotics, so it was a completely new experience. She firmly believed there's no instant way to success and that it's just a process of trial and error. Throughout the project, she studied operating instructions repeatedly and had to use tons of power tools and cut pieces of metal to certain lengths. Her dad would come to her rescue whenever she accidentally burned a wire. "It's difficult to follow the scientific method, but sticking to this and changing just one variable at a time will get you the best results," Sharanya says.

Sharanya's robot has trash and recycling bins and moves with motorised wheels. The device's front and back have object-detecting sensors. One end of the robot has a rubbish-collecting moveable arm with a pan to gather objects and drop them into the trash or recycling bins. This pan also contains a metal-detecting sensor to sort metal recyclables into the appropriate place. A solar panel sits at the robot's other end, extended into the air. Attached to it is a light-tracking device that follows the sun, enabling the solar panel to move accordingly.

In tests, the sun-tracking solar panel generated more power than a stationary one over six hours. And the robot correctly identified an object every time it was presented. It picked up items and accurately classified aluminum cans as recyclables 80

percent of the time. Sharanya is confident that the robot will soon sort plastic and glass by striking the items and detecting the difference in their frequencies.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。十四岁的 Sharanya 制造了一个太阳能垃圾收集机器人。该机器人将在保护环境方面发挥至关重要的作用。

4. What led Sharanya to intend a sun-tracking solar panel for the robot?

- A. Her survey findings.
- B. The knowledge she acquired.
- C. Her social experiences.
- D. The extra courses she attended.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“I learned from a science journal that solar panels designed to always face the sun collect more energy than stationary ones. So I determined to design a trash-collecting robot powered by a sun-tracking solar panel.”可知, Sharanya 在一本科学杂志上了解的知识使她打算为机器人设计一个阳光追踪太阳能电池板。故选 B。

5. What does Paragraph 3 focus on regarding Sharanya?

- A. What contributed to her success.
- B. Why she didn't fear failure.
- C. Whether goals counted in her work.
- D. How she was financially supported.

A 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容可知, 本段主要讲述了 Sharanya 的坚持和尝试促使了她的成功。故选 A。

6. What may be the function of the object-detecting sensors?

- A. To identify colours.
- B. To locate metal materials.
- C. To discover garbage.
- D. To analyse moving routes.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“One end of the robot has a rubbish-collecting moveable arm with a pan to gather objects and drop them into the trash or recycling bins. This pan also contains a metal-detecting sensor to sort metal recyclables into the appropriate place.”可推知, metal-detecting sensor 是用来发现、收集金属, 而 object-detecting sensors 应该是用来发现、收集垃圾这样的物件。故选 C。

7. What does the author mainly want to say in the last paragraph?

- A. The robot needs retesting.
- B. The robot reached no desired effect.
- C. The robot enjoys wide popularity.
- D. The robot faces a promising prospect.

D 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可推知, 作者最后一段想说明该机器人前景广阔。故选 D。

### C

When the Prussian naturalist Alexander von Humboldt arrived in South America in 1799, one thing astonished him. “Look at the flowers and the birds,” he wrote. “Even the crayfish are blue and yellow.”

Gradually, Humboldt's thoughts developed and changed into an informal guess that organisms in equatorial (赤道的) areas are more colourful than those near the poles.

In a new paper in *Nature Ecology & Evolution*, Chris Cooney, an evolutionary biologist at the University of Sheffield, and his colleagues offer what they call the most comprehensive examination of this guess to date, demonstrating that it does apply to birds known as passerines, a family of songbirds.

Over several years, Dr Cooney's team photographed 4,327 birds from Britain's Natural History Museum's data—representing roughly half the total bird diversity on Earth. As passerine birds are sensitive and visible to UV light, they see more colours than humans. The researchers, therefore, took pictures under UV light to get true bird's-eye views.

A machine-learning method was then used to identify the colours of the feathers at hundreds of points on each sample. The total number of colours found on each bird was then mapped onto the geographic distribution of their parent species. The researchers used this data to study how colourful different regions of the world were. The key factor here was the diversity of colours on individual birds.

Equatorial birds, the researchers concluded, were indeed more colourful than their cousins in temperate (温带的) regions. The birds sampled at the equator had, on average, about 90 different colours, while birds at 40 degrees latitude (纬度) had about 70 colours.

Over the decades, numerous explanations for tropical colourfulness have been put forward. Some have guessed that warmer climates make more resources available to the creatures here, allowing them to spend energy developing adornments (装饰品). Others have pointed out that the bright colours may arise from chemical compounds in their diet, or make it possible for breeding pairs to spot one another in the darker environment of a tropical forest floor.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了科学人员发现生物体的颜色丰富程度是随着纬度而改变的,因此研究人员推测赤道地区的生物颜色应该更丰富,事实证明确实如此。

8. What surprised Humboldt when he arrived in South America?

- A. The breathtaking scenery.
- B. The diversity of creatures.
- C. The extremely hot temperature.
- D. The rich colours of the organisms.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段的内容可知, Humboldt 对花、鸟还有蓝黄的小龙虾感到震惊。由此可知,是南美的生物的丰富色彩使他惊讶。故选 D。

9. What did Cooney's team intend to do?

- A. To study why passerine birds are sensitive to UV light.
- B. To figure out how passerine birds are distributed in the world.
- C. To test whether creatures in equatorial areas are more colourful.
- D. To discover whether the colour diversity is related to the species diversity.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段以及第三段的内容可知, Cooney 和他的同事们证明了赤道地区的生物体颜色更丰富这一猜想适用于雀鸟。由此可知,他们的意图是想要证明赤道地区的生物是否颜色更丰富。故选 C。

10. Which of the following might Cooney agree with?

- A. Colourfulness changes with latitude.
- B. Colourfulness shows the evolution of birds.
- C. Bright colours contribute to the survival of birds.
- D. Bright colours are associated with birds' sharp vision.

A 推理判断题。根据第六段的内容可知,研究者总结赤道的鸟有大约 90 种颜色,在纬度 40 度地区的鸟有大约 70 种颜色,这说明颜色丰富程度是随着纬度而改变的。由此推断 Cooney 会更同意鸟类颜色随纬度而变化这一观点。故选 A。

11. Which aspect of tropical colourfulness does the last paragraph focus on?

- A. Its influence.
- B. Its causes.
- C. Its importance.
- D. Its discovery.

B 段落大意题。根据最后一段的主题句“Over the decades, numerous explanations for tropical colourfulness have been put forward.”可知,几十年来人们已经提出了众多关于热带生物颜色丰富性的解释,后面列举了不同的观点,如温暖气候、食物中的化学成分等原因,所以本段主要讲的是导致热带生物颜色丰富的原因。故选 B。

#### D

While there are many factors that go into how attractive you are to mosquitoes, new research has found the colours you're wearing definitely play a role.

That's the main conclusion from a new study published in the journal *Nature Communications*. For the study, researchers from the University of Washington tracked the behaviour of female *Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes when they were given different types of visual and scent cues (信号). The researchers put the mosquitoes into small test chambers and exposed them to different things, like a coloured dot or a person's hand.

In case you're not familiar with how mosquitoes find food, they first detect that you're around by smelling carbon dioxide from your breath. That prompts them to scan for certain colours and visual patterns that could indicate food, the researchers explained.

When there was no smell like carbon dioxide in the test chambers, the mosquitoes pretty much ignored the coloured dot, no matter what colour it was. But once researchers sprayed carbon dioxide in the chamber, they flew towards dots that were red, orange, black, or cyan. Dots that were green, blue, or purple were ignored.

“Light colours are perceived as a threat to

mosquitoes, which is why many species avoid biting in direct sunlight,” entomologist Timothy Best says. “Mosquitoes are very likely to die by dehydration (脱水), therefore light colours may typically represent danger and prompt avoidance. In contrast, darker colours are similar to shadows, which are more likely to absorb and store heat, allowing mosquitoes to use their sophisticated antenna to locate a host.”

If you have the option of wearing lighter or darker clothes when you know you'll be going into an area with lots of mosquitoes, Best recommends going with the lighter choice. “Dark colours stand out to mosquitoes, whereas light colours blend in,” he says.

Apart from avoiding colours mosquitoes like (red, orange, black, and cyan) when you're going into areas where these bugs are known to exist, there are other things you can do to lower your risk of being bitten by a mosquito, which include:

- Using insect repellent
- Wear long-sleeved shirts and pants
- Get rid of standing water around your home or empty items that hold water like bird baths, toys, and planters weekly
- Use screens on your windows and doors

Each of these protective measures will contribute in decreasing your likelihood of getting bitten. And, if you're able to wear something other than red or dark colours, even better.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了很多因素都可能导致你成为“招蚊体质”。新的研究发现,你穿的衣服颜色也起到了一定作用。

12. How did researchers from the University of Washington conduct their study?

- A. They referred to a series of previous research findings.
- B. They compared the behaviour of female mosquitoes with male ones.
- C. They exposed mosquitoes to different living environments.
- D. They kept track of the behaviour of some female mosquitoes.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*For the study, researchers from the University of Washington tracked the behaviour of female*

*Aedes aegypti* mosquitoes when they were given different types of visual and scent cues (信号).”可知,研究者们采用了跟踪一些雌性蚊子的行为的方式实施了这项研究。故选D。

13. What can be used to replace the underlined word “prompts” in the third paragraph?

- A. Drills.
- B. Causes.
- C. Requires.
- D. Qualifies.

B 词义猜测题。根据第三段的内容可知,你呼出的二氧化碳诱使蚊子们寻找可能指示食物的颜色和视觉模式。所以画线词的意思应该是“促使,导致”。故选B。

14. What does Best mean by his words in Paragraph 6?

- A. You can go out wearing lighter or darker clothes.
- B. Dark colours do a good job in protecting you from being bitten.
- C. Light colours make it less likely for mosquitoes to detect you.
- D. Light colours may represent danger and prompt avoidance.

C 推理判断题。根据第六段中的“*Dark colours stand out to mosquitoes, whereas light colours blend in...*”可知,Best的话意味着浅颜色的衣服使得蚊子不容易发现你。故选C。

15. What can you do to decrease your likelihood of getting bitten by mosquitoes?

- A. Screening your windows and doors.
- B. Leaving standing water around your home.
- C. Dismissing carbon dioxide from your breath.
- D. Wearing clothes in red or dark colours.

A 细节理解题。根据第七段的内容和“*Use screens on your windows and doors*”可知,我们可以通过使用屏风遮挡我们的门窗来减少被蚊子咬的可能性。故选A。

II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

What is your favourite colour? Do you like yellow, orange, red? 16 Do you prefer greys and blues? Then you are probably quiet, shy, and you would rather follow than lead. You tend to be a pessimist. At least, this is what psychologists tell us, and they should know, because they have been seriously studying the meaning of colour preference,

18 A yellow room makes most people feel more cheerful and more relaxed than a dark green one; and a red dress brings warmth and cheer to the saddest winter day. 19 A black bridge over the Thames River, near London, used to be the scene of more suicides than any other bridge in the area—until it was repainted green. The number of suicide attempts immediately fell sharply. Perhaps it would have fallen even more if the bridge had been done in pink or baby blue.

- A. On the other hand, black is depressing.
- B. The rooms are painted in different colours as you like.
- C. Life is like a picture or a poem, full of different colours.
- D. Colours do influence our moods—there is no doubt about it.
- E. Light and bright colours make people happier, more active and more productive.
- F. If you do, you must be an optimist, a leader, or an active person who enjoys life and excitement.
- G. They tell us that we don't choose our favourite colour as we grow up—we are born with our preference.

### III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

You wonder, “Hmm... maybe I should 28  
goals?” after thinking for a few moments. It’s

The 32 is that most people spend all of their time thinking about the treasure. The fastest way to get to a particular spot, 33, is to set your compass and start walking. The idea here is to commit to your goal with the strongest 34. Develop a clear, single-minded 35 for where you are. And then devote all of your energy to the journey and be committed to the path you are walking.

21. A. reminds                                      B. turns  
C. pays    D. grabs  
D 此处指“一个特定的目标吸引了你的注意力”。grab one's attention 表示“吸引某人的注意”, grab 符合语境。

**23.** A. challenge                      B. misfortune  
C. story                                D. surprise

A 根据下文的“path is starting to look different from the buried treasure”以及“I must be on the wrong path.”可知，寻宝之旅遭受了挑战(challenge)。

**25.** A. better                      B. more complex  
C. more relaxing            D. worse

D 根据下文的“This doesn’t look like the treasure I  
26 imagined! I must be on the wrong path.”  
可知，最初你感到寻宝之旅发生变化，到最后情  
况变得更加糟糕(worse)。

26. A. hardly                      B. usually  
C. previously                  D. normally

C 根据语境尤其是上文的“... path is starting to look different from the buried treasure that you have been imagining.”可知,此处表示这和先前(previously)想象的不一样。

27. A. forgot B. wasted  
C. valued D. managed

B 根据上文的“I must be on the wrong path.”可知,此处表示自己走错了路,浪费(wasted)了这些时间。

28. A. attain B. assess  
C. switch D. achieve

C 根据第一段中的“I must be on the wrong path.”可知,此处表示以为自己走错了路,所以没有找到想要的宝藏,故认为自己应改变(switch)目标。

29. A. natural B. necessary  
C. obvious D. strange

A 根据行文逻辑可知,走错了路,寻错了宝,为此感到很失落是很正常的(natural)事。

30. A. failure B. confusion  
C. shame D. ignorance

B 根据上文的“... maybe I should 28 goals?”可知,你走错了路,找到的宝藏不是想要的,犹豫要不要改变目标,这是一种困惑(confusion)。

31. A. buried B. lost  
C. absorbed D. rooted

D 根据语境可知,此处表示作者分析没有找到想要的宝藏的根源(rooted)在于一开始就没有弄清楚该如何接近宝藏。

32. A. evidence B. lesson  
C. truth D. problem

D 根据下文的“... most people spend all of their time thinking about the treasure.”和“... set your compass and start walking.”可知,花费所有的时间想宝藏而不设置好指南针再出发是问题(problem)所在。

33. A. anyway B. however  
C. otherwise D. therefore

B 根据语境可知,此处与上文之间是转折关系。故however符合语境。

34. A. belief B. feelings  
C. support D. nerves

A 根据下文的“... be committed to the path you are walking.”可知,你要专注于你的目的地,坚定地走下去,故此处表示你需要有最强的信念(belief)。

35. A. habit B. desire  
C. focus D. interest

C 根据语境可知,此处表示专注于(focus)你的目的地。

#### IV. 语法填空(共10小题;每小题1.5分,满分15分)

Around the heights of a mountain range in southwestern China, thousands of different species of flowers mysteriously live together in harmony, without fighting they do in other areas for the pollinators (授粉) that are crucial to their continued **36. survival** (survive). The flowers' coexistence **37. has confused** (confuse) many scientists for years, but a new study may offer answers.

A team of Chinese researchers set out to better understand the phenomenon. By documenting the flowering patterns of 34 different species, they discovered that they were not blooming at the same time, **38. but** at different points of the season, **39. explaining** (explain) their ability to thrive so closely to one another.

The Hengduan Mountains are known for **40. their** (they) biological diversity. However, the mountains are also spectacular because of the **41. estimated** (estimate) 12,000 species of flowers that call them home, some 3,300 of which aren't found naturally anywhere else on Earth.

“We **42. normally** (normal) associate areas of very high species richness with hot areas,” said Richard Ree. “But in this case, this is a region **43. where** there are glaciers and snow-covered peaks.”

There are around 272 different species of rhododendrons native to the Hengduan Region, ranging from low-growing shrubs **44. to** tall trees, with colours of bright purples, pinks, blues and yellows. Qin Li, a researcher at the Chicago Field Museum, spent over two months visiting more than 100 sites throughout the bloom season **45. to document** (document) their blossoms and other characteristics. She described the species on the mountains as an “ocean of flowers”.

#### V. 写作(共两节,满分40分)

##### 第一节 应用文写作(满分15分)

假如你是李华,你看到“孔子学院(Confucius Institute)”在中国招聘教学助理(teaching assistant)的招聘启事,该启事欢迎中国学生申请。请用英语给



该校负责人李女士(Miss Lee)发一封电子邮件申请参加。内容主要包括:

1. 表达申请意愿;
2. 申请理由(个人交际能力强;热爱中国文化);
3. 希望成功加入。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

Dear Miss Lee,

Yours,  
Li Hua

### 【参考范文】

Dear Miss Lee,

I am writing to apply for a position working as a teaching assistant in your school as is mentioned in the job posting. I am longing to get this job to better qualify myself and help others as well.

For me, Chinese is my mother language and I am excellent in it. Besides, I am interested in communicating with others. Having learned English for 9 years, I have a good command of both spoken and written English, which enables me to communicate with foreigners fluently. I love Chinese culture, which I hope foreigners will have a better understanding of.

I would appreciate your consideration of my application. Looking forward to your reply.

Yours,  
Li Hua

### 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

When a tornado (龙卷风) touched down in a small town nearby, many families were left completely ruined. One Sunday, a particular picture especially touched me. A young woman stood in front of an entirely ruined home. A young boy, seven or eight years old, stood at her side, eyes downcast. Clutching (紧握) at her skirt was a tiny girl who stared into the camera, eyes wide with confusion and fear. The article that went with the picture gave the clothing sizes of each family member. With growing interest, I noticed that their sizes closely matched ours. This would be a good opportunity to teach my children to help those less

fortunate (幸运的) than themselves. I taped the picture of the young family to our refrigerator, explaining their difficulty to my seven-year-old twins, Brad and Brett, and to three-year-old Meghan.

"These poor people now have nothing," I said. "We'll share what we have with them."

I brought three large boxes and placed them on the living room floor, encouraging the boys to go through their toys and donate (捐赠) some of their less favourite things. Meghan watched seriously, as the boys and I filled one of the boxes with canned food and goods that they no longer needed.

Meghan walked up with Lucy, her much-loved doll, hugged tightly to her chest. She stopped in front of the box, gave her doll a final kiss, and then laid her gently on top of the other toys.

"Oh, honey," I said. "You don't have to give Lucy. You love her so much."

Meghan nodded seriously, "Lucy makes me happy, Mummy. Maybe she'll make that little girl happy, too."

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

The boys had watched, open-mouthed, when their sister \_\_\_\_\_

I looked at my children for a long moment. \_\_\_\_\_

### 【参考范文】

The boys had watched, open-mouthed, when their sister placed her favourite doll in the box. Without a word, the boys rose and went to their rooms and came back carrying their favourite toys to the living room. Astonished, I realised that the boys had also recognised what little Meghan's action meant. I thought all of them wanted to make these poor people who have nothing happy like them. Swallowing back tears, I pulled all three of them into my arms.

I looked at my children for a long moment. I removed my old jacket from the box of clothes, too. I replaced it with the new hunter green jacket that had found on sale last week. I hoped the young woman in the picture would love it as much as I did. What Meghan did taught me a lesson that the true spirit of donating is to give with your heart.



## 模块测试卷

（考查范围：Unit 1—Unit 6 时间：100 分钟 分值：120 分）

### I. 阅读理解（共 15 小题；每小题 2.5 分，满分 37.5 分）

#### A

#### Be a Beekeeper for a Day!

Learn about the fascinating world of honey bees in a way that few get to experience:

Your tour, led by a professional beekeeper, will include suiting up in protective gear, lighting a bee smoker, and getting up close with more than 100,000 bees.

Guided tours include protective gear and select drinks.

Any child under the age of 18 must be accompanied by at least one paying adult.

#### Things to Know:

Ensure you arrive a few minutes before your start time to sign waivers（豁免协议）and get signed in.

Tours are weather dependent, so if the forecast calls for rain, please watch your email 24 to 28 hours before in case we need to cancel/reschedule.

#### What to Bring:

We will have a variety of protective gear for all of you. Please follow the guidelines:

Closed-toe shoes that cover the ankle are required.

Wear long pants and a long sleeve top. Try to stick to lighter colours on top.

Choose clothing that is loose fitting—nothing especially tight!

Avoid using materials that are hairy or made from sweater type materials.

Please avoid using any perfumes（香水）or creams—the bees are not fans of our smell.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了一个近距离接触蜜蜂的旅游项目。

1. What is the text?

A. A student's scientific report.

B. A user guide for keeping bees.

C. An introduction to a scenic spot.

D. An advertisement for a special tour.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段“Your tour, led by a professional beekeeper, will include suiting up in protective gear, lighting a bee smoker, and getting up close with more than 100,000 bees.”以及第三段“Guided tours include protective gear and select drinks.”并结合文章主要介绍了一个近距离接触蜜蜂的旅游项目可推知，文章是一则特殊旅行的广告。故选 D。

2. If the weather doesn't permit, what should participants do?

A. Reschedule for another day.

B. Check the email box in advance.

C. Cancel their participation immediately.

D. Prepare rain gear for better experience.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Things to Know** 部分中的“Tours are weather dependent, so if the forecast calls for rain, please watch your email 24 to 28 hours before in case we need to cancel/reschedule.”可知，如果天气不允许，参加者应该提前查看邮箱。故选 B。

3. Which of the following is allowed during the tour?

A. Being dressed in light-coloured clothing.

B. Wearing sweaters that are loose fitting.

C. Using sunscreen with pleasant smells.

D. Exploring independently at the age of 15.

A 细节理解题。根据 **What to Bring** 部分中的“Wear long pants and a long sleeve top. Try to stick to lighter colours on top.”可知，参观期间可以穿着浅色的衣服。故选 A。

#### B

There was a little boy called Charlie Bucket, who lived together with his parents and four grandparents in a small wooden house on the edge of

a great town. There was only one bed, which was given to the four old grandparents. Mr and Mrs Bucket and little Charlie Bucket slept in the other room, upon mattresses on the floor. In the summertime, this wasn't too bad, but in the winter, freezing cold draughts (穿堂风) blew across the floor all night long, and it was awful.

Mr Bucket was the only person in the family with a job, working in a toothpaste factory. But a toothpaste cap-screw is never paid very much money, and there wasn't even enough to buy proper food for all of the family. The only meals they could afford were bread for breakfast, boiled potatoes and cabbage for lunch, and cabbage soup for supper. As a growing boy, Charlie desperately wanted something more filling and satisfying than cabbage and cabbage soup. The one thing he longed for more than anything else was chocolate.

Only once a year, on his birthday, did Charlie Bucket ever get to taste a bit of chocolate. The whole family saved up their money for that special occasion, and when the great day arrived, Charlie was always presented with one small chocolate bar to eat all by himself. And each time he received it, on those marvelous birthday mornings, he would place it carefully in a small wooden box that he owned; and for the next few days, he would allow himself only to look at it, but never to touch it. Then at last, when he could stand it no longer, he would peel back a tiny bit of the paper wrapping at one corner to expose a tiny bit of chocolate, and then he would take a tiny nibble—just enough to allow the lovely sweet taste to spread out slowly over his tongue. The next day, he would take another tiny nibble, and so on. And in this way, Charlie would make his six-penny bar of birthday chocolate last for more than a month.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Charlie Bucket 的家庭生活的艰辛, 以及他对巧克力的渴望。

4. What is Paragraph 1 mainly about?

A. The big family.

B. The freezing winter.

C. The poor living conditions.

D. The four old grandparents.

C 段落大意题。根据第一段的内容可知, 第一段主要讲的是 Charlie 家的生活条件差。故选 C。

5. Why was Charlie desperate for chocolate?

A. Because he never had it before.

B. Because he was greedy and selfish.

C. Because he hated cabbage soup.

D. Because he was always hungry.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*As a growing boy, Charlie desperately wanted something more filling and satisfying than cabbage and cabbage soup. The one thing he longed for more than anything else was chocolate.*”可知, Charlie 那么想吃巧克力是因为他总是很饿。故选 D。

6. Which word can replace the underlined word “nibble”?

A. Bite.

B. Sniff.

C. Piece.

D. Bar.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线词前文“*he would peel back a tiny bit of the paper wrapping at one corner to expose a tiny bit of chocolate*”以及后文“*just enough to allow the lovely sweet taste to spread out slowly over his tongue*”可知, 画线词所在的句子描述了 Charlie 吃巧克力的过程, “*and then he would take a tiny nibble*”指的是“然后他会咬一小口”, 画线词 nibble 的意思是“(咬下的)一口”, 可用 bite 代替。故选 A。

7. What can you infer about the family?

A. They were ambitious.

B. They almost starved to death.

C. They liked chocolate.

D. They cared about each other.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“*The whole family saved up their money for that special occasion, and when the great day arrived, Charlie was always presented with one small chocolate bar to eat all by himself.*”可知, 虽然这个家庭非

常穷困,但是全家互相关心,为了能让 Charlie 生日得到一小块巧克力一起攒钱。故选 D。

### C

A study showed that farms with surrounding natural habitats experienced the most benefits from birds. The study, published in *Journal of Applied Ecology*, was conducted at 21 strawberry fields along California's Central Coast. It found that birds were more likely to carry foodborne pathogens (病原体) and eat more berries without surrounding natural habitats.

The study looked at how different farming practices influenced the costs and benefits that wild birds provided on the strawberry farms. The scientists combined nearly 300 bird surveys and the tests of more than 1,000 droppings' samples from 35 bird species to determine which birds ate pests, beneficial insects and crops, and carried foodborne pathogens.

They also ranked birds to see which were more likely to bring benefits or costs to farmlands. Barn swallows, for instance, got a “gold star” in the study. Their mud nests are commonly seen attached to the underside of eaves (屋檐), from which they fly out to fields, searching for insects.

Rather than result in a list of “good” and “bad” birds, the study found that most bird species brought both costs and benefits to farms, depending on how the landscape was managed. The presence of natural habitat was the single most important driver differentiating a farm where wild birds brought more benefits than harm.

Growers will tell you it's impossible to keep birds off your farm—you can't do that and don't want to from a conservation perspective. “Nature is messy, and birds are complex,” the researcher said. “The best we can do is understand how to take advantage of the benefits while reducing the harm.”

A related study in 2020 found that farms with natural habitats attracted more insect-eating birds and fewer strawberry-eating birds. Such habitats also bring greater numbers of bird species to the landscape. All together, these studies suggest that farming landscapes with natural habitats tend to be good for conservation, farmers, and public health.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了附近有鸟类自然栖息地的农场具有生态良好、食物安全等好处,突出了保护农田四周良好栖息地与生态环境的重要性。

8. What does the study focus on?

- A. Pathogens found on the strawberry farms.
- B. The species of birds near farmers' fields.
- C. The effect of birds' natural habitat on farming.
- D. Damage to crops and strawberries on the farm.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 “It found that birds were more likely to carry foodborne pathogens (病原体) and eat more berries without surrounding natural habitats.” 和第二段中的 “The study looked at how different farming practices influenced the costs and benefits that wild birds provided on the strawberry farms.” 可知,这项研究的重点是鸟类的自然栖息地对农业的影响。故选 C。

9. What can we learn about barn swallows?

- A. They can bring benefits for farmland.
- B. They are good at nesting on the rocks.
- C. They will add to the cost of farming.
- D. They are more likely to carry some viruses.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的 “They also ranked birds to see which were more likely to bring benefits or costs to farmlands. Barn swallows, for instance, got a ‘gold star’ in the study.” 可知,家燕可以为农田带来好处。故选 A。

10. What mainly concerns the researchers?

- A. How to keep wild birds off farms.
- B. How to maximise the benefits of birds.

- C. How to run more farms with natural habitats.  
D. How to balance birds' protection and farm profits.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“The best we can do is understand how to take advantage of the benefits while reducing the harm.”可知，鸟类对农田的作用是双面的，鸟类无法也不能被驱离，所以如何趋利避害成为农业从业者主要关心的问题。专家的建议是最大限度地利用鸟类对农业的积极作用。故选 B。

11. Which of the following is a suitable title for the text?

- A. More Birds, More Strawberries  
B. Farms—the Natural Habitats of Wild Birds  
C. Bringing Out the Best in Wild Birds on Farms  
D. The Natural Habitats of Birds Are Being Destroyed

C 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“A study showed that farms with surrounding natural habitats experienced the most benefits from birds.”可知，文章主要说明了让农场的野生鸟类发挥最大的潜能。故选 C。

#### D

IQ is often regarded as a crucial driver of success, particularly in fields such as science, innovation and technology. But the truth is that some of the greatest achievements by our species have primarily relied on what scientists call “cognitive flexibility”.

Cognitive flexibility is a skill that enables us to switch between different concepts, or to adapt behaviour to achieve goals in a novel or changing environment. And the good news is that it can be trained. Currently, a group of researchers from Cambridge University are conducting a research, trying to work out how people can best boost their cognitive flexibility.

Cognitive flexibility may have affected how

people coped with the pandemic lockdowns, which produced new challenges around work and schooling. Some people may have changed their routines from time to time, trying to find better and more varied ways of going about their day. Others, however, struggled and finally became more rigid in their thinking. They stuck to the same routine activities, with little flexibility or change.

Flexible thinking is key to creativity. It also supports academic and work skills such as problem-solving. Unlike working memory, it is largely independent of IQ. For example, many visual artists may be of average intelligence, but highly creative and have produced masterpieces.

So does cognitive flexibility make people smarter in a way that isn't always captured on IQ tests? We know that it leads to better rational thinking throughout the lifespan. For example, for children it leads to better reading abilities and better school performance.

It can also help protect against a number of prejudices. People who are cognitively flexible are better at recognising potential faults in themselves and using strategies to overcome these faults.

Cognitive flexibility is essential for society to flourish. It can help maximise the potential of individuals to create innovative ideas and creative inventions. Ultimately, it is such qualities that we need to solve the big challenges of today.

**【语篇解读】**本文是一篇说明文。文章主要说明了“认知灵活性”的重要性、认知灵活的人的特点以及如何才能更好地提高人们的认知灵活性的研究。

12. What is the purpose of the research conducted by Cambridge University researchers?

- A. To clarify people's misunderstanding about cognitive flexibility.  
B. To figure out the relationship between IQ and cognitive flexibility.

C. To explore effective ways to improve people's cognitive flexibility.

D. To make out the benefits of increasing people's cognitive flexibility.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Currently, a group of researchers from Cambridge University are conducting a research, trying to work out how people can best boost their cognitive flexibility.”可知,剑桥大学研究人员进行这项研究的目的是探索提高人们认知灵活性的有效途径。故选C。

13. What will cognitively flexible people probably do to deal with new challenges?

A. Stick to their original plan.

B. Handle new problems rigidly.

C. Adjust their thoughts and behaviour.

D. Apply creative ideas to improve their IQ.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Cognitive flexibility is a skill that enables us to switch between different concepts, or to adapt behaviour to achieve goals in a novel or changing environment.”以及第三段中的“Cognitive flexibility may have affected how people coped with the pandemic lockdowns, which produced new challenges around work and schooling. Some people may have changed their routines from time to time, trying to find better and more varied ways of going about their day.”可推知,在应对新挑战时,认知灵活的人可能会调整他们的想法和行为。故选C。

14. What can we learn about cognitive flexibility?

A. It is closely related to people's IQ.

B. It is an unchangeable inborn quality.

C. It helps people avoid reasonable thinking.

D. It helps people make greater achievements.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“‘But the truth is that some of the greatest achievements by our species have primarily relied on what scientists

call ‘cognitive flexibility’.”可知,认知灵活性帮助人们取得更大的成就。故选D。

15. What do the last three paragraphs mainly talk about?

A. Applications of cognitive flexibility.

B. Benefits of cognitive flexibility.

C. Experiments on cognitive flexibility.

D. Definitions of cognitive flexibility.

B 段落大意题。根据最后三段的内容可知,最后三段主要说明了认知灵活性的好处。故选B。

## II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Now I live in Paris. Actually, I don't mind the food or the people, but I do care about the land that is extraordinarily lack of characteristics of hiking. I enjoy being outdoors and hiking, but Paris' natural resources don't hold much potential for my bent. So when my dad asked if I wanted to go hiking with him, I was overjoyed. 16 It turned out that I was too optimistic.

We started our main hike up Flattop Mountain. As we hiked it was much more challenging than I expected. 17 The path is winding and we saw mountains towering over the green valleys and cliffs that seemed endless. What amazed me most was that thick clouds enveloped the mountainsides. 18

I stared up at the top to see how much farther we had to go and I began to worry that I wouldn't finish it. 19 It made me doubtful about my persistence (坚持). But when we looked back at the path that faded in the distance, I was filled with fulfillment with seeing how much we had done.

As I was hiking, I started to reflect on how hiking was similar to other aspects of my life. 20 It reminded me of my struggles in my classes and the difficulties I had to overcome. I spotted that the process of learning isn't always the most fun, but the fulfilment after seeing how much

I had finished just increases the thirst for knowledge, causing me to long for more learning. Looking down at the mountain I was content but never fully satisfied. Having considered a lot, I was determined to pursue the summit (山顶).

- A. Hiking could make me fly.
- B. Hiking gave time for my mind to wander.
- C. I thought I would finish the journey with ease.
- D. But I was shocked at the beauty surrounding me.
- E. I was satisfied with the landscape along the way.
- F. It was unlike anything I had ever witnessed before.
- G. A recent ankle injury had left me unsure of my physical capabilities.

答案: 16~20 CDFGB

### III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

Joriden's love with migrating (迁徙的) raptors (肉食鸟) started when he saw a group of strangers scanning the sky with telescopes on top of a hill in his village. His 21 drove him to find out what they were doing. To his joy, the strangers 22 him to take a look. With just one quick look, Joriden was 23. "The sight is very 24," says Joriden. "They take away my stress. I 25 watching these mighty birds."

Joriden used to hunt birds for fun or food. But the 26 with the birdwatchers shifted his mind. Now, not only did he 27 his fellow youths or even older folk to 28 birds they've caught, but he also 29 the community members to stop cutting trees in the mountains to 30 the roosts (栖息地) of the migratory birds.

Raptors are 31 indicators of the health of the environment. They sit on top of the food chain, and thus their health depends on the health of the whole ecosystem they live in. Declines in their population can indicate a 32 in the specific ecosystem that raptor species depend upon or visit.

Raptors, which are natural predators (食肉动物), are also 33 to human food security and livelihoods. If their population 34, the population of harmful insects and animals along their migrating path will increase, 35 agricultural productivity.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇夹叙夹议文。文章主要讲了 Joriden 在一次与观鸟者的邂逅后呼吁人们保护肉食鸟, 因为肉食鸟是环境健康的天然指示器, 同时也影响人类粮食安全和生计。

21. A. joy  
B. curiosity  
C. experience  
D. confidence
- B 根据上文的 "... he saw a group of strangers scanning the sky with telescopes on top of a hill in his village." 可知, 他看到一群陌生人在他村子的山顶上用望远镜扫视天空, 所以出于好奇心, 他去了解他们在做什么。故选 B。
22. A. reminded  
B. urged  
C. allowed  
D. convinced
- C 根据下文的 "With just one quick look..." 可知, 那些陌生人允许他看一眼。故选 C。
23. A. attracted  
B. controlled  
C. rewarded  
D. accepted
- A 根据下文的 "They take away my stress." 可知, Joriden 觉得鸟带走了他的压力, 所以此处是指被吸引住了。故选 A。
24. A. regular  
B. strange  
C. famous  
D. impressive
- D 根据上文的 "With just one quick look, Joriden was 23." 可知, 他被吸引住了, 所以



那个景象是令人印象深刻的。故选 D。

25. A. imagined

B. avoided

C. enjoyed

D. risked

C 根据上文的“*They take away my stress.*”可知，他觉得那些鸟带走了他的压力，所以此处是指他喜欢看这些强大的鸟。故选 C。

26. A. encounter

B. discussion

C. adventure

D. training

A 根据第一段中的“... when he saw a group of strangers scanning the sky with telescopes on top of a hill in his village.”可知，他和观鸟者的邂逅改变了他的想法。故选 A。

27. A. wait for

B. send for

C. rely on

D. appeal to

D 根据下文的“his fellow youths or even older folk to 28 birds they've caught”可知，他呼吁年轻人和老年人释放捕获的鸟。appeal to 意为“呼吁”。故选 D。

28. A. sell

B. raise

C. scare

D. release

D 根据下文的“... birds they've caught, but he also 29 the community members to stop cutting trees in the mountains to 30 the roosts (栖息地) of the migratory birds.”可知，他采取行动保护鸟，所以此处是指呼吁人们释放捕获的鸟。故选 D。

29. A. warned

B. persuaded

C. forced

D. expected

B 根据下文的“... the community members to stop cutting trees in the mountains to 30 the roosts (栖息地) of the migratory birds.”可知，此处指他还说服社区成员停止砍伐山上的树木。故选 B。

30. A. protect

B. locate

C. clear

D. hide

A 根据上文的“to stop cutting trees in the mountains”和下文的“... the roosts (栖息地) of the migratory birds.”可知，停止砍伐山上的树木是为了保护候鸟的栖息地。故选 A。

31. A. natural

B. statistical

C. subjective

D. faulty

A 根据下文的“... indicators of the health of the environment.”可知，肉食鸟是环境健康的天然指示器。故选 A。

32. A. probability

B. problem

C. secret

D. pattern

B 根据上文的“Declines in their population...”可知，它们数量的下降可能表明肉食鸟物种依赖或逗留的特定生态系统出现了问题。故选 B。

33. A. familiar

B. accessible

C. obvious

D. beneficial

D 根据下文的“*If their population 34, the population of harmful insects and animals along their migrating path will increase, 35 agricultural productivity.*”可知，肉食鸟对人类的粮食安全和生计是有益的。故选 D。

34. A. doubles

B. decreases

C. varies

D. ages

B 根据下文的“the population of harmful insects and animals along their migrating path will increase”可知，肉食鸟吃害虫，所以，如果它们的数量减少，那么害虫的数量就会增加。故选 B。

35. A. boosting

B. maintaining

C. affecting

D. measuring

C 根据上文的“the population of harmful insects and animals along their migrating path will increase”可知，如果肉食鸟的数量减少，它们迁徙途中的害虫和动物的数量就会增加，从而影响农业生产力。故选 C。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

So, you are interested in becoming a good journalist but don't know where to start? Well, there are a couple of things you should put on your list of priorities.

To begin with, you need to be skilled at writing. The information **36. involved** (involve) in a complex story may come from dozens of **37. sources** (source). Good journalists need to organise all this information clearly to give an accurate account of **38. what** is happening.

In addition, you must have a natural curiosity about things **39. that/which** are happening, even though they may appear to be minor matters. When something newsworthy comes **40. about**, it may escape the attention of ordinary people. However, good journalists are sensitive enough to notice **41. the** event and draw public attention to it.

Finally, good journalists commit **42. themselves** (they) to revealing the truth. According to Noam

Chomsky, “The duty of journalists is **43. to tell/telling** (tell) the truth. Journalism means you go back to the actual fact, you look at the documents, you discover what the record is, and you report it that way.” To do this, journalists need to investigate an event **44. completely** (complete).

To sum up, being a good journalist **45. requires** (require) writing skills, curiosity and commitment to finding the truth. Good luck!

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 应用文写作(满分 15 分)

世界环境日(6 月 5 日)即将到来,为了提升你校学生保护环境意识,学校英语社团将举办关于爱护环境的征文比赛。请你以“爱护环境从身边做起(Caring for the Environment Starts from Ourselves)”为主题写一篇英语稿件参赛,内容如下:

1. 介绍世界环境日;
2. 保护环境的行为;
3. 建设美丽校园。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

**Caring for the Environment Starts from Ourselves**

【参考范文】

**Caring for the Environment Starts from Ourselves**

World Environment Day is on June 5 every year. It reflects the attitude of people around the world to environmental issues and expresses human pursuit of a better environment.

As young students, we should promote environmental protection and start from the things around us, such as caring for every plant and tree in the school, and actively participating in various public welfare activities that care for nature. In addition, we should also obey the rules of the

school, striving to be good students with civilisation and politeness, which will contribute to the construction of beautiful campus.

## 第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

### Karen Helps Out

Karen sat at the kitchen table. She finished her last bite of cereal as she watched Dad fill a bucket with tools. “What are you working on today?” she asked.

“Last week I fixed the porch railing,” Dad said. “That means today it’s ready to paint.” “Can I help?” asked Karen. Dad usually said no, because his tools were sharp and too heavy for Karen to pick up. Karen usually just watched Dad work.

“Yes,” said Dad. “Painting is a safe job for you to try. Go put on some old clothes and meet me out front.”

Karen found play clothes from last summer that were a little small. Next year they wouldn’t fit at all. It would be okay if she dripped paint on them by mistake. Karen was planning to be very careful.

“Ready!” called Karen. She sat down on the top porch step.

Dad dipped his paint brush into a cart of white paint. Karen watched as he carefully wiped the edge of the brush on the side of the can. “That’s what you do to get rid of extra paint. See? No drips.” Then Dad made one long smooth line of paint along the porch railing. “Remember to paint in just one direction so things stay neat,” said Dad.

Karen was very excited to try painting herself. She dipped her brush in the paint and wiped the edge, just like Dad. Then she tried to paint a stripe on the railing. Her paint line started out nicely, but she soon ran out of paint.

“That’s a good start,” said Dad. “Now dip your brush again and continue your line.” Karen tried again. Soon her paint line was almost as long as Dad’s. She watched as Dad went over her line one more time. He smoothed it out and connected it to his line. “Painting is fun!” said Karen. She and Dad kept working together.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Soon the whole railing was painted white. \_\_\_\_\_

Seeing her mother come back, Karen threw herself into Mum’s arms. \_\_\_\_\_

### 【参考范文】

Soon the whole railing was painted white. It looked fresh and clean. “Great job, Karen,” said Dad. Hearing this, Karen wore a shining smile on her face. “Today I have learnt a lot. It seems that I will learn more living skills from Dad in the future,” Karen thought to herself. Dad made some additions to some places. “When it’s dry, we can show Mum what we did today,” Dad said to Karen. She felt very proud. She couldn’t wait to show Mum all her hard work later.

Seeing her mother come back, Karen threw herself into Mum’s arms. “Here, Mum! Here!” Karen exclaimed as she led her mum to see the newly painted railing. At first Mum looked a little puzzled, but her eyes widened open when she found the railing took on a new look. Karen excitedly told Mum how she helped Dad paint the railing. Mum couldn’t help hugging Karen, saying, “You did a great job! Our little Karen has grown up.” Karen laughed, determined to do more for her parents, her eyes shining with excitement.